





tenir = to hold

tenir de = to take after

tenir à = to care about

---

tenir = to hold

tenir de = to take after

tenir à = to care about

---

tenir = to hold

tenir de = to take after

tenir à = to care about

---

passer à = think of

passer de = to have







A FRENCH GRAMMAR

FOR SCHOOLS



A  
FRENCH GRAMMAR  
FOR SCHOOLS

BY  
G. E. FASNACHT

LATE ASSISTANT MASTER IN WESTMINSTER SCHOOL ;  
EDITOR OF MACMILLAN'S SERIES OF FOREIGN CLASSICS ;  
AUTHOR OF MACMILLAN'S 'PROGRESSIVE FRENCH AND GERMAN COURSE,' ETC.

London  
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED  
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

1905

*First Edition (called a Synthetic Grammar for Schools) 1883*

*Reprinted 1891, 1892, 1897, 1902, 1905*

## PREFACE.

THE plan on which this new French Grammar is framed appears so manifestly in almost every page, that a very brief preface will suffice to explain the principle which underlies the whole work.

It is both analytic and synthetic—*analytic*, in exhibiting, as fully as in any exclusively analytic treatise, the whole inflectional system of the language, scientifically classified ; *synthetic*, in presenting these inflected forms organically embodied in sentences—in which association alone the force of their meanings and functions can be adequately conveyed to the mind of the student. At the same time, the inflections stand out so distinctly from the context as to be as available for the purposes of analysis as in any of the customary paradigms.

Just as anatomy is nothing if not supplemented by physiology, so any attempt at mastering Accidence without at the same time obtaining a mastery of the fundamental laws of Syntax, must necessarily prove abortive. Nor is it possible by any scheme, however ingeniously contrived, to illustrate the real meanings and uses of the different parts of speech which do duty as adjuncts, if they are arbitrarily severed—as is the case in most Grammars—from the Nouns and Verbs they serve to determine.

In this Grammar, therefore, Accidence goes hand in hand with *Elementary Syntax* ; and the two, thus combined, are divided into principal groups—the Noun with its several attributes, the Verbs with their complements, the Pronouns in their adjectival or substantival functions, and the Particles

appearing as integral parts of sentences in which the duties assigned to them in the organism of speech are fully set forth.

In the higher Syntax, which practically constitutes an entirely recast edition of the Third Year of my *Progressive French Course*, I have on the whole conformed to the system adopted in the most approved Greek and Latin Grammars—starting from the simple sentence in its simplest form, and following it through all its various forms of extension to the fullest development of the complex sentence.

As regards points of detail, there are few, if any, in which it has not been attempted to present the facts of the language in a new light—whether for better or for worse, can, of course, only be decided by the practical test of teaching in the classroom.

My obligations to those who have tilled the same field before me are many ; there is hardly a French Grammar worth the name, whether published in France, England, or Germany, to which I am not more or less indebted for valuable hints and suggestions.

In conclusion, I wish to express my heartfelt thanks to the numerous members of my own profession who have shown a generous appreciation of my former labours in the same field.

G. E. F.

# CONTENTS.

§		PAGE
	INTRODUCTION.—Formation of the French Language . . .	xiii
1.	Introductory : The Alphabet . . . . .	1
2.	Accents and orthographical signs . . . . .	2
3.	The Sounds . . . . .	3
<b>ACCIDENCE.</b>		
FIRST CHAPTER : THE NOUN AND ITS ADJUNCTS.		
4.	Introductory : Genders, Numbers, Cases expressed by Prepositions . . .	5
5.	I. The Noun qualified by the <i>Definite</i> Article . . . . .	5
6.	Declension of Nouns . . . . .	6
7.	II. The Noun qualified by the <i>Indefinite</i> Article . . . . .	7
8.	III. The Noun qualified by the <i>Partitive</i> Article . . . . .	7
9.	IV. The Noun qualified by an <i>Adverb</i> or <i>Noun of Quantity</i> . . . . .	8
10.	V. The Noun qualified by a <i>Possessive</i> Adjective . . . . .	8
11.	VI. The Noun qualified by a <i>Demonstrative</i> Adjective . . . . .	9
12.	Synoptic Table of the different ways of qualifying a Noun . . . . .	10
13.	Formation of the <i>Plural</i> of Nouns and Adjectives . . . . .	10
14.	Special Rules : Nouns ending (a) in <b>s, x, z</b> ; (b) in <b>au, eu, ou</b> ; (c) in <b>al, ail</b> . . . . .	10
15.	Nouns without Plural inflection . . . . .	11
	(a) Indecl. Parts of Speech; (b) Proper Names; (c) Foreign Nouns.	
16.	VII. Formation of <i>Compound Nouns</i> . . . . .	12
	(a) Noun + Noun linked (1) without Prep. ; (2) with <b>de</b> ; (3) with <b>a</b> ; (4) with <b>en</b> .	
	(b) Noun + Adjective ; (c) Noun + Verb . . . . .	13
17.	Plural of Compound Nouns . . . . .	13
	(a) Noun + Noun ; (b) Noun + Adj. ; (c) Noun + Prep. + Noun ; (d) Adv. or Prep. + Noun.	
	(e) Verb + Noun ; (f) Noun (Verb) + Noun ;	
	(g) Indeclin. + Indeclinable . . . . .	14
	(h) Compound Nouns in Sing. with Plural components . . . . .	14
18.	Principal Rules of <i>Gender</i> (for full Rules, see §§ 97-100) : Gender ascertained :	
	(a) by <i>Derivation</i> ; (b) by <i>Meaning</i> ; (c) by <i>Termination</i> . . . . .	14
19.	VIII. The Noun limited by an <i>Adjective of Quality</i> . . . . .	16
20.	Special Rules : Adjectives ending (a) in <b>e</b> ; (b) in <b>x</b> ; (c) in <b>f</b> ; (d) in <b>c</b> (Philological Remarks) . . . . .	17
	(e) in <b>-ien, -el, -eil, -as, -on</b> ; (f) in two forms in the masc. ; (g) in <b>-eur</b> . . . . .	18-19

§	PAGE
21. IX. The Noun qualified by an <i>Adj.</i> in the <i>Comparative</i> or <i>Superlative</i> . . . . .	20
22. Adjectives with irregular forms of comparison . . . . .	20
23-4. Place of Adjectives before or after the Noun . . . . .	21
25. X. The Noun qualified by a <i>Numeral</i> :	
( <i>a</i> ) Cardinal ; ( <i>b</i> ) Ordinal ; ( <i>c</i> ) Cardinals used for Ordinals . . . . .	22
( <i>d</i> ) Different ways of expressing Dimensions . . . . .	24
( <i>e</i> ) Fractional ; ( <i>f</i> ) Proportional ; } Numerals . . . . .	24
( <i>g</i> ) Multiplicative ; ( <i>h</i> ) Collective ; }	

## SECOND CHAPTER : PRONOUNS.

26. A. <i>Conjunctive Personal</i> Pronouns declined . . . . .	25
27. Use of <i>y</i> , (1) for <i>là</i> ; (2) for <i>à lui</i> , etc. ; (3) for <i>à ceci</i> , <i>à cela</i> . . . . .	26
28. Use of <i>en</i> , (1) for <i>de là</i> ; (2) for <i>de lui</i> , etc. ; (3) for <i>de ceci</i> , <i>de cela</i> ; (4) for <i>du</i> , <i>de la</i> , etc. ; (5) for <i>pour cela</i> , etc. . . . .	26
29. Use of <i>le</i> , (1) personal ; (2) neutral . . . . .	27
30-31. Relative Position of Pronoun-Objects . . . . .	28
32. B. <i>Disjunctive Personal</i> Pronouns . . . . .	30
33. C. <i>Possessive</i> Pronouns . . . . .	31
34. D. <i>Demonstrative</i> Pronouns : ( <i>a</i> ) <i>ce</i> . . . . .	32
( <i>b</i> ) <i>ceci</i> , <i>cela</i> ; ( <i>c</i> ) <i>celui-ci</i> , <i>celui-là</i> ; ( <i>d</i> ) <i>celui</i> . . . . .	33
35. E. <i>Relative</i> Pronouns : ( <i>a</i> ) <i>qui</i> ; ( <i>b</i> ) <i>lequel</i> , <i>laquelle</i> . . . . .	34
( <i>c</i> ) <i>qui</i> , referring to Things ; ( <i>d</i> ) <i>où</i> , Relat. Adv. . . . .	35
( <i>e</i> ) Relative Pronouns used absolutely . . . . .	36
36. F. <i>Interrogative</i> Pronouns : used ( <i>a</i> ) substantively ; ( <i>b</i> ) adjectively . . . . .	37
37. G. <i>Indefinite</i> Pronouns : used ( <i>a</i> ) adjectively ; ( <i>b</i> ) adjectively or substantively . . . . .	38
( <i>c</i> ) substantively only . . . . .	39

## THIRD CHAPTER : THE VERB.

38. Introductory : Classification . . . . .	40
39. ( <i>a</i> ) Regular ; ( <i>b</i> ) Irregular ; ( <i>c</i> ) Anomalous . . . . .	41
A. REGULAR CONJUGATION.	
I. Simple Tenses :	
40. Indicative Present . . . . .	42
41. Imperfect . . . . .	43
42. Preterite . . . . .	43
43. Future Pres. . . . .	44
44. Conditional Present . . . . .	45
45. Subjunctive Present . . . . .	46
46. Imperfect . . . . .	47
47. Imperative Present . . . . .	48
48. Infinitive Present . . . . .	48
49. Participles. 1. Present ; 2. Perfect . . . . .	49
50. Synoptic Table of the Formation of Simple Tenses . . . . .	50

§	PAGE
51. <i>Auxiliary Verbs:—Avoir</i> : I. Simple Tenses . . . . .	52
52. . . . . II. Compound Tenses . . . . .	53
53. <i>Être</i> : I. Simple Tenses . . . . .	54
54. . . . . II. Compound Tenses . . . . .	55
55. Synoptic Table of the Three Regular Conjugations: <i>I. Simple Tenses</i>	56
56. <i>II. Compound Tenses, with avoir</i> . . . . .	58
57. A. <i>Interrogative Form of Conjugation</i> . . . . .	60
58. B. <i>Negative Form of Conjugation</i> . . . . .	60
59. C. <i>Interrogative-Negative Form of Conjugation</i> . . . . .	61
60. Peculiarities of Regular Verbs : . . . . .	
I. Verbs in (a) -eler ; (b) -eter ; (c) e-er ; (d) é-er . . . . .	62
(e) -yer ; (f) -ier ; (g) -ger ; (h) -cer ; II. fleurir, bénir, haïr	63
61. <i>Compound Tenses, with être</i> . . . . .	64
62. <i>Passive Voice</i> . . . . .	65
63. <i>Reflexive Verbs</i> . . . . .	66
64. <i>Impersonal Verbs</i> . . . . .	68
65. B. <i>IRREGULAR AND ANOMALOUS CONJUGATION.</i> } . . . . .	70
Synoptic Table : . . . . .	
66. <i>First Conjugation</i> : aller, s'en aller, and envoyer . . . . .	71
<i>Second Conjugation</i> : . . . . .	
67. Dormir, mentir, se repentir, sentir, servir, partir, sortir ; } bouillir, faillir, vêtir, fuir, ouïr . . . . .	74
68. Cueillir, saillir, ouvrir, couvrir, offrir, souffrir . . . . .	76
69. Acquérir, tenir, venir, mourir, courir, gésir . . . . .	76
<i>Third Conjugation</i> : . . . . .	
70. Recevoir, devoir, apercevoir, concevoir, percevoir, décevoir . . . . .	78
71. Savoir, mouvoir, pleuvoir, pouvoir . . . . .	78
72. Vouloir, valoir, falloir, déchoir, échoir, voir . . . . .	78
73. S'asseoir, surseoir, seoir, apparoir . . . . .	80
<i>Fourth Conjugation</i> : . . . . .	
74. Plaindre, ceindre, joindre, and all in -indre . . . . .	80
75. Conduire, construire, and all in -uire ; cuire, nuire, luire, écrire . . . . .	80
76. Traire, vaincre, suivre . . . . .	82
77. Rire, suffire, dire, maudire, faire, mettre, prendre, battre . . . . .	82
78. Connaître, paître, croître, naître ; croire, plaire, taire, lire, boire, conclure . . . . .	84
79. Absoudre, résoudre, moudre, coudre, vivre . . . . .	86
80. <i>Defective</i> : bruire, clore, éclore, frire, sourdre . . . . .	86
81. Résumé of Phonetic Laws underlying the Conjugations of Verbs . . . . .	88

## FOURTH CHAPTER : THE PARTICLES.

82. A. <i>Adverbs</i> : (a) of Place ; (b) of Time ; (c) of Quantity ; (d) of Quality	94
83. (e) of Manner : Formation of Adverbs from Adjectives	94
Adjectives used adverbially . . . . .	95
84. Irregular Formation of Degrees of Comparison of Adjs. and Advbs.	96
85. Adverbs of Affirmation and Negation . . . . .	97

§		PAGE
86.	B. <i>Interjections</i> . . . . .	97
87.	C. <i>Prepositions</i> : de, (a) = <i>from</i> ; (b) = <i>of</i> ; (c) <i>adjectival</i> . . . . .	97
	(d) = <i>any</i> ; (e) = <i>for</i> ; (f) = <i>with</i> ; (g) = <i>by</i> . . . . .	98
	(h) = <i>on, off</i> ; (i) = <i>in</i> ; (g) = <i>to</i> ; (k) = <i>about</i> . . . . .	99
88.	à, (a) = <i>to</i> ; (b) = <i>to, at, in</i> ; (c) = <i>from</i> ; (d) = <i>for</i> ; (e) <i>adverbial</i> ; (f) <i>adjectival</i> . . . . .	99
89.	dans and en compared . . . . .	100
90.	avant, devant ; après, derrière ; entre, parmi ; sur, au- (par-) dessus de ; sous, au-dessus de ; vers, envers, contre . . . . .	100
	près, proche, auprès de ; depuis, dès ; par, à travers, au travers de ; voici, voilà . . . . .	101
91.	D. <i>Conjunctions</i> : I. Co-ordinate . . . . .	103
92.	II. Subordinate : (a) with Indicat. or Conditional . . . . .	103
	(b) with Subjunctive . . . . .	104
	(c) with Indic. or Subj. ; (d) with Infinit. . . . .	105

## APPENDICES.

93.	I. Remarks on <i>Pronunciation</i> . . . . .	107
94.	II. <i>Plural of Nouns</i> : (a) not used in the Singular ; (b) Foreign unchanged in Plural ; (c) with different meanings in sing. and plur. }	119
95.	III. <i>Irregular Feminine of Nouns</i> : (a) in -sse . . . . .	120
	(b) in -eresse ; (c) in -ice, -ante, -ine, -elle, -e, etc. . . . .	121
	(d) Names of living beings radically differing in masc. and fem. . . . .	121
96.	IV. A. <i>Compound Adjectives</i> : Formation of Feminine and Plural . . . . .	122
	B. Alphabetical List of Adjectives with irreg. fem. . . . .	123
97.	V. <i>Gender of Nouns</i> : (a) with different gender in sing. and plur. . . . .	124
	(b) of both genders according to meaning . . . . .	125
98-100.	VI. Rules of <i>Gender</i> : Gender determined— (I.) by Derivation ; (II.) by Meaning ; (III.) by Termination . . . . .	126

## SYNTAX.

N.B.—For full details of the subject-matter see the *Résumés* at the head of each Chapter.

## THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

## FIRST CHAPTER : THE PREDICATIVE RELATION.

101.	Introductory : Subject and Predicate . . . . .	132
102-5.	A. <i>Agreement of Predicate with Subject</i> . . . . .	133

§		PAGE
106-7.	B. <i>Inversion of Subject and Predicate</i> . . . . .	136
108-113.	C. <i>Moods and Tenses</i> : Indicative, its Tenses . . . . .	139
	Conditional, Conjunctive, Imperative (for Subjunctive, see Chapter IV., Dependent Clauses) . . . . .	146
114.	SECOND CHAPTER : THE ATTRIBUTIVE RELATION . . . . .	149
115-121.	A. The Noun determined by an <i>Article</i> . . . . .	149
122-4.	B. The Noun limited by a qualifying <i>Adjective</i> . . . . .	158
125.	THIRD CHAPTER : THE ADVERBIAL RELATION . . . . .	164
126-128.	A. <i>Noun-Object</i> ; B. <i>Noun-Complement</i> :	
	I. <i>without Preposition (Accusative)</i> . . . . .	165
129-134.	II. <i>with à (Dative)</i> . . . . .	167
135-137.	III. <i>with de (Genitive)</i> . . . . .	172
138.	IV. <i>with other Prepositions</i> . . . . .	179
139.	<i>The Infinitive</i> : Introductory . . . . .	181
140.	I. The pure Infinitive : without Preposition . . . . .	183
141.	II. The Infinitive governed by <i>de</i> . . . . .	186
142.	III. The Infinitive governed by <i>à</i> . . . . .	187
143.	IV. The Infinitive governed by <i>de</i> or <i>à</i> . . . . .	189
144.	V. The Infinitive governed by other Prepositions . . . . .	190
	VI. The Infinitive instead of Indicative or Subjunctive . . . . .	191
145.	<i>The Participle Present</i> : Introductory . . . . .	192
146.	I. Verbal Adjective. II. Participle Pres. proper. } III. Gerundive with <i>en</i> . . . . . }	193
147.	<i>The Participle Perfect</i> : Introductory . . . . .	195
148.	I. Agreement with the <i>Subject</i> . . . . .	196
149-150.	II. Agreement with the <i>Object</i> . . . . .	197
151-5.	<i>Adverbial Relation expressed by an Adverb</i> . . . . .	200

## THE COMPLEX SENTENCE.

156.	FOURTH CHAPTER : CO-ORDINATE SENTENCES . . . . .	204
157.	FIFTH CHAPTER : DEPENDENT CLAUSES . . . . .	206
158.	A. Use of Moods in Dependent Clauses. . . . .	207
159.	B. <i>Subjunctive Mood</i> . . . . .	208
160-61.	(I.) in Substantive Clauses . . . . .	209
162.	(II.) in Adjective (Relative) Clauses . . . . .	213
163.	(III.) in Adverbial Clauses . . . . .	215
164.	Sequence of Tenses . . . . .	216

## SYNTAX OF SINGLE PARTS OF SPEECH.

## SIXTH CHAPTER : PRONOUNS.

§		PAGE
165.	<i>Personal Pronouns</i> : use of singular and plural . . . . .	217
166.	Use of <i>soi</i> . . . . .	218
167.	<i>Possessive Pronouns and Adjectives</i> . . . . .	219
	The English Possessive rendered in French . . . . .	
	(a) by a Disjunct. Pers. Pron. ; (b) by a Conj.-Pr. + Def. Art. . . . .	219
	(c) by <i>en</i> + <i>le</i> ( <i>la</i> , <i>les</i> ) ; (d) by Def. Art. + Relat. Clause . . . . .	
168.	<i>Demonstrative Pronouns</i> : <i>ce</i> . . . . .	220
	(a) as Subj. or Pred. of <i>être</i> : (1) = indecl. Demonstr. or Relat. Pr. ; (2) = Pers. Pron. ; (3) used redundantly . . . . .	220
	(b) as Antecedent of a Relative Pronoun or of <i>que</i> . . . . .	221
169.	<i>ceci, cela</i> ; . . . . .	222
170.	<i>celui, celle</i> ; <i>ceux, celles</i> ; . . . . .	222
171.	<i>celui-ci, celui-là</i> , etc. . . . .	222
	<i>Relative and Interrogative Pronouns</i> . . . . .	223
172.	whose, (a) relative ; (b) interrogative . . . . .	223
173.	what, relat. pron., (a) without prep. ; (b) gov. by a prep. . . . .	223
174.	when, relat. adv. . . . .	224
175.	<i>Repetition of Pronouns</i> : (a) Personal ; (b) Possess. or Demonstr. . . . .	224

## SEVENTH CHAPTER : CONJUNCTIONS.

176.	<i>que</i> , (a) connecting substantive clauses . . . . .	224
	(b) connecting adverbial clauses (1) instead of <i>quand, si</i> , etc. ; (2) instead of <i>afin que</i> , etc. ; (3) to avoid the repetition of conjunctions generally . . . . .	225
	(c) used redundantly . . . . .	226

## EIGHTH CHAPTER : ORDER OF WORDS.

177.	Objects and Complements : Normal Order . . . . .	226
178.	Exceptional order . . . . .	227
179.	Place of Adverbs . . . . .	227

## APPENDIX VII.

180.	Verbs with different Constructions . . . . .	228
181.	Verbs which require no Prep. before the Infinitive . . . . .	230
182.	Verbs which require <i>de</i> . . . . .	230
183.	Verbs which require <i>à</i> . . . . .	230
	INDEX I : French Words and Grammatical Subjects . . . . .	231
	INDEX II : English Words and Phrases . . . . .	237

# INTRODUCTION.

## RÉSUMÉ OF THE PRINCIPAL FACTS RELATING TO THE FORMATION OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.<sup>1</sup>

I. The principal element of the French language is Latin; but Latin words, be it at once understood, have entered into the composition of French at different periods, through different channels and by different processes.

In the first place, there is a substratum of about four thousand Latin words constituting the language which the Gauls, under the pressure of the superior power and civilisation of the Romans, adopted instead of their vernacular Celtic, and which they in their turn subsequently imposed upon the Franks, their conquerors, but withal their inferiors in mental culture.

But it was not classic Latin that forced its way amongst the people at large; the higher and learned classes, indeed, soon began to vie with their masters in the art of rhetoric and in forensic eloquence; but the great bulk of the nation picked up their Latin from those with whom they were brought into contact—the soldiers and colonists. Of the Latin that we learn in school, the Latin of Cicero and Virgil, these were as innocent as our soldiers, sailors, and settlers of the Queen's English. Recruited from different parts of the vast Roman empire, these untutored squatters on the conquered territory of Gaul spoke the rustic dialects of their native provinces (*sermo plebeius*), the soldiers and camp-followers their slang (*castrense verbum*). In these more or less corrupted idioms the process of contraction—that most striking feature of French words as compared with classical Latin—is already seen in full operation. Thus we find *digitus* contracted into *digitus*; *vincere* into *vincere*; *saeculum* into

<sup>1</sup> For a systematic study of the history of French language, we refer the student to Brachet's *Grammaire historique*, and to his *Dictionnaire étymologique*. An excellent translation of both by Mr. G. W. Kitchin has appeared in the Clarendon Press Series.

*saeclum*. In the popular vocabulary, again, we meet with *battuere* for *verberare*; *caballus* for *equus*; *septimana* for *hebdomas*, etc. From these plebeian forms and words to the French *doigt*, *vaincre*, *siècle*, *battre*, *cheval*, *semaine*, there is, it need hardly be said, but one step.

It is, of course, impossible to fix an exact date for the birthday of the French language, or, indeed, of any language; but the earliest documents we possess<sup>1</sup> go to show that towards the ninth century, in the reign of Charles the Great, the several dialects grown out of the decaying Latin as spoken in Gaul (now part of the Frankish empire) had so far asserted their independence as virtually to constitute a new language, or, more correctly speaking, two new languages,—the *langue d'oc* (Provençal or Limousin), spoken in the south, and the *langue d'oïl*,<sup>2</sup> spoken in the centre and north. The struggle as to which of the two was finally to become the literary language, and to reduce the other to the humbler condition of a *patois*, could not but end fatally for the idiom spoken in the southern provinces, whose political inferiority was consummated by the exterminating crusades against the Albigenses.

But even for the conquering idiom the time inevitably came when the scanty stock of home-grown words which made up its entire vocabulary proved no longer able to meet the new wants arising from the spread of new ideas. The husbandman, indeed, had a name for everything relating to ploughing and planting, the huntsman a name for every kind of fur and feather, the artisan a name for every tool and trick of his handicraft. By-and-by, however, as civilisation was progressing, the new evolutions of thought imperatively called for adequate means of expression. A new currency had to be coined; but this time by the learned classes, and under vastly different conditions. The vulgar Latin, which had been the original storehouse of French words, was now a dead language; the creative energy which had moulded and shaped the Latin metal while still in a state of fusion had spent itself ever since the first wants had been supplied; while of the laws which had operated in framing the language spoken by the common folks, the new mint-masters—the scholars—had not even a suspicion.

In the primitive popular speech, for instance, the accented (tonic) syllable of the Latin word invariably obtains as the core

<sup>1</sup> The “Glosses of Reichenau” (768); the “Serments of Strasburg” (842).

<sup>2</sup> *Oc* (from Lat. *hoc*) is the Provençal, and *oïl* (from Lat. *hoc illud*; pronounced like the modern form *oui*) the old northern French word for *yes*.

of its French offshoot ; thus, *ministérium*, already contracted in vulgar Latin into *min'sterium* and *misterium*, had gradually shrunk further into *mistier*, *mestier*, and *métier*, its present form ; likewise *monastérium*, *mon'sterium*, step by step dwindles to *monstier*, *mostier*, *moustier*, and finally to *moûtier*. The shrinkage, we see, is considerable, but only at the expense of the unaccented syllables.<sup>1</sup>

Not so with the vocables engrafted on the language by the scholars. They drew their supplies from the written Latin, in which the tonic accent does not assert itself so strongly as in the spoken language. In their hands *ministérium* became *ministère* ; *monastérium*, *monastère* ; *frigidus*, *frigide* ; *frágilis*, *fragile*, etc. So unconscious were they of the work done by the people, that in introducing such words as *liquor*, *rédemption*, *intègre*, *natif*, *fragile*, *hôpital*, *fusion*, they were not even aware that *ligare*, *redemptionem*, *integrum*, *nativus*, *fragilis*, *hospitale*, *fusionem*, had already struck root in the French language in the popular form of *lier*, *rançon*, *entier*, *naïf*, *frêle*, *hôtel*, *foison*.

To sum up, French words of Latin origin must be subdivided into two classes :—

(1) *Words of popular (primary) formation moulded spontaneously by the people according to fixed laws from the Latin tongue as spoken by the common people ; and*

(2) *Words of learned (secondary) formation arbitrarily adopted by the learned from written Latin without regard to any fixed laws.*

II. It now remains briefly to explain the laws which have been found to underlie the organic process of transformation of Latin words into French words.

We will take a few words of popular creation, and putting them side by side with the Latin from which they have sprung, we find that—

(1) *The syllable accented in a Latin word always remains in the popular French word derived from it : as,*

*Voisin*, Lat. *vicinus* ;

*doigt*, Lat. *digitus* ;

*moisson*, Lat. *messiōem* ;

*reine*, Lat. *regina*.

---

<sup>1</sup> Just as in our days and in our English language, the syllable on which the stress is laid emerges almost intact from the process of violent contraction which words have to undergo in popular speech : *won't* for *will not*, *Bedlam* for *Bethlehem*, *Pomfret* for *Pontefract*, etc. In the course of time and with the sanction of usage, what is at first familiar becomes correct.

We further find that—

(2) *Any unaccented vowel in the last syllable in a Latin word is either lost altogether or reduced to an e mute in the popular French word derived from it :—*

*Vain*, Lat. *vānus* ;  
*fer*, Lat. *fērrum* ;

*hiver*, Lat. *hibernus* ;  
*devoir*, Lat. *debere*.

(3) *Any unaccented vowel in the last syllable but one of a Latin word is lost in the French word derived from it :—*

*Frêle*, Lat. *frāgilis* ;  
*spectacle*, Lat. *spectaculum* ;

*fable*, Lat. *fābula* ;  
*connaître*, Lat. *cognōscere* :—

(4) *Any unaccented vowel in the syllable immediately preceding the accented syllable of a Latin word is—*

(a) *lost in the French word derived from it, if it is short ;*  
*but (b) remains if it is long ;—*

(a) *Vergogue*, Lat. *verēcūdia* ;      (b) *vêtement*, Lat. *vestimētum* ;  
*naïf*, Lat. *nātivus* ;                      *ornement*, Lat. *ornāmētum*.

(5) *The vowel in the syllable not immediately preceding the accented syllable of a Latin word, though unaccented, remains in the French word derived from it :—*

*Venger*, Lat. *vindicāre* ;  
*cherté*, Lat. *caritātem* ;

*rançon*, Lat. *redemptiōnem* ;  
*forger*, Lat. *fabricāre*.

III. If we put side by side such French and Latin words as—

Fr. *raison* and Lat. *ratio* ; Fr. *paon* and Lat. *pavo* ; Fr. *lièvre* and Lat. *lepus* ;  
Fr. *rien* „ *res* ; Fr. *Cicéron* „ *Cicero* ; Fr. *nuît* „ *nox*,

it is at once obvious that it is not to the nominative case, but to one of the oblique cases of these Latin words—*ration-em*, *rem*, *pavon-em*, *Cicéron-em*, *lepor-em*, *noct-em*, that we must look for the Latin forms upon which the derived French words have been moulded ; and this conjecture is fully borne out by the investigations of modern scholarship. When the Celt began to adopt the parlance of the Roman, it can easily be imagined that the six Latin cases were too much for his understanding, even supposing that his illiterate masters were able to make a discriminate use of them. From a careful examination of early French writings which are still extant, we know that down to the fourteenth century the six Latin cases had been reduced to two—

the *Nominative* to denote the Subject, and the *Accusative* to denote the Object : thus—

		Latin	French	Latin	French.
Sing.	{	Nom. <i>angulus</i>	<i>aingles</i> ;	<i>canis</i>	<i>chiens</i> ;
	{	Acc. <i>angulum</i>	<i>aingle</i> ;	<i>canem</i>	<i>chien</i> ;
Plur.	{	Nom. <i>anguli</i>	<i>aingle</i> ;	<i>canes</i>	<i>chiens</i> ;
	{	Acc. <i>angulos</i>	<i>aingles</i> ;	<i>canes</i>	<i>chiens</i> .

Now when in the course of time, about the fourteenth century, the French-speaking people gradually came to express the distinction between Subject, Object, and Complement, by means of prepositions and by the order of words in the sentence, they, as a matter of course, gave up one of the two forms as a useless luxury, and thenceforth contented themselves with one ; thus the remaining two cases were finally reduced to one ; and it was the form of the *Objective Case* which, with but few exceptions, survived to the almost entire exclusion of the Subjective case. If we remember that our Anglo-Saxon forefathers had a regular system of declension, it will be seen that the same tendency to simplification—from the *synthetic* to the *analytic*, has been at work on both sides of the Channel. And the same may be said of the other offshoots of Latin—Italian, Spanish, and Portuguese.

It is from this time that we date the existence of Modern French, in contradistinction to Early French, which, under the name of *langue d'oïl*, had been spoken from the time of the extinction of Latin until about the fourteenth century. It was so called, as we have seen, p. xiv., to distinguish it from the *langue d'oc* spoken in Southern France.

To this survival of the form of the Objective case we are indebted for the way in which we now form the plural. If we look at the above paradigm of Early French declension and remember that of the two cases of the Singular and Plural, only the Accusative has obtained, it is evident that the consequence could be no other than what actually happened,—the letter *s* became the sign of the Plural.<sup>1</sup> Had the reverse been the case,—had the Nominative form survived the Accusative,—we should now, strange to say, form the Plural by cutting off the *s* of the Singular.

<sup>1</sup> The use of *x* as the sign of the plural must be traced to the same source ; *x* being merely a convertible sign for *s* in words ending in *u* or *l*, which *l* subsequently changed into *u*.



# INTRODUCTORY.

## THE ALPHABET.

(1) The Letters ; (2) Orthographic Signs ; (3) the Sounds.

1 THE French Alphabet now in use contains the same letters as the English, omitting *W*, which occurs only in words derived from foreign languages :—

A B C D E F\* G H\* I J K L\* M\*  
Named :<sup>1</sup>—*ah, bay, say, day, ay, f, zhay, ash, ee, zhee, kah, l, m,*

N O P Q R\* S\* T U V X Y Z.  
*n, o, pay, küh, airr, s, tay, ü, vay, eex, eegrek, zed.*

These letters are divided into *Vowels* :—*a, e, i (y), o, u* ; and *Consonants*, which comprise all other letters.<sup>1</sup>

*Capital letters (majuscules)* are used as in English, except in the case of Adjectives derived from *Proper Nouns*, which in French are written with *small initial letters (minuscules)*: as, *La France* ; *les Français* ; but—*la langue française*.

*Observation.*—Students who intend to study French philologically will bear in mind that *Consonants* are classified, according to the organs of speech employed in using them, into *Mutes* (Checks), *Nasals*, *Liquids* (Trills), *Spirants* (Fricatives). The *Nasals* are *n, m* ; the *Liquids* *l, r* ; the *Spirants* *f, v, s, z, ch, j*.

	EXPLOSIVE (CHECKS).		CONTINUOUS.			
	Hard.	Soft.	Hard.	Soft.	Liquids.	Nasals.
Labials (lip-letters)	<i>p</i>	<i>b</i>	<i>f (ph)</i>	<i>v (w)</i>	—	<i>m</i>
Dentals (teeth-letters) .	<i>t</i>	<i>d</i>	<i>{ s (c)</i> <i>{ ch</i>	<i>{ z (s)</i> <i>{ j (g)</i>	<i>l, r</i>	<i>n</i>
Gutturals (throat-letters)	<i>c (k, g)</i>	<i>g</i>	—	—	—	—

For General Rules of Pronunciation, and the Principal Exceptions, see Appendix, § 93.

\* Considered as Substantives, these names are *fem.*, all the rest are *masc.*

<sup>1</sup> These old names still hold their own by the side of the modern appellation *bc, de, fe, etc.*

## 2 X

## ACCENTS AND ORTHOGRAPHICAL SIGNS.

There are in French several signs which serve either to indicate the peculiar pronunciation of certain letters, or as the distinctive mark of words spelt alike, but of different meaning, or again, to show the suppression of letters:—

(1) The *acute accent*, l'*accent aigu* ( ' ), is placed over the vowel *e* only, to indicate that it has a *short* sound : as,

*célérité, été.*

(2) The *grave accent*, l'*accent grave* ( ` ), is placed over the vowel *e*, to indicate that it has a *broad* or *open* sound : as,

*dernière, père.*

*Observation.*—Over *a* only in *à* (prep.), *là, voilà, déjà, ça, deçà* ;  
over *u* in *où* only.

The accent grave also serves to distinguish words otherwise spelt alike : as,

*où, where ; ou, or.*

*là, there ; la, the, she.*

*à, to, at ; a, has.*

*dès, since ; des, of the.*

*ça, there ; ça* (contraction of *cela*), *that.*

(3) The *circumflex*, l'*accent circonflexe* ( ^ ), is placed over vowels with a broad or open sound : as, *âme, même, file*, and generally marks the suppression (elision) of one or more letters : as, *âne* (Old Fr. *asne*, Lat. *asinus*) ; *âme* (Old Fr. *amme*, *anme* ; Lat. *anima*) ; *sûr* (Old Fr. *seür*, Lat. *securus*) ; *vous aimâtes* (Old Fr. *amastes*, Lat. *aimastis*) ; *qu'il aimât* (Old Fr. *aimast*, *amasset*) ; *connaître* (Old Fr. *conoistre*, Lat. *cognoscere*) ; *devoûment* (for *devoûement*) ; *gaîment* (for *gaiement*).

*Observation.*—Like the accent grave, the circumflex also serves to distinguish two words otherwise spelt alike : as,

*tû, Past Perf. of taire ; tu, thou.*

*dû, „ devoir ; du, of the.*

*sûr, sure ; sur, upon.*

(4) The *Apostrophe*, l'*apostrophe*, indicates the elision of a final vowel before a word beginning with a *vowel* or *silent h* : as,

*l'ami, l'habitude*, instead of *le ami, la habitude*.

This elision (which is *not optional*) occurs in the following words :—*le ; la ; je, me, te, se ; de ; ne ; que ; jusque* ; except *je, ce, le, la*, when they stand after their Verb : as,

*j'aime, but suis-je aimé ; c'est elle, but est-ce elle ?*

*i* is elided in *si* only, before *il, ils* : as,

*s'il, s'ils, but si elle.*

The *e* of *presque* is elided only in *presqu'île* (*peninsula*).

The *e* of *entre* only in compound words : as, *entr'acte, entr'ouvert*.

The *e* of *lorsque, puisque, quoique* only before Personal Pronouns and the Indef. Article : as, *puisqu'elle, quoiqu'une* ; [in *quelque* only before *un* and *autre* : *quelqu'un, quelqu'autre*.]

The vowel is not elided before :—*huit, onze, oui : as, le huit, le huitième, le onze, le oui.*

*Observation.*—For the peculiar use of the apostrophe in *grand'mère, grand'salle, etc.*, see § 17 (*h*).

(5) The *cedilla, la cédille* (,) placed under *c* before *a, o, u*, indicates that *ç* is pronounced like *ss*, and not like *k* : *as, il perça, le garçon, reçû.*

(Before *e, i*, the *c* needs no cedilla, being then always sounded like *s*).

(6) The *diæresis, le tréma* (¨) indicates that the vowel over which it stands is pronounced separately from the vowel before it : *as,*

*naïf, Noël, heroïsme, ambiguë.*

*Observation.*—In *-guë*, the diæresis indicates that *u* is pronounced, but not *ë* ; in *-gue*, without diæresis, both *u* and *e* are mute : *as, aiguë, j'arguë* (*u* sounded), but *longue, je distingue* (*ue* mute).

(7) The *hyphen, le trait d'union* or *tiret* (-), marks the grammatical connection of two or more words :—

(a) In Compound Nouns, Adjectives, Adverbs, etc. : *as, arc-en-ciel ; Philippe-Auguste ; aigre-doux ; non-seulement.*

(b) Before Pronouns and Particles used enclitically : *as, dis-moi, lui-même, celui-ci.*

(c) In Compound numerals from 17 to 99 inclusive : *as, dix-sept, quatre-vingt-dix-neuf, etc.*

**3** THE SOUNDS.—The same letter may represent different *sounds* or different shades of one sound, only partly indicated by accents ; and conversely, the same sound may be represented by different letters or combinations of letters.

(a) *Simple Vowel Sounds* :—

(1) Short.

(2) Long.

a,	par, ma, glace, là ;	rare, âme, nation, passion.
e fermé,	et, été, parlez ; j'ai, parlai ;	musée, menuisier, charmées.
e ouvert,	sel, ennemi, quel ; parlai-je ;	fer, poète, même ; avais, aile.
(e sord, <sup>1</sup>	(mute) pure, promenade ;	(dull) me, le, ce, que.)
i, y,	si, ici, dit, système ;	vie, sortir, île, dîmes.
o fermé,	sot, joli, votre ;	rose, dôme, le vôtre, autre, beau.
o ouvert,	noble, orage ; Paul, album ;	or, fort, bord, sors ; centaure.
u,	sur, sucre, culte ;	sûr(e), ruse, nue ; eûmes.
eu fermé,	feu, jeu ; peut ;	bleue ; œufs (f silent in plur.)
eu ouvert,	neuf, peuple ; mœurs ;	meurent, leur ; cœur.
ou,	cou, oublier ;	goût, joue, Louvre.

(b) *Nasal Vowel Sounds* (peculiar to French) :—

1. an, am, en, em ;	ange, champ, cent, ensemble.
2. in, yn, im, ym } ain, aim, ein, eim }	matin, syntaxe, impossible, Olympe. main, daim, plein, Reims.
3. on, om ;	bon, long, nombre, plomb.
4. un, um, eun ;	chacun, parfum, à jeun.

<sup>1</sup> The term *e muet* is very misleading ; it has therefore been limited to the cases in which *e* is really mute.

X

(c) *Diphthongs*: i.e. combinations of two *vowel sounds* :—

oi :—	roi, croire, voile.
ui :—	lui, nuit, huitre.
ieu :—	Dieu, yeux.
ay-, oy-, uy- :—	pays, voyelle, fuyons.
ai, -ay- :—	aïeul, Bayard.

(d) *Nasal Diphthongs* :—

-ian-, ien (medial) :—	viande, patience ;
-éen-, -ien-, -yen (final) :—	Européen ; chien, je tiens ; citoyen.
-ion :—	nation ; étions.
-oin :—	loin ; coin.
-uin ; -ouin :—	juin ; baragouin.

(e) *Liquid Sounds* :—

-il (final) :—	grésil, travail, soleil, œil, fenouil.
-ill- (medial) :—	brillant, travaillons, corbeille, feuille, chatouiller.
-gn- (medial) :—	montagnard, règne, vigne, compagnon, répugnance.

*N.B.*—The conventional sign *˘* between two words denotes that in French pronunciation the final consonant of the first word must be drawn over to next word beginning with a vowel or silent *h*. In this case *s* is sounded = *z* ; *d* = *t* ; *f* = *v* ; and *g* = *k* : as,

cet\_ami, *pron.* = cè-tami ; vous\_avez = vou-zavé ;  
grand\_homme = gran-tome ; neuf\_ans = neu-van ; etc.

For special Rules on *liaison*, see Appendix, § 93.

*Division of Words into Syllables.*—Contrary to English usage, the division into syllables is not regulated by etymology ; a word is divided, either

(a) *after a consonant and before a vowel* ; or (b) *between two consonants* succeeding each other in the middle of a word [except *bl, cl, gl, pl ; br, cr, dr, fr, gr, pr, tr, vr, th*, and nasal *gn*, which are *inseparable*] ; as,

ré-vo-lu-tion ; té-mé-ri-té ; voul-oir ; pour-rai ; vien-ne.  
pro-tec-teur ; fer-mé ; vou-drai ; a-gneau.

In compound words, however, considerations of etymology assert themselves — dés-agré-able.

# ACCIDENCE.

## FIRST CHAPTER.

### THE NOUN (SUBSTANTIVE) AND ITS ADJUNCTS (ARTICLES AND ADJECTIVES).

#### 4 INTRODUCTORY.—There are in French

*two Genders* only—*Masculine* and *Feminine*. As there is no Neuter Gender, all French Nouns must be either Masculine or Feminine in grammatical *Gender*, although the things they denote may have no *sex* (for Rules, see § 18);

*two Numbers*—the *Singular* and *Plural*; the sign of the Plural is generally *s*, sometimes *x*, added to the Noun.—See Introduction.

French Nouns have *no Case-inflections*; the relations conveyed by case-inflections are, as in English, expressed by *Prepositions*, *i.e.*—

*de, of, from*, answering to the Latin Genitive or Ablative.

*à, to, at*, answering to the Latin Dative or Ablative (Locative).

A Noun may be limited or qualified in its signification by—

(1) the *Definite Article*, (2) the *Indefinite Article*, (3) the *Partitive Article*, (4) by an *Adverb of quantity*, (5) by a *Possessive Adjective*, (6) by a *Demonstrative Adjective*, (7) by *another Noun*, (8) by an *Adjective of quality*, either in the Positive, or (9) in the *Comparative* or *Superlative* degree, (10) by a *Numeral*, or an *Indefinite Pron.-Adjective*.

#### 5 I.—THE NOUN QUALIFIED BY THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

The Definite Article is—

*for the Singular—*

- le* before a *masc.* Noun beginning with a *consonant* :— *le lion, the lion.*  
*la* before a *fem.* Noun beginning with a *consonant* :— *la vache, the cow.*  
*l'* before a *masc.* or *fem.* Noun beginning with { *l'ami* (m.), *the friend.*  
a *vowel* or *silent h* :— { *l'heure* (f.), *the hour.*

*for the Plural—*

- les* before all Nouns (m. and f.), whether they { m., *les lions, les amis.*  
begin with a *vowel* or a *consonant* :— { f., *les vaches, les heures.*

When *le, les* (but not *la, l'*) are immediately preceded by *de* or *à*, they coalesce with these prepositions as follows (see Introduction) :—

*de le* into *du* :— *du lion, of the lion.*

*à le* into *au* :— *au lion, to the lion.*

*de les* into *des* :— *des lions, des vaches, des amis, of the lions, cows, etc.*

*à les* into *aux* :— *aux lions, aux vaches, aux amis, to the lions, cows, etc.*

## 6 DECLENSION OF NOUNS QUALIFIED BY THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

*Abbreviations :—**Nom.* = Nominative, *i.e.* Subject or Direct Predicate.*Acc.* = Accusative Case, *i.e.* Direct Object.*Gen.* = Genitive Case, *i.e.* Possessive Case.*[Abl.* = Ablative Case, introduced here for the sake of showing how (in analogy with Latin) the ablative relation may be expressed.]*Dat.* = Dative Case, *i.e.* Indirect (Remoter) Object.*N.B.*—Latin words and quotations are in square brackets [    ].1. *Singular.*(a) *Masculine Noun, beginning with a consonant :—*

<i>Nom.</i>		<b>Le maître</b> [magister] parle.	<i>The master is speaking.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	On respecte	<b>le maître</b> [magistrum].	<i>They respect the master.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Le livre	<b>du maître</b> [magistri].	<i>The book of the master (the master's book).</i>
<i>[Abl.</i>	Je parle	<b>du maître</b> [magistro].	<i>I speak of the master.]</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Je parle	<b>au maître</b> [magistro].	<i>I speak to the master.</i>

(b) *Feminine Noun, beginning with a consonant :—*

<i>Nom.</i>		<b>La fille</b> [filia] étudie.	<i>The girl studies.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Je loue	<b>la fille</b> [filiam].	<i>I praise the girl.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Le livre	<b>de la fille</b> [filia].	<i>The book of the girl (the girl's book).</i>
<i>[Abl.</i>	Je parle	<b>de la fille</b> [filia].	<i>I speak of the girl.]</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Je parle	<b>à la fille</b> [filia].	<i>I speak to the girl.</i>

(c) *Masculine or Feminine Noun, beginning with a vowel or silent h :—*

<i>Nom.</i>		<b>L'élève</b> écoute.	<i>The pupil listens (is listening).</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Je loue	<b>l'élève.</b>	<i>I praise the pupil.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Le livre	<b>de l'élève.</b>	<i>The book of the pupil (the pupil's book).</i>
<i>[Abl.</i>	Je parle	<b>de l'élève.</b>	<i>I speak of the pupil.]</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Je parle	<b>à l'élève.</b>	<i>I speak to the pupil.</i>

2. *Plural.**Masc. or Fem. Noun, beginning either with a consonant or a vowel :—*

<i>Nom.</i>		<b>Les maîtres et les élèves</b> parlent.	<i>The masters and the pupils are talking.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Je loue	<b>les maîtres et les élèves.</b>	<i>I praise the masters and the pupils.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Les livres	<b>des maîtres et des élèves.</b>	<i>The books of the masters and pupils (the masters' and pupils' books).</i>
<i>[Abl.</i>	Je parle	<b>des maîtres et des élèves.</b>	<i>I speak of the masters and the pupils.]</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Je parle	<b>aux maîtres et aux élèves.</b>	<i>I speak to the masters and the pupils.</i>

*Application :—*

(a)	<b>Le sel</b> est le symbole <b>de la</b> sagesse.	<i>Salt is the symbol of wisdom.</i>
(a)	<b>La</b> vie est brève.	<i>Life is short.</i>
(a)	L'oisiveté est <b>la</b> mère <b>du</b> vice.	<i>Idleness is the mother of vice.</i>
(b)	<b>Le</b> fer, l'or, et <b>la</b> platine sont précieux.	<i>Iron, gold, and platina are precious.</i>
(b)	L'homme est mortel.	<i>Man is mortal.</i>
(b)	<b>Les</b> hommes sont mortels.	<i>Men are mortal.</i>

## 7 II.—THE NOUN QUALIFIED BY THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

*m.* Un frère est un ami.      *A brother is a friend.*

*f.* Une sœur est une amie.      *A sister is a friend.*

Un used adjectively has no plural, although Nouns used indefinitely may be used in the plural (see § 8).

The cases are formed with the same prepositions as the Def. Art., but without any contractions : as,

*Nom.* Un frère et une sœur.

*A brother and a sister.*

*Acc.* J'ai un frère et une sœur.

*I have a brother and a sister.*

*Gen.* L'amour d'un frère et d'une sœur.

*The love of a brother and of a sister.*

*[Abl.* Il parle d'un frère et d'une sœur.

*He speaks of a brother and of a sister.]*

*Dat.* Je parle à un frère et à une sœur.

*I speak to a brother and to a sister.*

## 8 III.—THE NOUN QUALIFIED BY THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE.

The *Partitive Article*, which denotes that only a *part* or *fraction* of a whole is taken, is the same as the Genitive (Possessive) case of the *Definite Article* (see § 6) :—

*Singular.**Plural.*

Donne-moi *Give me*

Donnez-moi *Give me*

*m.* du fruit, *some (any) fruit.*

des fruits, *some (any) fruits.*

de l'argent, *some (any) money.*

des abricots, *some (any) apricots.*

*f.* de la toile, *some (any) cloth.*

des toiles, *some (any) cloths.*

de l'eau, *some (any) water.*

des oranges, *some (any) oranges.*

*Caution.*—The partitive adjectives *some, any*, are often omitted in English ; but in French the *Part. Art.* is never omitted : as,

*Here is bread, Voici du pain ;*

*I have money, J'ai de l'argent.*

*Observation 1.*—The plural form of the *Part. Art.* also does duty for the plural of the *Indefinite Art.* (see § 7) : as,

*Singular.**Plural.*

J'ai un ami. *I have a friend.*

J'ai des amis. *I have friends.*

Tu as une cousine. *Thou hast a cousin.*

Tu as des cousines. *Thou hast cousins.*

*Observation 2.*—When the Noun used partitively is preceded by a qualifying Adjective, *de* alone, without the Def. Art., is used : compare—

J'ai du lait, de l'eau, et des raisins ;  
with J'ai de bon lait, de bonne eau, et de beaux raisins.

*Observation 3.*—The Adjective sometimes forms with the following Noun a compound Substantive, in which case the general rule holds good :—

Elle boit du petit-lait.

*She drinks whey.*

## 9 IV.—THE NOUN QUALIFIED BY AN ADVERB OR NOUN OF QUANTITY.

When *part* or *fractions* of the thing (or things) denoted by the Noun are expressed, *i.e.* if the Noun is preceded by an Adverb or a Noun denoting *quantity, measure, weight, etc.*, then 'de' alone, without the *Def. Art.* must be used: as,

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Beaucoup de fruit (m.)	<i>Much fruit.</i>	Beaucoup de raisins.	<i>Many grapes.</i>
Trop d'argent (m.)	<i>Too much money.</i>	Trop d'ennemis.	<i>Too many enemies.</i>
Une livre de viande (f.)	<i>A pound of meat.</i>	Une livre de cerises.	<i>A pound of cherries.</i>
Un verre d'eau (f.)	<i>A glass of water.</i>	Un plat de légumes.	<i>A dish of vegetables.</i>
Il n'a pas de pain.	<i>He has no bread.</i>	Il n'a point d'amis.	<i>He has no friends.</i>

## 10 V.—THE NOUN QUALIFIED BY A POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE.

A Possessive Adjective agrees in *Gender* and *Number* with the Substantive it qualifies:

	<i>Singular.</i>	
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
1. Mon frère et	ma <sup>1</sup> sœur.	<i>My brother and my sister.</i>
2. Ton fils et	ta <sup>1</sup> fille.	<i>Thy son and thy daughter.</i>
3. Son cousin et	sa <sup>1</sup> cousine.	<i>His (her) cousins (m. and f.)</i>
1. Notre maître et	notre maîtresse.	<i>Our master and our mistress.</i>
2. Votre oncle et	votre tante.	<i>Your uncle and your aunt.</i>
3. Leur neveu et	leur nièce.	<i>Their nephew and their niece.</i>
	<i>Plural.</i>	
1. Mes frères et	mes sœurs.	<i>My brothers and sisters.</i>
2. Tes fils et	tes filles.	<i>Thy sons and daughters.</i>
3. Ses cousins et	ses cousines.	<i>His (her) cousins (m. and f.)</i>
1. Nos maîtres et	nos maîtresses.	<i>Our masters and mistresses.</i>
2. Vos oncles et	vos tantes.	<i>Your uncles and aunts.</i>
3. Leurs neveux et	leurs nièces.	<i>Their nephews and nieces.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Before a *feminine* Noun or Adjective beginning with a vowel or silent *h*, *ma*, *ta*, and *sa* are, for the sake of avoiding a *hiatus*, *i.e.* the unpleasant sound of two vowels in close succession, changed into *mon*, *ton*, *son*: as,

*Mon amie est plus discrète que ton amie.* *My friend (f.) is more discreet than your friend.*  
*Son habit n'est pas neuf.* *His (her) coat is not new.*

Compare the English:—*a tree, an ass, an heir*; though, of course, *an* in English is the original, and *a* the clipped, form.

*Observation 1.*--In French the Possessive Adjective takes the *gender of the Noun qualified* by it, whilst in English it takes the *gender of the Noun denoting the possessor*: as,

Il a perdu son crayon (m.) et sa plume (f.) *HE has lost HIS pencil and HIS pen.*  
 Elle a trouvé son crayon (m.) et sa plume (f.) *SHE has found HER pencil and HER pen.*

The relations of case are expressed by Prepositions: as,

Les études de mon frère et de<sup>1</sup> ma sœur. *The studies of my brother and sister.*  
 Il répond à mon père et à<sup>1</sup> ma mère. *He replies to my father and mother.*  
 Elle demeure chez son oncle (la tante). *She lives with her uncle (aunt).*

<sup>1</sup> Observe the repetition of *de* and *à*.

## 11 VI.—THE NOUN QUALIFIED BY THE DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE.

*Singular—Masculine.*

Ce chêne et ce hêtre sont hauts. *This oak and that beech-tree are high.*  
 Cet été et cet hiver sont longs. *This summer and that winter are long.*

*Feminine.*

Cette lame et cette hache sont d'acier. *This blade and that axe are steel.*  
 Cette anecdote et cette histoire sont jolies. *This anecdote and that story are pretty.*

*Plural—Masc. and Fem. alike.*

m. ces chênes, ces hêtres, ces étés, *These (those) oaks, beeches, summers,*  
     ces hivers. *winters.*  
 f. ces lames, ces haches, ces anecdotes, *These (those) blades, axes, anecdotes,*  
     ces histoires. *stories.*

The form of the Demonstrative Adjective is—

Ce before *masculine Nouns singular*, beginning with a *consonant*.  
 Cet before *masculine Nouns singular*, beginning with a *vowel* or *silent h*.  
 Cette before all *feminine Nouns singular*.  
 Ces before all *masculine and feminine Nouns plural*.

*Observation.*—Ce marchand; *this dealer*; cet honnête marchand; *this honest tradesman*.  
 Cet homme; *this man*; ce brave homme; *this worthy man*.

*Observation.*—The distinction between *this* and *that*, pl. *these* and *those*, is indicated by affixing *-ci* or *-là* to the Noun : as,

Ce livre-ci et ce livre-là.	<i>This book (here) and that book (there).</i>
Cet arbre-là et cet arbre-ci.	<i>That tree (there), and this tree (here).</i>
Ces arbres-ci et ces arbres-là.	<i>These trees (here) and those trees (there).</i>
Cette plume-ci et cette plume-là.	<i>This pen (here) and that pen (there).</i>
Ces plumes-ci et ces plumes-là.	<i>These pens (here) and those pens (there).</i>

## 12 SYNOPSIS TABLE OF THE DIFFERENT WAYS IN WHICH THE SAME NOUN MAY BE LIMITED.

<i>Singular.</i>				
DEFINITE : <i>the.</i>	PARTITIVE : <i>some, any.</i>	INDEFINITE : <i>a, an.</i>	POSSESSIVE : <i>my.</i>	DEMONSTRATIVE : <i>this.</i>
<i>m.</i> le vin ;	du vin ;	un vin ;	mon vin ;	ce vin.
,, l'acier ;	de l'acier ;	un acier ;	mon acier ;	cet acier.
<i>f.</i> la glace ;	de la glace ;	une glace ;	ma glace ;	cette glace.
,, l'eau ;	de l'eau ;	une eau ;	mon eau ;	cette eau.
<i>Plural, the same for m. and f.; both before a consonant or a vowel.</i>				
les vins ;	des vins ;	des vins ;	mes vins ;	ces vins.
les aciers ;	des aciers ;	des aciers ;	mes aciers ;	ces aciers.
les glaces ;	des glaces ;	des glaces ;	mes glaces ;	ces glaces.
les eaux ;	des eaux ;	des eaux ;	mes eaux ;	ces eaux.

## 13 FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives, used attributively or predicatively, agree in *Number* and *Gender* (see § 19) with the Substantive they qualify, whether they stand before or after it:—

*General Rule* (for the origin of Plural formations, see *Introduction*):—

Add *-s* to all Nouns not specified under § 14, 15 : as,

*Sing.* Le vrai ami est fidèle. *A true friend is faithful.*

*Plur.* Les vrais amis sont fidèles. *True friends are faithful.*

## 14 Special Rules:—

(a) Nouns ending in *-s*, *-x*, *-z* (sibilants) remain unchanged:—

Ce Français est prétentieux. *This Frenchman is pretentious.*

Ces Français sont prétentieux. *These Frenchmen are pretentious.*

La noix est un fruit délicieux. *The nut is a delicious fruit.*

Les noix sont des fruits délicieux. *Nuts are delicious fruits.*

(b) Nouns ending in *-au*, *-eu*, take *x* (see *Introduction*):—

Son beau château est vieux. *His fine castle is old.*

Ses beaux châteaux sont vieux. *His fine castles are old.*

Leur nouveau jeu est amusant. *Their new game is amusing.*

Leurs nouveaux jeux sont amusants. *Their new games are amusing.*

\* *Bleu*, *blue*, takes *-s*:—les ciels sont bleus, *the skies are blue*.

*Observation.*—Of Nouns ending in *-ou*, only the following seven take *x*:—

les bijoux, *the jewels* ; les genoux, *the knees*.

les cailloux, *the pebbles* ; les hiboux, *the owls*.

les choux, *the cabbages* ; les joujoux, *the playthings*.

les poux, *the lice* ; but—les clous, les trous, etc.

(c) Nouns ending in **-al** or **-ail** change their ending into **-aux** :—

Votre cheval est précieux.	Your horse is precious.
Vos chevaux sont précieux.	Your horses are precious.
Leur travail est pénible.	Their work is hard.
Leurs travaux sont pénibles.	Their works are hard.
Le bien national.	The national property.
Les biens nationaux.	The national property.

Observation 1.—The following Substantives in **-al** and **-ail** take **-s** :—

Les bals, dances ;	les carnivals, carnivals ;	les pals, stakes.
Les cals, callosities ;	les chacals, jackals ;	les régals, treats.
Les attirails, gears ;	les épouvantails, scare-	les mails, mails, mallets.
Les bercails, sheepfolds ;	crows ;	les poitrails, breast-pieces.
(unusual in plur.)	les éventails, fans ;	les portails, front gate.
Les détails, details ;	les gouvernails, rudders ;	ways.

Observation 2.—The following in **-l** have two forms for the plural, each with a different meaning :—

l'aïeul, the grandfather,	les aïeux, the ancestors,	les aïeuls, grandfathers.
le ciel, the sky, heaven,	les cieux, the heavens, skies,	les ciels, skies in pictures, climate, bed-testers.
l'œil, the eye,	les yeux, the eyes,	les œils (œils - de - bœuf) oval windows.
l'appât, the bait,	les appas, the charms,	les appâts, baits.
le travail, the work,	les travaux, the works,	les travaux (1) reports (of a minister), (2) traves.
l'ail, garlic,	les aulx, common plural,	les ails, botanical term.
le bétail, cattle, has no plural ;	but bestiaux is used in the same sense.	

For a full list of *Nouns* :—

- (a) used in the *Plural* only, see Appendix, § 94 (a).
- (b) of foreign origin which do not change in the *Plural*, § 94 (b).
- (c) used with a different meaning in the *Singular* and in the *Plural*, § 94 (c).

For Compound Nouns, see § 17.

## 15

## NOUNS THAT DO NOT TAKE THE PLURAL INFLECTION.

(a) *Indeclinable Parts of Speech* ; i.e. Adverbs (and Adverbial Phrases), Prepositions, Conjunctions, Interjections, and also the letters of the alphabet :—

Les si et les mais.	The ifs and buts.
Les pourquoi et les parce que.	The why and because.
Les pour et les contre.	The pros and cons.
Les tête-à-tête (see § 17).	Private interviews.
Des a mal formés.	Ill-shaped A's.

(b) *Proper Names* : as,

Les Corneille, les Molière, les Racine ont illustré le siècle de Louis XIV.	Corneille, Molière, Racine have given lustre to the age of Louis XIV.
---	---

Except a few which denote historical names of families :—

Les Tarquins, les Gracques, les Antonins, [cp. Lat. Tarquinii, Gracchi, etc.]	
Les Condés, les Guises, les Capets, les Bourbons, les Stuarts, etc.	

\* aval = endorsement  
 mural = a sea unicorn  
 ... = a dyestuff  
 ... of Lyon

X

(c) *Foreign Nouns* which have not been assimilated to French :—

Lat.—Les **credo**; les **avé**, etc.

Les **fac-similé**; les **post-scriptum**, etc., see *Appendix*, § 94 (a).

*Observation*.—Many *abstract* and *collective* French Nouns are freely used in the *Plural*, whilst their English equivalents are generally only used in the *Singular*:—

Les **ardeurs** de la canicule. Les **clartés** immortelles.

Les **trompeuses douceurs** du monde. Les **salutaires amertumes**.

Les **grands courages**. Les **adversités**.

Les **grandes chaleurs**. Les **pluies** continuelles.

Des **ors** et des **cuvres** de différentes couleurs.

## 16

## VII.—COMPOUND NOUNS.

(a) NOUN + NOUN.

(1) WITHOUT ARTICLE :

(a) in *Apposition* : the latter standing as a rule *after* the Noun it qualifies ; *exceptionally only before* it : as,

la pierre-ponce, *pumice-stone* ;

le chou-fleur, *cauliflower*.

l'hôtel de ville, *town hall* ;

but— le chef-lieu, *chief county-town*.

(β) In *Genitive* relation ; with **de** expressed or understood : as,

le chef-d'œuvre, *masterpiece* ;

l'huile d'olive, *olive oil*.

l'arc de triomphe, *triumphal arch* ;

l'encre de Chine, *Indian ink*.

le chemin de fer, *railway* ;

le maître-autel, *chief altar*.

le timbre-poste, *postage stamp* ;

le garde-chasse, *gamekeeper*.

(2) WITH **de** + DEFINITE ARTICLE :

le vent du nord, *north wind* ;

le droit des gens, *international law*.

Compare—

*Definite and Substantival*,

with

*Indefinite and Adjectival* :

la tour de l'église, *the tower of the church* ;

une tour d'église, *a church tower*.

le palais de la reine, *the queen's palace* ;

un port de reine, *a queenly bearing*.

le jeu de l'enfant, *the child's play-thing* ;

un jeu d'enfant, *child's play*.

(3) LINKED BY **à** (without or with the Article), to denote *aptness*, *destination*, *purpose*, and especially the *characteristic feature* :—

la pompe à incendie, *fire-engine* ;

le bateau à vapeur, *steamboat*.

le serpent à sonnettes, *rattlesnake* ;

le moulin à vent, *windmill*.

le marché au blé, *corn-market* ;

l'éclairage au gaz, *gas lighting*.

une tarte à la crème, *cream tart* ;

chocolat à la vanille, *vanilla chocolate*.

la poste aux lettres, *letter post* ;

la foire aux vanités, *vanity fair*.

Compare—

le verre à vin, *the wine glass* ;

le verre de vin, *glass of wine*.

la tasse à thé, *the tea-cup* ;

la tasse de thé, *cup of tea*.

Compare—

*Definite and Substantival*,

with

*Indefinite and Adjectival* :

la boîte aux lettres, *letter-box* ;

le papier à lettres, *letter paper*.

le pot au lait, *the pot in which the milk is kept* ;

un pot à lait, *a milk pot*.

(4) LINKED BY **en**, AND A FEW OTHER PREPOSITIONS : as,

l'arc-en-ciel, *rainbow* ;

le général en chef, *general in chief*.

Châlon-sur-Saône, *Châlon on the Saône* ; Bachelier-ès-<sup>1</sup>lettres, *Bachelor of Letters*.

<sup>1</sup> **ès** is an archaic form of contraction of **en** + **les**.

## (b) NOUN + ADJECTIVE.

(1) the Adjective standing *before* the Noun : as,le libre échange, *free trade*.la grand'mère (see § 17 (h) *Obs.*), *grand-mother*.le haut fourneau, *blast furnace*.le petit-fils, *grandson*.le grand-père, *grandfather*.la petite-fille, *grand-daughter*.le bon marché, *bargain*.la chauve-souris, *the bat*.(2) the Adjective standing *after* the Noun : as,le bal masqué, *the masked ball*.le garde champêtre, *the rural guard*.le nom propre, *the proper Noun*.le parti pris, *the decisive resolution*.l'école normale, *the normal school*.le témoin oculaire, *the eye-witness*.la carte postale, *the postcard*.l'eau-forte, *aqua-fortis*.

## (c) NOUN + VERB.

le porte-drapeau, *standard-bearer*.l'abat-jour, *lamp-shade*.le marche pied, *footstool*.le garde-manger, *meat-safe*.la chambre à coucher, *bedroom*.la salle à manger, *dining-room*.la poêle à frire, *frying-pan*.la machine à coudre, *sewing machine*.

## 17

## PLURAL OF COMPOUND NOUNS.

*Preliminary Remark.* — No other Parts of Speech than Nouns and Adjectives, entering into the composition of a word, can take the sign of the Plural, and even these only when they are really used *substantively and adjectively* :—

(a) *Noun + Noun* ; add the sign of the plural to *both* : as,

le chou-fleur,

les choux-fleurs,

*cauliflowers*.

le chef-lieu,

les chefs-lieux,

*chief county-towns*.(b) *Noun + Adjective*, or *Adj. + Noun* ; add the sign of the Plural to *both* : as,

le cerf-volant,

les cerfs-volants,

*kites*.

le garde-champêtre,

les gardes-champêtres,

*rural guards*.

la chauve-souris,

les chauves-souris (end-

*bats*.ing in *s* in sing.),(c) *Noun + Prep. + Noun* ; add the sign of the Plural to the *first Noun* only (comp. English— man of war ; plur. *men* of war) : as,

le chef-d'œuvre,

les chefs-d'œuvre,

*masterpieces*.

l'arc-en-ciel,

les arcs-en-ciel,

*rainbows*.

le ver-à-soie,

les vers-à-soie,

*silkworms*.So also *Noun + (Prep. implied) + Noun* : as,

timbre-poste

les timbres-poste,

*postage stamps*.

(i.e. timbre de poste),

(d) *Adv. or Prep. + Noun* ; add the sign of the Plural to the *Noun* only : as,

l'arrière-pensée,

les arrière-pensées,

*mental reservations*.

l'avant-coureur,

les avant-coureurs,

*forerunners*.

le contre-amiral,

les contre-amiraux,

*rear-admirals*.



*Fourth Latin Declension :*

le grade [gradus], rank.

la main [manus], hand.

*Fifth Latin Declension :*

le midi [meridiem], noon.

une effigie [effigiem], a figure, image.

*Important Exception.*—Most French Nouns in **-eur**, though nearly all derived from Latin Nouns in **-or**, **-oris**, are *feminine*<sup>1</sup>:—la chaleur, heat; la fleur, flower; la peur, fear; la faveur, favour.

<sup>1</sup> [Un honneur, le labeur, les pleurs, alone have remained faithful to their original gender.]

## (b) GENDER ASCERTAINED BY MEANING :

*Masculine*:—the Names of—

Males:—l'homme, man; le garçon, boy; le lion.

Days, Months, Seasons, Winds:—le lundi, Monday; le mai, le printemps, spring; l'aquilon, north wind.

Metals, Mountains, Trees:—le fer, iron; le Vésuve; le pommier, apple-tree.

Other Parts of Speech used substantively:—le boire et le manger, eating and drinking.

*Feminine*:—the Names of—

Females:—la femme, woman; la fille, daughter, girl; la poule, hen.

Virtues and Vices:—la charité, cette intempérance.

Holy-days:—la St. Jean (Midsummer day).

Names of Fruits, Flowers, Countries, Towns, and Rivers, as a rule, are—

*Masculine*, if not ending in *e* mute:—

le raisin, le lis,

le Portugal, le Danemark,

le beau Paris,

le Rhin (also—le Rhône).

*Feminine*, if ending in *e* mute:—

la pomme, la rose,

la France, la Grande Bretagne,

cette opulente Carthage,

la Loire, la Tamise, Thames.

For Special Rules and Exceptions, see Appendix, § 99.

## (c) GENDER ASCERTAINED BY TERMINATION :

(1) *Masculine*: Nouns ending in—a sounded vowel or diphthong:—l'opéra, le café, coffee; le feu, fire, etc.  
most consonants:—le plomb, lead; le dard, dart; le soleil, sun, etc.**-aire**, **-ment**:—le dictionnaire; le complément.**-age**, **-ège**:—le carnage; le voyage; le cortège.**-asme**, **-isme**, **-iste**:—cet enthousiasme, le schisme (pron. chiss-me).**-cle**, **-ème**, **-ôme**:—un article; le système, le diplôme.(2) *Feminine*: Nouns ending in—*e* mute<sup>1</sup> preceded by a vowel or diphthong:—la proie, prey; la pluie, rain;  
une araignée, spider.the other endings in *e* mute not mentioned above (1) (*Masc.*):—

la bouteille, bottle; la présence, la constance, la campagne, etc.

**-ion**, **-son**, **-çon**:—la portion, la maison, la leçon, etc.**-eur**, **-té**, **-tié**:—la faveur, la faculté, cette amitié.

<sup>1</sup> The best corrective to the common, but very misleading, rule that Nouns ending in *e* mute are Feminine, is to be found in (a), i.e. French Nouns derived from Latin Masculine and Neuter Nouns are Masculine in French—le cerele [cerculus]; le verbe [verbum].

## 19 VIII.—THE SUBSTANTIVE LIMITED BY AN ADJECTIVE OF QUALITY.

(For Exceptions, Philological Remarks, etc., see opposite page.)

An Adjective agrees in *Gender*, as in *Number* (see § 13), with the Substantive it qualifies; to apply this rule it is necessary to know the different ways of forming the Feminine of Adjectives:—

### FORMATION OF THE FEMININE OF ADJECTIVES.

*General Rule*:—

Add **-e** mute to all Adjectives not specified further on, see § 20: as,

<i>m.</i>	Le fruit <b>vert</b> n'est pas <b>mûr</b> .	<i>Green fruit is not ripe.</i>
<i>f.</i>	La pomme <b>verte</b> n'est pas <b>mûre</b> .	<i>The green apple is not ripe.</i>
<i>m.pl.</i>	Les fruits <b>verts</b> ne sont pas <b>mûrs</b> .	<i>Green fruits are not ripe.</i>
<i>f.pl.</i>	Les pommes <b>vertes</b> ne sont pas <b>mûres</b> .	<i>Green apples are not ripe.</i>

Observe:—**Aigu**, *f.*; **aiguë**, *acute*; **ambigu**, *f.*; **ambiguë**, *ambiguous*, to indicate that **u** is to be sounded distinctly, whilst without diæresis the **u** in **-gue** or **-que** is only the sign of a hard **g** or **c**, and is not sounded. See §§ 81 and 93.

## 20 *Special Rules*:—

(a) Adjectives ending in **-e** mute in the *masc.* form, *remain unchanged*; as—

Un ami <b>fidèle</b> est <b>sincère</b> ( <i>m.</i> )	} <i>A faithful friend is sincere.</i>
Une amie <b>fidèle</b> est <b>sincère</b> ( <i>f.</i> )	
Les amis <b>fidèles</b> sont <b>sincères</b> ( <i>m. pl.</i> )	} <i>Faithful friends are sincere.</i>
Les amies <b>fidèles</b> sont <b>sincères</b> ( <i>f. pl.</i> )	

(b) Adjectives ending in **-x** change this **x** into **s**, and add **-e** mute: as,

L'or est un métal <b>précieux</b> ( <i>m.</i> )	<i>Gold is a precious metal.</i>
Le diamant est une pierre <b>précieuse</b> ( <i>f.</i> )	<i>The diamond is a precious stone.</i>
L'or et l'argent sont des métaux <b>précieux</b> ( <i>m. pl.</i> )	<i>Gold and silver are precious metals.</i>
Le diamant et le rubis sont des pierres <b>précieuses</b> ( <i>f. pl.</i> )	<i>The diamond and ruby are precious stones.</i>

Thus—**jalou-x**, *jealous*; **heureu-x**, **-se**, *happy, fortunate*; **silencieu-x**, **-se**, *silent*, etc.

(c) Adjectives ending in **-f** change this **f** into **v**, and add **-e** mute: as,

L'écolier <b>attentif</b> ( <i>m.</i> ) est récompensé.	} <i>The attentive pupil is rewarded.</i>
L'élève <b>attentive</b> ( <i>f.</i> ) est récompensée.	
Les écoliers <b>attentifs</b> ( <i>m. pl.</i> ) sont récompensés.	} <i>The attentive pupils are rewarded.</i>
Les écolières <b>attentives</b> ( <i>f. pl.</i> ) sont récompensées.	

Thus—**vif**, *lively*; **neuf**, *new*; **juif**, *Jewish*, etc.

(d) Adjectives ending in **-c** change this **c** into **qu**, and add **-e** mute: as,

L'édifice <b>public</b> ( <i>m.</i> ) est utile.	<i>The public edifice is useful.</i>
L'autorité <b>publique</b> ( <i>f.</i> ) est respectée.	<i>The public authority is respected.</i>
Les édifices <b>publics</b> ( <i>m. pl.</i> ) sont utiles.	<i>Public edifices are useful.</i>
Les autorités <b>publiques</b> ( <i>f. pl.</i> ) sont respectées.	<i>Public authorities are respected.</i>

Thus—**turc**, *Turkish*, etc.

In—*grec*, *f. grecque*, *Greek, Grecian*, the **c** is retained.

Thus **g** = **gu**, to indicate that it remains *hard*, in—*long*, *f. longu-e*, *long*.

PHILOLOGICAL REMARKS, ETC., TO THE RULES ON THE OPPOSITE PAGE.

*Most adjectives reproduce in their feminine form the Latin final stem-consonant dropped or altered in French in the Masculine form; hence most irregularities occur in the Masculine:—*

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Lat.</i>	
bénin,	bénigne;	[benignus]	<i>benign.</i>
malin,	maligne;	[malignus]	<i>malignant.</i>
absous,	absoute;	[absolutus]	<i>absolved.</i>
dissous,	dissoute;	[dissolutus]	<i>dissolved.</i>

Compare also § 20 (*b, c, f*)—

belliqueux,	belliqueuse;	[bellicosus]	<i>bellicose.</i>
neuf,	neuve;	[novus]	<i>new.</i>

Adjectives and substantives in *-er* have their masc. ending strengthened into *-êr*, and *e* mute added (comp. § 61): as,

cher, chère [carus], *dear*; berger, bergère, [vervecem], *shepherd(-ess)*.

Thus also the following in *-et*:—

complet,	complète	[completus]	<i>complete.</i>
concret,	concrète	[concretus]	<i>concrete.</i>
discret,	discrète	[discretus]	<i>discreet.</i>
inquiet,	inquiète	[inquietus]	<i>uneasy.</i>
replet,	replète	[repletus]	<i>replete.</i>
secret,	secrète	[secretus]	<i>secret.</i>

Plénière is used in fem. only:—Cour plénière, indulgence plénière.

The two following have thrown off the Lat. final stem-cons. in the Masc.:—

Mon auteur favori.	<i>My favourite author.</i>
Ma lecture favorite [favoritus].	<i>My favourite reading.</i>
Il se tient coi; elle se tient coite [quietus].	<i>He (she) keeps quiet.</i>

Notice also—

Le tiers-état, *the third estate (commons)*; *f.* la tierce partie, *the third part.*

*Obs. to (b).* In accordance with the general philological Rule above:—

<i>m.</i> Le poil roux, <i>red hair.</i>	<i>f.</i> La barbe rousse [russa], <i>red beard.</i>
Le miel doux, <i>sweet honey.</i>	L'eau douce [dulcis], <i>sweet (fresh) water.</i>

Thus also (though there is no *ss* in Latin)—

Faux témoin, *false witness*; *f.* fausse alarme, *false alarm.*

Hébreu is used in masc. only:—

Texte hébreu, *pl. livres hébreux*; but, *m.* and *f.*, un caractère (la langue) hébraïque.

*Obs. to (c).* In accordance with the general Rule above:—

Un bref délai, *a brief delay.* Il a la parole brève [brevis].

Brief and cursif are not used in the masc.:—

Une brève description (narration). Une écriture *cursive*.

*Obs. to (d).* The following in *-c*, and one in *-s*, change this into *ch*:—

Le sucre blanc, <i>white sugar.</i>	La neige blanche (O.G. blanch), <i>white snow.</i>
Le ton franc, <i>frankmanner of speaking.</i>	La parole franche <sup>1</sup> (O.G. franco), <i>out-spokenness.</i>
Le raisin sec, <i>raisin (dry).</i>	La figue sèche [siccus, see Introd.], <i>dry fig.</i>
Le teint frais, <i>healthy complexion.</i>	L'eau fraîche [O.G. frisc], <i>fresh water.</i>

<sup>1</sup> La langue *franque*; a mixture of French, Italian, Spanish, etc., spoken by Europeans of the lower class in the Levant.

(e) Adjectives ending in *-ien, -el, -eil, -on*, double their final consonant, and add *e* mute: as,

Un usage **ancien**. *An old custom.* Des usages **anciens**. *Old customs.*  
 La langue **ancienne**. *The ancient* Les langues **anciennes**. *Ancient languages.*  
*language.*

Thus—**bon, bonne**, *good*; **chrétien, chrétienne**, *Christian*;  
**cruel, cruelle**, *cruel*; **pareil, pareille**, *like*; etc.

*Observation.*—The following in *-et, -ais, -ès, -ot, -os, -as, -il, -ul*, also double their final stem-consonants, most of them in accordance with the General Philological Rule above, p. 17:—

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
un frère cadet,	une sœur cadette,	<i>younger brother, younger sister.</i>
un esprit coquet,	une humeur coquette,	<i>coquettish mind, coquettish humour.</i>
un visage fluët,	une mine fluette,	<i>a delicate face, a delicate countenance.</i>
un oracle muet,	une douleur muette,	<i>a dumb oracle, a silent grief.</i>
un profit net,	une vue nette,	<i>clear profit, a clear sight.</i>
un pays sujet,	une ville sujette,	<i>a subject country, a subject town.</i>
<i>So also</i> —brunet- <b>te</b> , doucet- <b>te</b> , demure;		<i>douillet-<b>te</b>, molet-<b>te</b>, tender.</i>
un nuage épais,	neige épaisse,	<i>a thick cloud, deep snow.</i>
un ordre exprès,	une défense expresse,	<i>an explicit order, explicit prohibition.</i>
un religieux profès,	une religieuse professe.	<i>a professed monk, a professed nun.</i>
un plafond bas,	une stature basse,	<i>a low platform, a low stature.</i>
avoir les yeux las,	la main lasse,	<i>to have tired eyes, tired hands.</i>
<i>Used in fem. only</i> —crasse ignorance,		<i>coarse ignorance.</i>
le bœuf gras,	de la viande grasse,	<i>fat ox, fat meat.</i>
un sot discours,	une sottie entreprise,	<i>a foolish discourse, a foolish enterprise.</i>
<i>So also</i> —bellot- <b>te</b> , <i>pretty</i> ; vieillot- <b>te</b> , <i>oldish</i> .		
un gentil enfant,	une gentille petite fille,	<i>a well-bred child, a gentle little girl.</i>
nul homme,	nulle part,	<i>no man, nowhere.</i>

(f) FIVE Adjectives have *two forms* for the *Masc. Sing.*: one used before a Noun beginning with a *consonant*, the other before a *vowel* or *silent h*. The *Fem.* of these is formed from the latter by doubling the final consonant, and adding *e* mute, see (e): as,

<i>m.</i> {	Le beau verger.	<i>The fine orchard.</i>
	Le bel arbre ( <i>pl. les beaux arbres</i> ).	<i>the fine tree (trees).</i>
<i>f.</i>	La belle prairie.	<i>the fine meadow.</i>
<i>m.</i> {	Le nouveau monde.	<i>The new world.</i>
	Le nouvel habit	<i>} the new coat (coats).</i>
	( <i>pl. les nouveaux habits</i> ).	
<i>f.</i>	La nouvelle mode ( <i>année</i> ).	<i>the new fashion (year).</i>
<i>m.</i> {	Le vieux mendiant.	<i>The old beggar.</i>
	Le vieil ami ( <i>pl. vieux amis</i> ).	<i>the old friend (friends).</i>
<i>f.</i>	La vieille sorcière.	<i>the old hag.</i>
<i>m.</i> {	Le fou rire.	<i>The irresistible (lit. foolish) laughter.</i>
	Un fol espoir ( <i>pl. unusual</i> ).	<i>a foolish hope.</i>
<i>f.</i>	Une folle entreprise.	<i>a desperate undertaking.</i>

m.	{ Du fromage <b>mou</b> .	<i>Soft cheese.</i>
	{ Un <b>mol</b> abandon ( <i>pl. unusual</i> ).	<i>an indolent listlessness.</i>
f.	Une <b>molle</b> oisiveté.	<i>a sluggish idleness.</i>

*Obs. to (f)*—1. Notice as a remnant of Old Fr.:—Philippe le **Bel**; Charles le **Bel**; also the adverbial phrase:—**bel** et bien, *fully and fairly, roundly*.

2. Here may be classed—jumeau, jumelle [Lat. *gemellus*], *twin*.

3. Vieux homme, vieux ivrogne, vieux ami, etc., are, however, not at all unusual in familiar style.

(g) ADJECTIVES AND NOUNS ENDING IN **-eur** :—

There are *four* different classes of Adjectives and Nouns in **-eur** :—

(1) Those implying an idea of *comparison*, *i.e.* derived from Lat. comparatives, take **e** mute in the feminine: as,

Supérieur-**e**; antérieur-**e**; postérieur-**e**; extérieur-**e**; intérieur-**e**; meilleur-**e**, *better*; mineur-**e**.

Le rang inférieur.	<i>The inferior</i>	La région inférieure.	<i>The inferior</i>
	<i>rank.</i>		<i>region.</i>

(2) Those derived from a *Present Participle* by turning **-ant** into **-eur**, change **-r** into **-se**: as,

*Pres. Part.*                      *Adjective or Noun.*

flatt-ant; m. flatt-eur, f. flatt-euse; *flattering*.

parl-ant; parl-eur, parl-euse; *talker, talkative, etc.*

pêch-ant; pêch-eur, pêch-euse; *fisherman*.

Un homme trompeur.	<i>A deceitful</i>	Une femme trompeuse.	<i>A deceitful</i>
	<i>man</i>		<i>woman.</i>

(3) Those ending in **-teur** not derived from a *Present Participle* (mostly from Latin Nouns in **-tor**, *f. -trix*) change **-teur** into **-trice**: as,

Direc-teur, *director*, direc-trice; lec-teur, *reader*, lec-trice.

Un génie créateur.	<i>A creative</i>	Puissance creatrice.	<i>A creative</i>
	<i>genius.</i>		<i>power.</i>

(4) In a few *poetical* and *legal* terms **-eur** is changed into **-eresse**:

Un Dieu vengeur.	<i>An avenging God.</i>	Divinité vengeresse.	<i>Avenging</i>
			<i>Godhead.</i>

For full lists of

Nouns which form their Feminine

(a) in **-esse**; (b) in **-eresse**; (c) **-ice**, **-ante**, etc.;

Names of Persons and Animals which radically differ in Masc. and Fem.;

Adjectives which form their Fem. irregularly, in alphabetical order, and

Compound Adjectives, see Appendix, §§ 95 and 96.

For Nouns of *different gender* in *Sing.* and *Plur.*, see § 97 (a).

For Nouns of *both genders* according to *Meaning*, see § 97 (b)

## 21 IX.—THE NOUN QUALIFIED BY AN ADJECTIVE IN THE POSITIVE, COMPARATIVE, AND SUPERLATIVE DEGREE.

Comparisons may be divided into those of (a) *superiority*, (b) *equality*, and (c) *inferiority*.

### (a) SUPERIORITY :

#### *Positive.*

L'air est **léger**.

*Air is light.*

#### *Comparative.*

L'air est **plus léger** que l'eau.

*Air is lighter than water.*

#### *Superlative.*

*m.s.* Le gaz est **le plus léger** des corps.

*Gas is the lightest body.*

*f.s.* C'est **la plus légère** des substances.

*It is the lightest substance.*

*m.pl.* Les gaz sont **les plus légers** des corps.

*Gases are the lightest bodies.*

*f.pl.* Ce sont les substances **les plus légères**.

*They are the lightest substances.*

*f.pl.* Ce sont **les plus légères** substances.

*stances.*

### (b) EQUALITY :

Ce vin est **aussi bon** que celui-là.

*This wine is as good as that.*

Ceci est **tout aussi utile** que cela.

*This is quite as useful as that.*

Cela n'a **pas moins** de trente pieds.

*That is not less than thirty feet.*

### (c) INFERIORITY :

Elle est **moins jolie** que sa sœur.

*She is less pretty than (not*

Elle n'est **pas si jolie** que sa sœur.

*so pretty as) her sister.*

22 The following Adjectives form their *degrees of comparison irregularly*; the irregularities spring from the corresponding Latin forms :—

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
Ce vin est <b>bon</b> ;	celui-là est <b>meilleur</b> ;	c'est <b>le meilleur</b> .
<i>This wine is good ;</i>	<i>that is better ;</i>	<i>it is the best.</i>
Cette eau est <b>bonne</b> ;	celle-là est <b>meilleure</b> ;	c'est <b>la meilleure</b> .
<i>This water is good ;</i>	<i>that is better ;</i>	<i>it is the best.</i>
Ce vin est <b>mauvais</b> ;	celui-là est { <b>pire</b> ;	<b>le pire</b> .
<i>This wine is bad ;</i>	<i>that is worse ;</i>	<i>the worst.</i>
Ce cheval est <b>petit</b> ;	il est <b>plus petit</b> ;	c'est <b>le plus petit</b> .
<i>This horse is small ;</i>	<i>it is smaller ;</i>	<i>it is the smallest.</i>
Ce service est <b>petit</b> ;	il est <b>moindre</b> que l'autre :	{ c'est <b>le moindre</b> de
<i>This service is slight ;</i>	<i>it is less than the other ;</i>	<i>tous.</i>
		<i>it is the slightest of all.</i>
La distance est <b>petite</b> ;	elle est <b>moindre</b> que l'autre ;	c'est <b>la moindre</b> .
<i>The distance is short ;</i>	<i>it is shorter than the other ;</i>	<i>it is the smallest.</i>

*Observations* :—(1) Use of **ne** with the Verb after a *Comparative* :—

Cela est **plus facile** que vous **ne** pensez. *That is easier than you fancy ; i.e. You do not fancy it so easy as it really is.*

(2) Je **n'y** pense **plus**.

*I no longer think about it.*

Je **n'en** ai **plus**.

*I have none (not any) left.*

Il **ne** pleut **plus**.

*It does not rain now.* See also §§ 59 and 85.

(3) Whilst **plus** must be used when there is a second term of comparison, **davantage** can only be used when there is no second term of comparison: as,

La vertu est **plus** estimable **que** la science. *Virtue is more estimable than knowledge.*

La science est estimable, la vertu l'est **davantage**. *Knowledge is estimable, but virtue is more so.*

Je **n'en** sais pas **davantage**. *I do not know more about it.*

(4) Notice the difference between French and English in *correlative comparison* :—

**Plus** on est **élevé** en dignité, **plus** on doit être **modeste**. *The more exalted one is in rank, the more modest one ought to be.*

**Plus** vous lui en direz, **moins** il en fera. *The more you talk to him, the less he will do it.*

**Moins** on a de soucis, **plus** on est **heureux**. *The fewer cares one has, the happier one is.*

(5) Use of the *Subjunctive* in the Dependent Clause after a *Superlative* in the principal sentence (see § 163) : as,

C'est le **plus beau** spectacle que j'aie jamais vu. *It is the finest sight I ever saw.*

(6) Various meanings of **moindre** :—

C'est une chose que le **moindre** ouvrier peut faire. *It is a thing that the commonest workman can do.*

Sentez-vous là quelque douleur?—**Non, pas la moindre**. *Do you feel any pain there?—No, not the slightest.*

(7) Use of **de** after the *Superlative* :—

Le **plus riche** banquier } **de** la ville. *The richest banker in the town.*  
Le banquier le **plus riche**

## 23

## PLACE OF ADJECTIVES BEFORE OR AFTER THE NOUNS :

## ELEMENTARY RULES.

(For a full treatment of this difficult question, see Syntax, § 123 4.)

Most French Adjectives are placed *after* the Noun ; very few are invariably placed *before* ; but a not inconsiderable number may be placed either *before* or *after*.

Place **after** the Noun :—

(a) Adjectives derived from *Proper Nouns* : as,

Le peuple **romain**, the Roman people ;

La religion **chrétienne**, the Christian religion.

(b) Adjectives derived from *Participles*, or Participles used adjectively : as,

Un cœur **compatissant**, a compassionate heart ;

Le pont **suspendu**, the suspension bridge.

(c) Adjectives denoting *Physical or Accidental qualities*, as—colour, shape, taste, etc.: as,

Voici du vin <b>blanc</b> .	<i>Here is white wine.</i>
Voilà une table <b>ronde</b> .	<i>There is a round table.</i>
L'amande est un fruit <b>amer</b> .	<i>The almond is a bitter fruit.</i>

(d) Adjectives followed by a *Complement*: as,

Une action <b>digne de louange</b> .	<i>An action worthy of praise.</i>
--------------------------------------	------------------------------------

(e) Adjectives much longer than the Noun, especially those ending in—**-ic, -if, -al, -eur; -able, -ible, -ique, -esque**: as,

Le crieur <b>public</b> ; le ballon <b>captif</b> ;	<i>The town crier; the captive balloon.</i>
La garde <b>nationale</b> ;	<i>The national guard;</i>
L'ordre <b>supérieur</b> ;	<i>The higher class.</i>
Le conte <b>incroyable</b> ;	<i>The incredible tale;</i>
L'humeur <b>pacifique</b> ;	<i>The pacific humour.</i>

**24** The following Adjectives, expressing the most *elementary qualities*, generally stand before the Noun:—

Un <b>bon</b> enfant; un <b>beau</b> pays;	<i>A good fellow; a fine country.</i>
Le <b>petit</b> frère; le <b>grand</b> pont;	<i>The little brother; the high bridge.</i>
Le <b>jeune</b> chien; le <b>vieux</b> cheval;	<i>The young dog; the old horse.</i>
Un <b>joli</b> chat; un <b>mauvais</b> tour;	<i>A pretty cat; a bad turn (trick).</i>
Un <b>long</b> voyage; un <b>bref</b> délai;	<i>A long journey; a brief delay.</i>

Most Adjectives, if *used figuratively*, may also stand before: compare—  
 De l'encre **noire**. *Black ink.* De noirs **pressentiments**. *Gloomy forebodings.*

*N.B.*—For Adjectives with a different meaning before or after the Noun, see Synt., § 124.

## **25** X.—THE NOUN QUALIFIED BY A NUMERAL.

### (a) CARDINAL NUMBERS.

*N.B.*—This will serve at the same time as a repetition of the Plural of Nouns.

1 un jour, <i>one day.</i>	11 onze années, <i>eleven years.</i>
une journée, <i>one day's work.</i>	(le onze avril, <i>April 11th.</i> )
2 deux ans, <i>two years.</i>	12 douze apôtres, <i>twelve apostles.</i>
3 trois mois, <i>three months.</i>	13 treize fois, <i>thirteen times.</i>
4 quatre feux, <i>four fires.</i>	14 quatorze lieues, <i>fourteen leagues.</i>
5 cinq clous, <i>five nails.</i>	15 quinze jours, <i>a fortnight.</i>
6 six chevaux, <i>six horses.</i>	16 seize onces, <i>sixteen ounces.</i>
7 sept travaux, <i>seven labours.</i>	17 dix-sept jeux, <i>17 games.</i>
8 huit cerfs-volants, <i>eight kites.</i>	18 dix-huit canaux, <i>18 canals.</i>
9 neuf timbres-poste, <i>nine postage-stamps.</i>	19 dix-neuf chefs-lieux, <i>19 county towns.</i>
10 dix avant-coureurs, <i>ten forerunners.</i>	20 vingt choux-fleurs, <i>20 cauliflowers.</i>

21	vingt et un (vingt-un).	100	cent.
22	vingt-deux, etc.	101	cent un.
30	trente.	150	cent cinquante.
40	quarante.	200	deux cents.
50	cinquante.	220	deux cent vingt. <sup>1</sup>
60	soixante.	1000	mille (mil in dates A.D.).
69	soixante-neuf.	1880	mil huit cent quatre-vingt.
70	soixante-dix (soixante et dix).	10,000	dix mille.
71	soixante et onze.	100,000	cent mille. <sup>2</sup>
72	soixante-douze, etc.	1,000,000	un million.
80	quatre-vingts.	100,000,000	cent millions.
81	quatre-vingt-un, <sup>1</sup> etc.	1,000,000,000	un milliard or billion. <sup>3</sup>
90	quatre-vingt-dix.	1,000,000,000,000	un trillion. <sup>3</sup>
91	quatre-vingt-onze, etc.	1,000,000,000,000,000	un quadrillion, etc.

*Observations :—*

(1) Quatre-vingts and cents (plural of cent) take no s (a) if followed by another numeral, or (b) if used as an ordinal number :—

page deux cent quatre-vingt.

(2) Mille, *thousand*, never takes s ; but mille, *mile*, does :—  
dix mille, *ten thousand* ; dix milles, *ten miles*.

(3) Notice the different notation of billion, trillion, etc., in the two languages.

(b) ORDINAL NUMBERS.

1st	Le premier homme. <i>The first man.</i>	La première année. <i>The first year.</i>
	Les premiers hommes. <i>The first men.</i>	Les premières années. „ <i>years.</i>
2nd	Le second volume. <i>The 2nd volume.</i>	La deuxième série. <i>The 2nd series.</i>
	Le deuxième étage. <i>The 2nd storey.</i>	La seconde fois. <i>The 2nd time.</i>
3rd	Le troisième mois. <i>The 3rd month.</i>	La troisième partie. <i>The 3rd part.</i>
4th	le (la) quatrième.	21st le (la) vingt-et-unième.
5th	le (la) cinquième.	22nd le (la) vingt-deuxième, etc.
6th	le (la) sixième.	30th le (la) trentième.
7th	le (la) septième.	100th le (la) centième.
8th	le (la) huitième.	1000th le (la) millième.
9th	le (la) neuvième.	1,000,000th le (la) millionième.
10th	le (la) dixième.	last le dernier, la dernière.
20th	le (la) vingtième.	the last but one, l'avant-dernier.

(c) FRENCH CARDINAL NUMBERS USED INSTEAD OF ORDINAL.

In speaking of the days of the month or Sovereigns (except the first): as,

Le premier janvier. <i>The 1st of Jany.</i>	Le huit juillet. <i>The 8th of July.</i>
Le deux février. <i>The 2nd of February.</i>	Le vingt-et-un août. <i>August 21st.</i>
Le trois mars. <i>The 3rd of March.</i>	Le vingt-deux septembre. <i>Sept. 22nd.</i>
Le quatre avril. <i>The 4th of April.</i>	Le vingt-trois octobre. <i>Oct. 23rd.</i>
Le cinq mai. <i>The 5th of May.</i>	Le trente novembre. <i>Nor. 30th.</i>
Le six juin. <i>The 6th of June.</i>	Le trente-et-un décembre. <i>Dec. 31st.</i>

François premier, *François the First*; Henri deux (second), *Henry II.*  
Louis quatorze, *Louis the Fourteenth.*

Exceptionally:—Charles-quint, *Charles the Fifth*, Emperor of Germany; and  
Sixte-quint, *Pope Sixtus the Fifth.*

*Observation.*—In speaking of the *pages, chapters, etc.*, of a book, we may say :  
chapitre dix, chapitre dixième, or, le dixième chapitre.

(d) DIFFERENT WAYS OF EXPRESSING DIMENSIONS:—

Ce mur est haut de dix pieds.	} <i>This wall is ten feet high.</i>
Ce mur a dix pieds de haut.	
Ce mur a dix pieds de hauteur.	
Ce mur a une hauteur de dix pieds.	
Un mur haut de cinq mètres.	} <i>A wall five yards high.</i>
Un mur de cinq mètres de haut.	
Cette cour a vingt mètres de longueur (de profondeur) sur dix de largeur.	<i>This court-yard is twenty metres long (deep), by ten wide.</i>
Ce royaume a trois cents lieues de long et deux cents de large.	<i>This kingdom is three hundred leagues long and two hundred broad.</i>
Il est plus grand que moi d'un pouce.	<i>He is an inch taller than I.</i>
Une garnison forte de douze mille hommes.	<i>A garrison twelve thousand men strong.</i>

*Observation.*—Dans cette sanglante  
bataille, il y eut cinq mille hommes  
de tués et dix mille de blessés.  
*In this murderous battle there were five  
thousand men killed and ten thou-  
sand wounded. (Comp. § 118.)*

(e) Fractional Numerals.	(f) Proportional Numerals.	(g) Multiplicative Numerals.	(h) Collective Numerals.
$\frac{1}{2}$ un demi,* $\frac{1}{3}$ un tiers,	simple, <i>simple</i> , le double, <i>double</i> , le triple, <i>treble</i> ,	une fois, <i>once</i> , deux fois, <i>twice</i> , trois fois, <i>thrice</i> ,	The following only are used :— une huitaine, <i>about eight.</i>
$\frac{1}{4}$ un quart,	le quadruple, <i>four- fold, etc.</i> ,	quatre fois, <i>four times, etc.</i> ,	une dixaine, <i>about ten.</i>
$\frac{1}{5}$ un cinquième,	le quintuple,	cinq fois,	une douzaine, <i>a dozen.</i>
$\frac{1}{6}$ un sixième,	le sextuple,	six fois,	une quinzaine, <i>about 15.</i>
$\frac{1}{7}$ un septième,	le septuple,	sept fois,	une vingtaine, <i>a score.</i>
$\frac{1}{8}$ un huitième,	l'octuple,	huit fois,	une trentaine, <i>about 30.</i>
$\frac{1}{9}$ un neuvième,	(neuffois autant)	neuf fois,	une quarantaine, <i>about 40.</i>
$\frac{1}{10}$ un dixième, etc.,	le décuple,	dix fois,	une cinquantaine, <i>about 50.</i>
$\frac{1}{11}$ un onzième, etc.,	(onze fois autant),	onze fois,	une soixantaine, <i>about 60.</i>
$\frac{1}{12}$ un douzième, etc.,	douze fois autant, etc.,	douze fois, etc., etc.,	une centaine, <i>about 100.</i>
* la moitié, is subst.	centuple, 100 fold.		un millier, <i>about 1000.</i>

## SECOND CHAPTER.

### PRONOUNS.

#### A. CONJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

- 26** *General Rule.*—A personal Pronoun in the *Objective* case is placed before its Verb, except in the *Imperative* used affirmatively : as,

##### SINGULAR : 1st Person.

<i>Nom.</i>		Je ne trompe personne.	<i>I deceive no one.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Vous	me trompez toujours.	<i>You always deceive me.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Il	me donne son appui.	<i>He gives his support to me.</i>

##### 2d Person.

<i>Nom.</i>		Tu aimes tes amis.	<i>Thou lovest thy friends.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Elle	te salue.	<i>She greets thee.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Elle	te répond par écrit.	<i>She replies to thee in writing.</i>

##### 3d Person, Masculine, referring to a person.

<i>Nom.</i>		Il raconte une histoire.	<i>He is relating a story.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Ses amis	le respectent.	<i>His friends respect him.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	On	lui raconte une anecdote.	<i>They relate an anecdote to him.</i>

##### 3d Person, Feminine, referring to a person.

<i>Nom.</i>		Elle te pardonnera.	<i>She will forgive thee.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Ses amies	la félicitent.	<i>Her friends congratulate her.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Sa mère	lui donna un baiser.	<i>Her mother gave a kiss to her.</i>

##### PLURAL : 1st Person.

<i>Nom.</i>		Nous louons l'écolier.	<i>We praise the pupil.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Le maître	nous loue souvent.	<i>The master often praises us.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	L'orateur	nous parle.	<i>The orator is speaking to us.</i>

##### 2d Person.

<i>Nom.</i>		Vous apprenez la leçon.	<i>You learn the lesson.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Vos cousins	vous suivront.	<i>Your cousins will follow you.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Le professeur	vous répondra.	<i>The professor will reply to you.</i>

##### 3d Person : Masculine and Feminine.

<i>Nom.</i>		Ils (elles) l'estiment.	<i>They esteem him.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Leur maître	les estime.	<i>Their master esteems them.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Leurs parents	leur écriront.	<i>Their parents will write to them</i>

##### 3d Person, Masculine or Feminine, referring to a thing (sometimes to a person).

<i>Nom.</i>		Il <sup>1</sup> (elle) est très utile.	<i>It is very useful.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	L'écolier	le (la) trouve utile.	<i>The pupil finds it easy.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	L'écolier s'y accoutume.		<i>The pupil accustoms himself to it (to them).</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Les élèves en parlent souvent. <sup>2</sup>		<i>The pupils often speak of it (of them).</i>

<sup>1</sup> Referring to, say, le travail, or la leçon ; so plur., ils, elles, y, en.

<sup>2</sup> The *Genitive* referring to a Person is supplied by the *Disjunctive* Personal Pronoun : de moi, de toi, de lui d'elle ; de nous, de vous, d'eux, d'elles.

## 27

THE VARIOUS USES OF **y**, **en**, AND **neutral le** :—

**Y**, *there, thither, to it, at it*, is used with reference to Antecedents denoting *things* :—

(1) Instead of *là* referring to a *place* mentioned before ; as,

Est-il à Paris ?—Oui, il <b>y</b> est.	<i>Is he in Paris?—Yes, he is there.</i>
Allez-vous au bain ?—	<i>Are you going to the bath?—</i>
Non, nous n' <b>y</b> allons pas.	<i>No, we are not going there.</i>
Vas- <b>y</b> aujourd'hui.	<i>Go there to-day.</i>
N' <b>y</b> va pas demain.	<i>Don't go there to-morrow.</i>

(2) Instead of *à lui, à elle ; à eux, à elles* ; as,

Avez-vous répondu à sa lettre ?—	<i>Have you replied to his letter?—</i>
J' <b>y</b> ai répondu il y a huit jours.	<i>I replied to it a week ago.</i>
Renoncez- <b>y</b> !	<i>Renounce (to) it!</i>

(3) Instead of *à ceci, à cela*, with reference to a preceding clause or phrase ; as,

<b>Y</b> avez-vous réfléchi ?—	<i>Have you considered it?</i>
J' <b>y</b> ai réfléchi.	<i>I have considered it.</i>
Réfléchissez- <b>y</b> bien.	<i>Consider it well (reflect upon it).</i>

## 28

**En**, *hence ; of it ; from it ; some, any* ; is used with reference to Antecedents denoting *things* :—

(1) Instead of *de là, from there, hence*, to denote the starting-point ; as,

Viens-tu de Londres ?—	<i>Are you coming from London?—</i>
Oui, j' <b>en</b> viens, mais j'y retournerai dans quinze jours.	<i>Yes, I am coming from there, but I shall return there in a fortnight.</i>

(2) Instead of *de lui, d'elle, of it ; d'eux, d'elles, of them*, etc., with Verbs and Adjectives requiring *de* before their complement ; as,

Est-il content de son sort ?—	<i>Is he satisfied with his fate?—</i>
Il <b>en</b> est content.	<i>He is satisfied with it.</i>
Qu' <b>en</b> dites-vous ?—	<i>What do you say about it?—</i>
Je n' <b>en</b> sais rien.	<i>I don't know anything about it.</i>

(3) Instead of *de ceci, de cela, of this, of that*, referring to a phrase or sentence mentioned before ; as,

Il fut trompé sans qu'il s'en aperçût.	<i>He was deceived without being aware of it.</i>
Vous vous <b>en</b> repentirez.	<i>You will repent of it.</i>

(4) Instead of *du, de la, des, some, any, of them*, referring to a Noun-Antecedent used in a *partitive* sense ; as,

A-t-il de l'argent ?—Oui, il <b>en</b> a.	<i>Has he any money?—Yes, he has (some).</i>
Avez-vous des plumes ?—	<i>Have you any pens?—</i>
J' <b>en</b> ai de très bonnes.	<i>Yes, I have some very good ones.</i>

En voici une meilleure.

*Here is a better one (of them).*

Je vous en donnerai une autre.

*I will give you another (of them).*

Combien d'églises y a-t-il ici ?—

*How many churches are there here ?—*

Il y en a sept.

*There are seven (of them).*

Prenez-en un peu. N'en prenez pas.

*Take some. Don't take any.*

(5) Instead of *pour cela*, *pour cette raison*, *for that*, *on that account*; as,  
Je l'en estime davantage.

*I esteem him the more for it (i.e. on that account).*

## 29 Le, the predicative form of the 3d Person of the Personal Pronoun—

(1) takes the Gender and Number of its Antecedent, if this Antecedent is a *Noun used definitely*; as,

Êtes-vous le professeur de musique ?—

*Are you the music-master ?—*

Oui, monsieur, je le suis.

*Yes, sir, I am he.*

Êtes-vous la directrice du collège ?—

*Are you the principal of the college ?—*

Oui, madame, je la suis.

*Yes, madam, I am she.*

Êtes-vous les délégués de la commune ?—

*Are you the delegates of the commune ?—*

Nous les sommes.

*We are.*

But (2) remains unchanged, if its Antecedent is an *Adjective*, a *Noun used Adjectively*, or a *whole sentence*: as,

Es-tu malade ?—Je le suis.

*Are you ill ?—I am.*

Êtes-vous malades ?—Nous le sommes.

*Are you ill ?—We are.*

Êtes-vous directrice ?—Je le suis.

*Are you a principal ?—I am.*

A-t-il réussi ?—Je le crois.

*Has he succeeded ?—I think so.*

## 30

## RELATIVE POSITION OF PERSONAL (REFLEXIVE) PRONOUNS USED Objectively.

When a Verb has *two* Pronoun-objects, one *direct* and the other *indirect*, they are both placed before the Verb in the following order :—

(1) A Pronoun of the 1st or 2d pers. stands *before* a Pronoun of the 3d :

(2) If *both* Pronouns are of the 3d pers., the one in the *Acc.* stands before the one in the *Dat.* ; *se*, reflexive pr., however, *always* stands first, whether used in the *Acc.* or *Dat.* ;

(3) **Y** and **en** after all other Pronouns, and **en** after **y**.

Thus, in answer to a question like—A qui donnera-t-il son couteau ?  
*To whom will he give his knife ?* the order will be :—

1st before 3d pers. :—

Il **me** le donnera.

*He will give it to me.*

Il **nous** le donnera.

*He will give it to us.*

2d before 3d pers. :—

Il **te** le prêtera.

*He will lend it to thee.*

Il **vous** le prêtera.

*He will lend it to you.*

*Acc.* before *Dat.* :—

Il **le** lui donnera.

*He will give it to him (her).*

Il **le** leur donnera.

*He will give it to them.*

but (*se* first) :—

Il **se** le donnera.

*He will give it to himself.*

And so with the fem. sing., and plur. m. and fem. :—

Il **me** la donnera.

Il **me** les donnera.

Il **la** lui donnera.

Il **les** lui donnera, etc.

In answer to a question like—Qui forcera-t-il à cette condition ?—*Whom will he compel to this condition ?* the order will be :—

Il **m'y**

Il **t'y**

Il **l'y**

Il **nous y**

Il **vous y**

Il **les y**

} forcera.

*He will compel*

{ *me to it.*

{ *thee to it.*

{ *him (her, it) to it.*

{ *us to it.*

{ *you to it.*

{ *them to it.*

In answer to a question like—À qui donnera-t-il du pain (de la viande ; des cerises) ?—*To whom will he give bread (meat, cherries) ?* the order will be :—

Il **m'en**

Il **t'en**

Il **lui en**

Il **nous en**

Il **vous en**

Il **leur en**

} donnera.

*He will give*

{ *some to me.*

{ *some to thee.*

{ *some to him (her).*

{ *some to us.*

{ *some to you.*

{ *some to them.*

In answer to the question—*A-t-il trouvé de l'eau à la fontaine?* *Has he found any water in the well?* the order will be :—

*Il y en a trouvé.*

*He has found some there.*

The order of precedence is summed up in the following memorial scheme :—

1st ;	2d ;	3d ;	4th ;	5th and last.			
me							
te	} before	le	} before	lui	} before	y	} and y before en.
(se)		la		leur		en	
nous		les					
vous							

*i.e.* Those in the 1st col. always precede those in the 2d, 3d, 4th, and 5th ; those in the 2d col. always precede those in the 3d, 4th, and 5th, etc.

## 31

## PRONOUN-OBJECT OF A VERB IN THE IMPERATIVE AFFIRMATIVE.

When the Verb is in the Imperative *Affirmative*, the order of words as given in the first rule (*i.e.* 1st and 2d pers. before the 3d) is reversed, *i.e.* the pronouns are placed *after* the Verb :—

the 3d pers. (*le, la, les*) standing before the pron. in the 1st or 2d ;—

and *me, te* are strengthened into *moi, toi* ; as,

*Donne-le-moi (le-nous).*

*Give it to me (to us).*

*Prête-la-moi (la-nous).*

*Lend it (lit. her) to me (to us).*

*Montrez-les-moi (les-nous).*

*Show them to me (to us).*

In the other combinations the order remains the same :—

*Dites-le-lui (le-leur).*

*Tell it to him (or her) (to them).*

*Montrez-la-lui.*

*Show it (lit. her) to him (or to her).*

*Montrez-la-leur.*

*Show it to them.*

*Envoyez-les-lui (les-leur).*

*Send them to him (or her) (to them).*

*Conduisez-nous-y. Take us there.*

*Donnez-m'en. Give me some of it.*

## Compare

*Imperative negative,*

with

*Imperative affirmative.*

*Ne me le rendez pas.*

*Rendez-le-moi.*

*(Ne te le refuse pas ; [with reflexive Verbs only].)*

*Refuse-le-toi.*

*Ne le lui dites pas.*

*Dites-le-lui.*

*(Ne vous y fiez pas.*

,,

*Fiez-vous-y).*

*Ne nous en parlez pas.*

*Parlez-nous-en, etc.*

32 B. *DISJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.*

*DISJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS* are so called because they are used independently of (disjoined from) the verb: being uninflected their case-relations, like those of *Nouns*, are indicated by *de* and *à*; they are used—

(1) Quite alone, in answer to a question: as,

Qui a fait cela ?—	Moi.	Who has done that ?—	I.
Qui devra payer ?—	Toi.	Who will have to pay ?—	Thou.
Qui est-ce qui viendra ?—	Lui.	Who will come ?—	He.
Qui l'accompagnera ?—	Elle.	Who will accompany him ?—	She.
Qui veut du vin ?—	Nous.	Who wants wine ?—	We.
Qui traduira cette page ?—	Vous.	Who will translate this page ?—	You.
Qui nous conduira ?—	Eux.	Who will lead us ?—	They (m.)
Qui vous a dit cela ?—	Elles.	Who has told you that ?—	They (f.)

(2) As the second member of a *comparison*; as,

Il est plus avancé que moi.	He is more advanced than I.
Elle n'est pas si active que toi.	She is not so active as thou, etc.

(3) As the Antecedent of a *Relative Pronoun*; as,

Moi, qui suis innocent !	I, who am innocent !
Lui, qui a tant travaillé !	He, who has worked so hard !

(4) As part of a *Composite Subject*; as,

Mon frère, ma sœur, et moi.	My brother, sister, and myself.
Ni lui, ni moi.	Neither he nor I.

(5) As the *Predicative Complement* of the Impersonal phrases *c'est*, *ce sont*; as,

Ce n'est pas moi.	It is not I.
Sera-ce lui ou un autre ?	Will it be he or another ?

(6) After all *Prepositions*; as,

Celui qui n'est pas pour moi est contre moi.	He who is not for me is against me.
Le moulin est à moi, tout aussi bien, du moins, que la Prusse est au roi.	The mill is mine, as much so, at least, as Prussia is the king's.
Je suis chez moi aujourd'hui.	I am at home (i.e. my home) to-day.
Tu seras chez toi demain.	Thou wilt be at home to-morrow.
Il serait chez lui s'il pleuvait.	He would be at home if it rained.
Elle a été chez elle.	She has been at home.
Il n'y a pas de petit chez soi (Proverb).	Be it ever so humble, there is no place like home.
Restons chez nous cette après midi.	Let us stay at home this afternoon.
Serez-vous chez vous ?	Shall you be at home ?
Qu'ils restent chez eux.	Let them stay at home.
Ces dames sont chez elles.	These ladies are at home.

(7) After the *Preposition à*, as the *Adverbial Complement* of a Verb of *motion*, and a few others:—*accoutumer à*, to accustom to; *en appeler à*, to appeal to; *courir (accourir) à*, to hasten to; *penser à*, *songer à*, to think of; *renoncer à*, to renounce; *venir à*, to come to; as,

Pense à moi !—	Think of me !
Je pense toujours à toi.	I always think of thee.
Elle accourut à lui.	She hastened towards him.
Nous songeons à eux jour et nuit.	We think of them day and night.

33

## C. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS (for Possess. Adjectives, see § 10).

*Singular.**Plural.*

*m.* Ton ami et le mien; tes amies et les miens. *Thy friend (friends) and mine.*

*f.* Ta sœur et la mienne; tes sœurs et les miennes. *Thy sister (sisters) and mine.*

*m.* Son fils et le tien; ses fils et les tiens. *His son (sons) and thine.*

*f.* Sa fille et la tienne; ses filles et les tiennes. *His daughter (daughters) and thine.*

*m.* Ton chat et le sien; tes chats et les siens. *Thy cat (cats) and his.*

*f.* Ta fleur et la sienne; tes fleurs et les siennes. *Thy flower (flowers) and his.*

*m.* Leur toit et le nôtre; leurs toits et les nôtres. *Their roof (roofs) } and*

*f.* Leur poire et la nôtre; leurs poires et les nôtres. *Their pear (pears) } ours.*

*m.* Mon bois et le vôtre; mes bois et les vôtres. *My wood (woods) } and*

*f.* Ma rose et la vôtre; mes roses et les vôtres. *My rose (roses) } yours.*

*m.* Votre âne et le leur; vos ânes et les leurs. *Your ass (asses) } and*

*f.* Votre tante et la leur; vos tantes et les leurs. *Your aunt (aunts) } theirs.*

The Rule of agreement with regard to Possessive Adjectives (§ 10) also applies to Possessive Pronouns, *i.e.*—

A POSSESSIVE PRONOUN takes the Gender and Number of the Noun or Pronoun denoting the Person or Thing possessed; whilst in English there is no agreement, except in the third person singular—*his, her*; which, however, refer to the gender of the Noun or Pronoun denoting the Possessor; as,

Mon frère a perdu son crayon; *My brother has lost his pencil;*  
sa plume. *his pen.*

Mon ami a aussi perdu le sien; *My friend has also lost his.*  
la sienne.

Ma sœur a trouvé son crayon; *My sister has found her pencil;*  
sa plume. *her pen.*

Ma tante a aussi trouvé le sien; *My aunt has also found hers.*  
la sienne.

## D. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

(a) **Ce**, *this, these ; that, those ; it, they* ; neutral (indeclinable) PRONOUN, is used as the Subject of the Verb **être**—

(1) *Demonstratively* : answering to *this, that ; these, those* ; also as a PERSONAL PRONOUN answering to *he, she, it, they* ; as,

Qui est-ce ?—C'est lui.	<i>Who is it ?—It is he.</i>
Ce sont mes seules récréations.	<i>These are my only recreations.</i>
Ce sont là des questions impossibles à résoudre.	<i>These are questions impossible to solve.</i>
Sont-ce là vos belles promesses ?	<i>Are these your fair promises ?</i>

(2) *Impersonally* : instead of *il*, when the Complement of the Verb is a NOUN, PRONOUN, or an INFINITIVE ; as,

Qui est cet homme ?—	<i>Who is this man ?—</i>
C'est mon jardinier.	<i>He is my gardener.</i>
Qui sont ces messieurs ?—	<i>Who are these gentlemen ?—</i>
Ce sont des Anglais.	<i>They are Englishmen.</i>
C'est à vous de parler.	<i>It is for you to speak.</i>
C'est votre affaire.	<i>It is your business.</i>

(3) *Redundantly* : either as a grammatical subject of **être**, when for the sake of stress the Predicative Complement is placed before the real Subject ; in the first example below, for instance, the real Subject is **parler**, *i.e. To speak (speaking) thus is a derision* ;

Or to *recapitulate* a preceding Substantive Clause used as *Subject* or as a *Predicative Complement* ; as,

C'est se moquer du monde que de parler ainsi.	<i>It is joking to speak thus.</i>
X C'est un beau jardin que le vôtre.	<i>A fine garden yours is.</i>
Le vrai moyen d'être trompés, c'est de nous croire plus fins que les autres.	<i>The best way to be deceived is to fancy ourselves more cunning than others.</i>

WHEN TO USE **CE**, AND WHEN **IL** :—

1. If the Complement of **être** is a NOUN, use **ce**, unless that Noun is used *Adjectively*, in which case **il** is employed : as,

C'est un Allemand.	<i>He is a German.</i>	Il est Allemand.	<i>He is German.</i>
Ce sont des Allemands.	<i>They are Germans.</i>	Ils sont Allemands.	<i>They are Germans.</i>
C'est ce médecin.	<i>It is this physician.</i>	Il est médecin.	<i>He is a physician.</i>
C'est ma mère.	<i>It is my mother.</i>	Elle est mère.	<i>She is a mother.</i>
C'est un homme qui est capable de tout.	<i>He is a man who is capable of anything.</i>	Il est homme à faire cela.	<i>He is capable of doing that.</i>

2. If the Complement of **être** is an ADJECTIVE, then use

**ce**, if the Adjective refers to a *preceding* statement ;  
**il**, if the Adjective refers to a *following* statement : as,

Vous avez tort, c'est évident.	Il est évident que vous avez tort.
--------------------------------	------------------------------------

(b) *Ceci, this* ; and *cela, that*, are used—

(1) To denote *things simply pointed at, but not mentioned* (whilst *celui* denotes something *mentioned before*): as,

*Ceci* est bon, et *cela* est mauvais. *This is good, and that is bad.*  
*Ceci* est soie, *cela* est laine. *This is silk, that is wool.*

(2) To refer to a *statement, quotation, etc.* — { *ceci*, if the statement follows ;  
*cela*, if it precedes : as,

Dites *ceci* de ma part à votre ami : *Tell your friend this from me : “ Let*  
*“ qu’il se tienne tranquille.” him be quiet.”*  
 Que votre ami se tienne tran- *Your friend had better be quiet ;*  
 quille ; dites-lui *cela* de ma *tell him that from me.*  
 part.

(c) *Celui-ci, this, this one* ; *celui-là, that, that one*. The difference in the use of *celui*, with or without *ci* or *là*, is this—

*Celui-ci* points to a *nearer object* :—*this* ; } not followed by a Com-  
*Celui-là* points to a *more distant object* :—*that* ; } plement : as,

Ce poisson-là est plus frais que	<i>celui-ci</i> (m. s.).	} <i>That fish (water) is</i>	
Cette eau-là est plus fraîche que	<i>celle-ci</i> (f. s.).		} <i>fresher than this.</i>
Ces arbres-là sont plus hauts que	<i>ceux-ci</i> (m. pl.).	} <i>Those trees (mountains)</i>	
Ces montagnes sont plus hautes que	<i>celles-ci</i> (f. pl.).		} <i>are higher than these.</i>
Ce poisson-ci est moins frais que	<i>celui-là</i> .	} <i>This fish (water) is not</i>	
Cette eau n'est pas si fraîche que	<i>celle-là</i> .		} <i>so fresh as that.</i>
Ces champs-ci sont plus beaux que	<i>ceux-là</i> .	} <i>These fields</i>	
Ces prairies-ci sont plus belles que	<i>celles-là</i> .		} <i>are finer</i>
Homère et Virgile sont de grands	<i>Homer and Virgil are great poets :</i>		
poètes : <i>celui-ci</i> était Romain,	<i>the latter was a Roman, the</i>		
<i>celui-là</i> Grec.	<i>former a Greek.</i>		

(d) *Celui* refers back to a *Noun mentioned before*, and is followed by a *Complement*, whether it be an *Attribute* or an *Adjective Clause* : as,

Le port du Havre est plus grand que	<i>The port of Havre is larger than that</i>
<i>celui</i> de Dieppe.	<i>of Dieppe.</i>
Votre traduction est plus facile que	<i>Your translation is easier than the</i>
<i>celle</i> que je viens de finir.	<i>one I have just finished.</i>
<i>Celui</i> qui est content est heureux.	<i>He who is content is happy.</i>
<i>Celle</i> qui aura fini la première sera	<i>She who has done first will get a</i>
récompensée.	<i>reward.</i>
<i>Ceux</i> qui } persévèrent réussiront.	<i>Those (they) who persevere will</i>
<i>Celles</i> qui }	<i>succeed.</i>

## E. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

The RELATIVE PRONOUN agrees with its *Antecedent* in *Gender*, *Number*, and *Person* ; in *Case* it agrees with the construction of its own clause ;

But only *lequel* (not *qui*) has special forms for both *masc.* and *fem.*, *singular* and *plural*.

## (a) QUI REFERRING TO PERSONS.

*Masculine and Feminine Singular.*

N.	L'ami (l'amie)	qui travaille.	<i>The friend who works.</i>
A.	L'ami (l'amie)	que <sup>1</sup> j'estime.	<i>The friend whom<sup>2</sup> I esteem.</i>
G.	L'ami (l'amie)	dont <sup>3</sup> l'enfant est ici.	<i>The friend whose child is here.</i>
Abl.	L'ami (l'amie)	dont <sup>3</sup> (de qui) je parle.	<i>The friend of whom I speak.</i>
D.	L'ami	à qui (auquel) je parle.	<i>The friend to whom I speak.</i>
	L'amie	à qui (à laquelle) je parle.	

*Masculine and Feminine Plural.*

N.	Les amis (amies)	qui travaillent.	<i>The friends who work.</i>
A.	Les amis (amies)	que <sup>1</sup> j'estime.	<i>The friends whom<sup>2</sup> I esteem.</i>
G.	Les amis (amies)	dont <sup>3</sup> les enfants.	<i>The friends whose children.</i>
Abl.	Les amis (amies)	dont <sup>3</sup> je parle.	<i>The friends of whom I speak.</i>
D.	Les amis (amies)	à qui (auxquels) je parle.	<i>The friends to whom I speak.</i>
	Les amis (amies)	à qui (auxquelles) je parle.	

(b) LEQUEL, LAQUELLE ; pl., LESQUELS, LESQUELLES,  
*who, which, that.**Masculine and Feminine Singular.*

N. <sup>4</sup>	L'ami de Jean	lequel	} est malade.	John's friend (m.)	} who is ill.
	L'amie d'Aune	laquelle		Ann's friend (f.)	
G.	L'ami	duquel	} je parle.	<i>The friend of whom I speak.</i>	
	L'amie	de laquelle			
Abl.	L'ami	duquel	} je parle.	<i>The friend of whom I speak.</i>	
	L'amie	de laquelle			
D.	L'ami	auquel	} je parle.	<i>The friend to whom I speak.</i>	
	L'amie	à laquelle			

*Masculine and Feminine Plural.*

N.	Les amis de Jean	} lesquels <sup>4</sup>	} sont malades.	John's friends (m.)	} who are ill.
	Les amies de Jeanne			Jane's friends (f.)	
G.	Les amis	desquels	} je parle.	<i>The friends of whom I speak.</i>	
	Les amies	desquelles			
Abl.	Les amis	desquels	} je parle.	<i>The friends of whom I speak.</i>	
	Les amies	desquelles			
D.	Les amis	auxquels	} je parle.	<i>The friends to whom I speak.</i>	
	Les amies	auxquelles			

## (c) QUI, REFERRING TO ANIMALS AND THINGS.

*Masculine and Feminine Singular.*

N.	Le livre (la lettre)	qui est là.	The book (letter) which is there.
A.	Le livre (la lettre)	que <sup>1</sup> je lis.	The book (letter) which I read.
G.	Le livre (la lettre)	dont <sup>6</sup> la fin ...	The book (letter) of which the end...
Abl.	Le livre (la lettre)	dont <sup>8</sup> je parlais.	The book (letter) of which I spoke.
D.	Le livre	auquel,	The book to which,
	La lettre	à laquelle cela se réfère.	The letter to which that refers.

*Masculine and Feminine Plural.*

N.	Les livres (lettres)	qui sont écrit(e)s.	The books (letters) which are written.
A.	Les livres (lettres)	que <sup>1</sup> je lis.	The books (letters) which I read.
G.	Les livres (lettres)	dont <sup>7</sup> la fin ...	The books (letters) of which the end...
Abl.	Les livres (lettres)	dont <sup>9</sup> je parlais.	The books (letters) of which I spoke.
D.	Les livres	auxquels	The books to which
	Les lettres	auxquelles	The letters to which
		cela se réfère.	that refers.

*Observations—*

- (1) Qu' instead of que before a vowel or silent h:—qu'il, qu'elle, etc.
- (2) Governed by a Prepos., whom, always = qui, and never que;
- (3) Or, but less usual, masc. duquel, desquels; fem. de laquelle, desquelles.
- (4) In the Nom. lequel, laquelle, etc., is as a Rule used only to avoid ambiguity. The Accusative is exactly the same as the Nom., and is rather unusual.
- (5) Or, according to (a) —de qui, or dont, m. and f.
- (6) Or—la fin duquel (de laquelle); but not “de qui.”
- (7) Or—la fin desquels (desquelles); but not “de qui.”
- (8) Or—duquel (de laquelle) je parlais; but not “de qui.”
- (9) Or—desquels (desquelles) je parlais; but not “de qui.”

And so with all other Prepositions:—

## (1) Referring to Persons.

L'homme avec qui	} with whom...
L'homme avec lequel	
L'amie par qui (or laquelle),	} against
Les ennemis contre qui	
Les ennemis contre lesquels	} whom...
Les amies pour qui	
Les amies pour lesquelles	} for

## (2) Referring to Things.

Le clou avec lequel,	with which...
La ville par laquelle,	through which.
Les courants contre lesquels,	against
	which.
Les affaires pour lesquelles,	for which.

(d) Où, where, is often used as a Relative Pronoun instead of dans lequel, auquel, vers lequel, and after other Propositions: as,

Le temps où nous vivons.	The times in which we live.
Au moment où je vous parle.	At the moment at which I am speaking to you.
Le but où il tend.	The aim to which he tends.
Les endroits par où nous passons.	The places through which we are passing.
Le mauvais pas d'où il s'est tiré.	The scrape out of which he has got.

*Observation.*—As **dont** is virtually **de qui**, it follows that it is used with any *Noun, Adjective, or Verb, governing de*:—

L'écolier <b>dont</b> je suis content.	<i>The pupil with whom I am satisfied.</i>
C'est un accident <b>dont</b> je suis fâché.	<i>It is an accident for which I am sorry.</i>
La famille <b>dont</b> il sort.	<i>The family from which he descends.</i>
Le succès <b>dont</b> ils se réjouissent.	<i>The success at which they rejoice.</i>
Le manière <b>dont</b> il s'y prend.	<i>The manner in which he sets about it.</i>

The same rule holds good with respect to **en** (§ 28) ; compare—

Es-tu content <b>de</b> cet élève ?—	C'est un élève <b>dont</b> je suis content.—	J'en suis content.
Est-il fâché <b>de</b> cet accident ?—	C'est un accident <b>dont</b> il est fâché.—	Il en est fâché.
Se réjouit-il <b>de</b> ton succès ?—	C'est un succès <b>dont</b> il se réjouit.—	Il s'en réjouit.

*Observation.*—After *whose* the Direct Object is placed *before* the Verb in English, whilst in French it keeps its usual place *after* the Verb, and retains the Definite Article : as,

<i>Nom.</i> L'ami <b>dont</b> le conseil est précieux.	<i>The friend whose advice is precious.</i>
<i>Acc.</i> L'ami <b>dont</b> je suis le conseil.	<i>The friend whose advice I follow.</i>
<i>Dat.</i> L'ami <b>au</b> conseil <b>duquel</b> je me soumets.	<i>The friend to whose advice I submit.</i>

(e) RELATIVE PRONOUNS used Absolutely :—

(1) *Introducing a Dependent Clause.*

<i>Nom.</i> Voilà <b>ce</b> qui m'inquiète.	<i>That is what makes me uneasy.</i>
<i>Pred.</i> Je sais <b>ce</b> que vous êtes.	<i>I know what you are.</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Voilà <b>ce</b> que je ne crois pas.	<i>That is what I do not believe.</i>
<i>Dat.</i> C'est ( <b>ce</b> ) à quoi je m'applique.	<i>That is what I devote myself to.</i>
<i>Gen.</i> C'est <b>ce</b> dont je me plains.	<i>That is what I complain of.</i>

(2) *Introducing an Appositive Clause.*

<i>Nom.</i> Ils sont revenus, <b>ce</b> qui m'étonne.	<i>They have come back, which surprises me.</i>
<i>Acc.</i> La banque a failli, <b>ce</b> que j'avais prévu.	<i>The bank has failed, (a fact) which I had anticipated.</i>
<i>Dat.</i> La guerre est déclarée, <b>ce</b> à quoi je m'attendais.	<i>War has been declared, just as (lit. that to which) I expected.</i>
<i>Compl.</i> Vous croyez le connaître, <b>en</b> quoi vous vous trompez.	<i>You think you know him, in which you are mistaken.</i>
„ Nous fîmes plusieurs lieues, <b>après</b> quoi nous nous reposâmes.	<i>We walked several leagues, after which we rested.</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Il a fait fruit sec, <b>ce</b> dont je ne m'étonne pas.	<i>He has been plucked, at which (lit. of which) I am not surprised.</i>

## F. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

(a) Used *Substantively* :—

<i>Nom.</i>	Qui <sup>1</sup> a fait cela ?	<i>Who has done that ?</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Qui <sup>2</sup> inviterez-vous ?	<i>Whom shall you invite ?</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	{ De qui parle-t-il ?	<i>Of whom does he speak ?</i>
	{ De qui est-il frère ?	<i>Whose brother is he ?</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	{ A qui écrivez-vous ?	<i>To whom are you writing ?</i>
	{ A qui est ce domaine ?	<i>Whose is this estate ?</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Lequel (laquelle) <sup>3</sup> de vous ira ?	<i>Which of you will go ?</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Lequel (laquelle) choisirez-vous ?	<i>Which shall you choose ?</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Duquel (de laquelle) de ces esclaves parlez-vous ?	<i>Of which of these slaves are you speaking ?</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Auquel (à laquelle) de ces élèves parlez-vous ?	<i>To which of these pupils are you speaking.</i>

(1) Or emphatically—*Qui est-ce qui a fait cela ?*(2) Notice that—*qui*, *relative pron.*, has the *acc.* :— *que*.  
,, *qui ? interrogative pron.*, has the *acc.* :—*qui ?*(3) Or, Plural—*lesquels, lesquelles, auxquelles*, etc. To single out one or more objects from a number, *lequel, laquelle*, etc., must be used for *which* ?

<i>Nom.</i>	Qu'est-ce qui vous afflige ?	<i>What grieves you ?</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	{ Que ferai-je ?	<i>What am I to do ?</i>
	{ Qu'est-ce que vous voulez ?	<i>What do you want ?</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	De quoi vous mêlez-vous ?	<i>What do you trouble yourself about ?</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	A quoi cela sert-il ?	<i>What is that good for ?</i>

*Que ?* refers to *things*, and as *Subject* is used with *Impersonal Verbs* only. After *Prepositions* it is changed into *quoi*.(b) Used *Adjectively* :—

<i>Nom.</i>	Quel capitaine commandait ce jour-là ?	<i>What (which) captain was in command on that day ?</i>
,,	Quels arbres croissent dans ce pays ?	<i>What trees grow in this country ?</i>
,,	Quelle affaire vous occupe tant ?	<i>What concern engrosses you so ?</i>
,,	Quelles inquiétudes vous rongent ?	<i>What cares prey upon you ?</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	{ Quel âge avez-vous ?	<i>What is your age ?</i>
	{ Quelle plume voulez-vous ?	<i>Which pen do you want ?</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	De quel homme s'agit-il ?	<i>What man is it about ?</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	A quel homme cela appartient-il ?	<i>To what man does that belong ?</i>

## G. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

(a) Used *Adjectively* :—*Masculine.*

Un avis **certain**, } *reliable intel-*  
 Des avis **certain**s, } *ligence.*  
 Un **certain** nombre, *a certain number.*  
**chaque** jour, *every (each) day.*  
**maint(-s)** homme(-s), *many a man.*  
 le **même** mois, *the same month.*  
 les **mêmes** jours, *the same days.*  
**quelque(-s)** jour(-s), *some day (days).*  
 quel que (*adverbial*) soit son pouvoir. *whatever his power may be.*  
 un point **quelconque**, *any point.*  
 deux points **quelconques**, *any two points.*

*Feminine.*

Un nouvelle **certaine**, } *reliable*  
 Des nouvelles **certaines**, } *news.*  
 Une **certaine** époque, *a certain time.*  
**chaque** année, *every (each) year.*  
**maint-e(-es)** fois, *many a time.*  
 la **même** chose, *the same thing.*  
 les **mêmes** choses, *the same things.*  
**quelque(-s)** nuit(-s), *some night(s).*  
 une ligne **quelconque**, *any line.*  
 deux lignes **quelconques**, *any two lines.*

(b) Used either *Adjectively* or *Substantively* :—(1) *Adjectively.*

**aucun** soin, *no care.*  
**aucune** envie, *no mind.*  
**un autre** ton, *another tone.*  
**une autre** fois, *another time.*  
**d'autres** tons (fois), *other tones (times).*  
 l'un et l'autre élève. } *Both pupils.*  
 l'une et l'autre saison. } *Both seasons.*  
**l'un ou l'autre** parti, *either party.*  
**ni l'un ni l'autre** parti, *neither party.*  
**Nous autres** Français. *We Frenchmen!*  
 (emphatic).

**tout** homme, *every man.*  
**toute** créature, *every creature.*  
**tout** le monde, *everybody.*  
**toute** la ville, *the whole town.*  
**tous** les hommes, *all men.*  
**toutes** les occasions, *all opportunities.*  
**m. plusieurs** incidents, *several incidents.*  
**f. plusieurs** fois, *several times.*  
 Un **tel** éclat, *such an uproar.*  
 une **telle** vie, *such a life.*  
 de **tels** actes, *such acts.*  
 de **telles** actions, *such actions.*

**Nul** usage, *no custom.*  
**nulle** part, *nowhere.*

(2) *Substantively.*

**aucun** de ses amis, } *none of his*  
**aucune** de ses amies, } *(her) friends.*  
**l'autre**, *the other.*  
**un autre**, *another.*  
**les autres**, *the others*; **d'autres**, *others.*  
**l'un et l'autre** sont ici. *Both are here.*  
**les uns et les autres**. *All of them.*  
**l'un ou l'autre**, *either.*  
**ni l'un ni l'autre**, *neither.*  
**Vous autres!** *You fellows!*

**Tout** ou rien, *all or nothing.*

Est-ce là **tout**? *Is that all?*

**Tous** sont coupables, *all are guilty.*

**Tous** les deux, *both.*

**Plusieurs** d'entre eux, } *several*  
**Plusieurs** d'entre elles, } *among them.*

**Tel** menace qui tremble. *Many a one who threatens is himself afraid.*

**Monsieur un tel**. *Mr. so and so.*

**Mesdames telles et telles**. *The ladies so and so.*

**Nul** n'est exempt de mourir. *No one is exempted from death.*

(c) Used *Substantively* only :—

Le bien d'autrui (not used as Subject or Dir. Obj.)

*Other people's property.*

Chacun(-e) (no plur.) a ses défauts.

*Everybody has his faults.*

Ces crayons coûtent un franc chacun.

*These pencils cost a franc each.*

Ces huîtres coûtent dix sous chacune.

*These oysters cost five pence each.*

On dit. On me l'a dit.

*It is said. I am (have been) told.*

On vous demande.

*Some one asks for you. You are wanted.*

A-t-on sonné? On frappe.

*Has there been a ring? There is a knock.*

Si l'on nous entendait!

*If anybody were to hear us!*

Personne n'est-il venu?—

*Has nobody (no one) come?—*

Non, personne n'est venu.

*No, nobody has come.*

Ne le dites à personne.

*Don't tell it to anybody.*

Je doute que personne le sache.

*I doubt if anybody knows it.*

Y a-t-il personne d'assez hardi?

*Is there anybody bold enough?*

Pas un ne le croit.

*Nobody believes it.*

Il y a quelqu'un à la porte.

*There is somebody at the door.*

Quelqu'un (personne) m'a-t-il demandé?

*Has any one inquired after me?*

Voulez-vous des citrons (oranges)?—

*Do you want lemons (oranges)?—*

Donnez-m'en quelques-uns (quelques-unes).

*Give me a few.*

Rien n'est plus nécessaire.

*Nothing is more necessary.*

Il ne fait rien du tout.

*He does nothing at all.*

Cela ne fait rien.

*That does not signify (matter).*

Y a-t-il rien de si beau?

*Is there anything so fine?*

N'y a-t-il rien de nouveau?

*Is there nothing new?*

Qui vous reproche rien?

*Who reproaches you with anything?*

Vit-on jamais rien de pareil?

*Has one ever seen anything like it?*

Quiconque désobéira sera puni.

*Whosoever shall disobey will be punished.*

Protégez-le contre quiconque l'attaquera.

*Protect him against whosoever shall attack him.*

Qui que ce soit qui ait fait cela.

*Whoever he be that has done that.*

Je n'y ai trouvé qui que ce soit.

*I did not find anybody.*

Quoi (=quelque chose) que vous fassiez.

*Whatever you do.*



## THIRD CHAPTER.

### THE VERB.

#### 38 INTRODUCTORY :—

I. The classification of French Verbs is on the whole the same as that of English Verbs ; thus we distinguish with regard to—

- (a) *Meaning*—*Transitive* and *Intransitive* Verbs ;
- (b) *Voice*—the *Active* (transit. and intransit.) and *Passive* (transit. Verbs only) ;
- (c) *Power of inflection*—

A. *FINITE FORMS*, which may be inflected according to

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (1) Moods—the <i>Indicative</i> , the <i>Conditional</i> ,<br>the <i>Subjunctive</i> , the <i>Imperative</i> ;<br>(2) Tenses—the <i>Present</i> , <i>Past</i> , and <i>Future</i> ;<br>(3) Number—the <i>Singular</i> and <i>Plural</i> ;<br>(4) Persons—the <i>first</i> , <i>second</i> , and <i>third</i> ; | } |
|--|---|

B. *INFINITE FORMS*, which have no personal inflections :—

- (1) The *Infinitive* or *Verbal Noun* ; and
- (2) The *Participles* or *Verbal Adjectives* (which can only be inflected like Adjectives).

II. Verbs in French are divided according to their *Infinitive-ending* into *four Conjugations* : as,

	<i>Stem.</i>	<i>Infinitive- ending.</i>	
1st Conjugation : Verbs ending in -ER, as—	PARL	-ER,	<i>to speak.</i>
2d Conjugation :                   ,,       -IR, as—	FIN	-IR,	<i>to finish.</i>
3d Conjugation :                   ,,       -OIR, as—	RECEV	-OIR,	<i>to receive.</i>
4th Conjugation :                   ,,       -RE, as—	VEND	-RE,	<i>to sell.</i>

The *Stem* of any *Regular Verb* is found by cutting off its *Infinitive-ending*.

III. In order fully to conjugate a Verb in French it is necessary to know—

(a) Its *Principal Parts*, which are—

- (1) *Infinitive*, (2) *Pres. Part.*, (3) *Pres. Indicative*, (4) *Preterite*, (5) *Past. Part.*,  
 from which the other Moods and Tenses are derived ;

(b) The *Inflections* of the Conjugation to which it belongs ; these vary more or less in respect of *Mood*, *Tense*, *Number*, and *Person* ;

(c) Its *Auxiliary Verb*, which may be

*avoir* or *être*, for all *Compound Tenses* of the *Active Voice* ;

but always *être* for all *Tenses* of the *Passive Voice*, and all *Compound Tenses* of *Reflexive Verbs*.

39

Verbs in French are further divided according to their

*Tense-and-Mood Formation* into—

- (a) *Regular Verbs*, the *stem* of which is never affected in the Conjugation (comprising most Verbs of the 1st, 2d, and 4th conjugations, but none of the 3d).
- (b) *Irregular Verbs*, the *stem* of which is altered in one or more of the *Principal Parts*, from which, however, the *Derived Parts* may invariably be formed according to the General Rule of tense-formation (comprising Verbs of the 2d, 3d, and 4th Conjugations); and
- (c) *Anomalous Verbs*, the *Derived Parts* of which are not uniformly derived from the *Principal Parts* according to the General Rule (comprising Verbs of all four conjugations), as—

PRINCIPAL PARTS:—	INFINITIVE.	PRES. PARTI- CIPLE.	PRES. INDIC. SING.	PRETERITE.
(a) Example of a <i>Regular Verb</i> :—				
Principal Parts:—	Fin-ir.	fin-iss-ant.	fin-is, -is, -it.	fin-is.
Derived Tenses:—	<i>Future.</i> finir-ai.	<i>Impf.</i> fin-iss-ais.	<i>Imperat.</i> fin-is.	<i>Impf. Subj.</i> fin-iss-e.
(b) Example of an <i>Irregular Verb</i> :—				
Principal Parts:—	Plai-nd-re.	plai-gn-ant.	plain-s, -s, -t.	plai-gn-is. <sup>1</sup>
Derived Tenses:—	<i>Future.</i> plai-ndr-ai.	<i>Impf.</i> plai-gn-ais.	<i>Imperat.</i> plain-s.	<i>Impf. Subj.</i> plai-gn-isse.
(c) Example of an <i>Anomalous Verb</i> :—				
Principal Parts:—	Sav-oir.	sach-ant.	sai-s, -s, -t.	sus.
Derived Tenses:—	<i>Future.</i> sau-rai.	<i>Impf.</i> sav-ais.	<i>Imperat.</i> sai-s.	<i>Impf. Subj.</i> sus-se.

*Observations.*—The 1st Conjugation (in -er) comprises more than 90 per cent of all French Verbs; they are all conjugated regularly, except -aller and envoyer, which are *anomalous*. On the whole it answers to the Latin *first* in -are :—am-are = er.

The 2d Conjugation (in -ir) comprises about 350 verbs, conjugated either (a) *regularly*, as—punir, (b) *irregularly*, as—sentir, or (c) *anomalously*, as—mourir. Most of them are derived (1) either from Lat. inceptive (inchoative) verbs in -scere, as—fleurir; or (2) from the Lat. *fourth* in -ire, as—venir; Lat. venire.

The power of coining new verbs is vested exclusively in the 1st and 2d conj. : as, (1) télégraphier, from télégraphe; (2) brunir, from the adj. brun.<sup>2</sup>

The 3d Conjugation (in -oir) comprises only few verbs; they answer to the Lat. *third*: as—recevoir; Lat. recipere (with the exception of five derived from the Lat. second in -ere, as—devoir; Lat. debere); they are conjugated (1) *irregularly*, as—recevoir, or (2) *anomalously*, as—pouvoir.—None *regularly*.

The 4th Conjugation (in -re) comprises about 60 verbs, conjugated either (a) *regularly*, as—rompre, (b) *irregularly*, as—connaître, or (c) *anomalously*, as—faire (except a few derived from Lat. second, owing to the Lat. long ending having become short, as—mordre); they answer to the strong Latin *third* as—rompre; Lat. rumpere.

<sup>1</sup> The Tenses derived from the *Preterite* and *Perf. Part.* are always *regularly* formed.

<sup>2</sup> Most new verbs in -ir are derived from adjectives.

## 40 A.—THE REGULAR CONJUGATION. I.—SIMPLE TENSES.

	PRESENT INFINITIVE.	PRESENT PARTICIPLE.
FIRST CONJUGATION :—	<b>parl-er</b> , <i>to speak</i> ;	<b>parl-ant</b> , <i>speaking</i> .
SECOND CONJUGATION :—	<b>fin-ir</b> , <i>to finish</i> ;	<b>fin-iss-ant</b> , <i>finishing</i> .
FOURTH CONJUGATION :—	<b>vend-re</b> , <i>to sell</i> ;	<b>vend-ant</b> , <i>selling</i> .

The PRESENT TENSE of the INDICATIVE MOOD is formed

1st, 2d, 3d Pers.

in the <i>Singular</i> —by <i>Infinitive-Stem</i> + the endings—	(I.)	-e,	-es,	-e.
	(II.)	-is,	-is,	-it.
	(IV.)	-s,	-s,	-(t.)
in the <i>Plural</i> —by <i>Present-Participle-Stem</i> + the endings—		-ons,	-ez,	-ent.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

Je	<b>parl-e</b> français.	I	<i>speak (am speaking) French.</i>
Tu	<b>parl-es</b> anglais.	Thou	<i>speakest (art speaking) English.</i>
{ Il (on)	<b>parl-e</b> allemand.	He (one)	<i>speaks (is speaking) German.</i>
{ Elle	<b>parl-e</b> italien.	She	<i>speaks (is speaking) Italian.</i>
{ L'élève	<b>parl-e</b> bien.	The pupil	<i>speaks (is speaking) well.</i>
Nous	<b>parl-ons</b> peu.	We	<i>speak (are speaking) little.</i>
Vous	<b>parl-ez</b> haut.	You	<i>speak (are speaking) aloud.</i>
Ils (Elles)	<b>parl-ent</b> beaucoup.	They	<i>speak (are speaking) much.</i>
Les gens	<b>parl-ent</b> trop.	People	<i>speak (are speaking) too much.</i>

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

Je	<b>fin-is</b> mon travail.	I	<i>finish (am finishing) my work.</i>
Tu	<b>fin-is</b> ton travail.	Thou	<i>finishest (art finishing) thy...</i>
{ Il (on)	<b>fin-it</b> son travail.	He (one)	<i>finishes (is finishing) his ...</i>
{ Elle	<b>fin-it</b> son ouvrage.	She	<i>finishes (is finishing) her ...</i>
{ Arthur	<b>fin-it</b> son ouvrage.	Arthur	<i>finishes (is finishing) his ...</i>
Nous	<b>fin-iss-ons</b> notre travail.	We	<i>finish (are finishing) our work.</i>
Vous	<b>fin-iss-ez</b> votre travail.	You	<i>finish (are finishing) your ...</i>
Ils (elles)	<b>fin-iss-ent</b> à présent.	They	<i>finish (are finishing) now.</i>
Les gens	<b>fin-iss-ent</b> leur besogne.	People	<i>finish (are finishing) their work.</i>

For the THIRD CONJUGATION, all Verbs of which are irregular, see §§ 70-73.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Je	<b>vend-s</b> ma maison.	I	<i>sell (am selling) my house.</i>
Tu	<b>vend-s</b> ta propriété.	Thou	<i>sellest (art selling) thy property.</i>
{ Il (on)	<b>vend</b> sa terre.	He (one)	<i>sells (is selling) his estate.</i>
{ Elle	<b>vend</b> sa marchandise.	She	<i>sells (is selling) her merchandise.</i>
Nous	<b>vend-ons</b> notre cheval.	We	<i>sell (are selling) our horse.</i>
Vous	<b>vend-ez</b> votre denrée.	You	<i>sell (are selling) your produce.</i>
Ils (elles)	<b>vend-ent</b> leur maison.	They	<i>sell (are selling) their house.</i>

41

## THE IMPERFECT PAST TENSE:

formed by the *Pres.-Part.-Stem* + the *Endings* <sup>1</sup>— { Sing. -ais, -ais, -ait;  
<sup>1</sup> The same for all conjugations. { Plur. -ions, -iez, -aient.

The *Imperfect* is used to denote (a) an action habitually or repeatedly done; or (b) an action already in progress when another action began.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

Je parl-ais continuellement.	<i>I was speaking continually.</i>
Tu parl-ais toujours.	<i>Thou wast speaking always.</i>
Il parl-ait sans cesse.	<i>He was speaking without ceasing.</i>
Nous parl-ions en même temps.	<i>We were speaking at the same time.</i>
Vous parl-iez tous ensemble.	<i>You were speaking together.</i>
Ils parl-aient au même moment.	<i>They were speaking at the same time.</i>

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

Je fin-iss-ais,	} quand il entra.	<i>I was just finishing,</i>	} when he entered.
Tu fin-iss-ais,		<i>Thou wast finishing,</i>	
Il fin-iss-ait,		<i>He was finishing,</i>	
Nous fin-iss-ions,		<i>We were finishing,</i>	
Vous fin-iss-iez,		<i>You were finishing,</i>	
Ils fin-iss-aient,		<i>They were finishing,</i>	

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Je répond-ais en français.	<i>I was wont to reply in French.</i>
Tu répond-ais en anglais.	<i>Thou used to reply in English.</i>
Il répond-ait régulièrement.	<i>He used to reply regularly.</i>
Nous répond-ions tous les jours.	<i>We used to reply every day.</i>
Vous répond-iez de temps en temps.	<i>You used to reply from time to time.</i>
Ils répond-aient tous les huit jours.	<i>They used to reply every week.</i>

42

## THE PRETERITE (PAST DEFINITE)

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
is one of the Principal Parts (§ 39)— <i>Endings</i> :—	(CONJ.) 1st, 2d, 3d;	1st, 2d, 3d Pers.
	I. -ai, -as, -a;	-âmes, -âtes, -èrent.
	II. -is, -is, -it;	-îmes, -îtes, -irent.
	IV. -us, -us, -ut;	-ûmes, -ûtes, -urent.

The *Preterite* is used to denote actions absolutely past, without reference to their duration, repetition, or to any accessory circumstances (see § 10).

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

Je parl-ai de vous hier.	<i>I spoke of you yesterday.</i>
Tu parl-as du président.	<i>Thou spakest of the president.</i>
Il parl-a de l'accident.	<i>He spoke of the accident.</i>
Nous parl-âmes de la guerre.	<i>We spoke of the war.</i>
Vous parl-âtes de la paix.	<i>You spoke of the peace.</i>
Ils parl-èrent de leurs affaires.	<i>They spoke of their affairs.</i>

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

Je	<b>fin-is</b> il y a huit jours.	<i>I finished a week ago.</i>
Tu	<b>fin-is</b> bien vite.	<i>You finished very quickly.</i>
Il	<b>fin-it</b> d'un seul trait.	<i>He finished at one stretch.</i>
Nous	<b>fin-îmes</b> à la hâte.	<i>We finished in haste.</i>
Vous	<b>fin-îtes</b> avant nous.	<i>You finished before us.</i>
Ils	<b>fin-irent</b> par céder enfin.	<i>They finished by yielding at last.</i>

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Je	<b>répond-is</b> à toutes ses questions.	<i>I replied to all his questions.</i>
Tu	<b>répond-is</b> bien vaguement.	<i>You answered very vaguely.</i>
Il	<b>répond-it</b> qu'il était fatigué.	<i>He replied that he was tired.</i>
Nous	<b>répond-îmes</b> que nous étions prêts.	<i>We replied that we were ready.</i>
Vous	<b>répond-îtes</b> correctement.	<i>You answered correctly.</i>
Ils	<b>répond-irent</b> par écrit.	<i>They answered in writing.</i>

## 43

## THE FUTURE PRESENT:

	1st,	2d,	3d Pers.
formed from the <i>Infinitive</i> + the endings <sup>1</sup> -	<i>Sing. -ai,</i>	<i>-as,</i>	<i>-a.</i>
<sup>1</sup> The same for all Conjugations.	<i>(Plur. -ons,</i>	<i>-ez,</i>	<i>-ont.</i>

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

Je	<b>parler-ai</b> demain.	<i>I shall speak to-morrow.</i>
Tu	<b>parler-as</b> bientôt couramment.	<i>You will soon speak fluently.</i>
Il	<b>parler-a</b> ce soir.	<i>He will speak this evening.</i>
Nous	<b>parler-ons</b> un autre jour.	<i>We will speak another day.</i>
Vous	<b>parler-ez</b> après midi.	<i>You will speak this afternoon.</i>
Ils	<b>parler-ont</b> jusqu'à la fin.	<i>They will speak until the end.</i>

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

Je	<b>finir-ai</b> aussitôt que possible.	<i>I shall finish as soon as possible.</i>
Tu	<b>finir-as</b> demain matin.	<i>Thou wilt finish to-morrow morning.</i>
Il	<b>finir-a</b> longtemps avant moi.	<i>He will finish long before me.</i>
Nous	<b>finir-ons</b> en moins de rien.	<i>We shall finish in less than no time.</i>
Vous	<b>finir-ez</b> dans huit jours.	<i>You will finish in a week.</i>
Ils	<b>finir-ont</b> dans quinze jours.	<i>They will finish in a fortnight.</i>

FOURTH CONJUGATION (the final *e* of the Infinitive is dropped).

Je	<b>descendr-ai</b> à l'instant.	<i>I shall come down instantly.</i>
Tu	<b>descendr-as</b> tout de suite.	<i>You will come down immediately.</i>
Il	<b>descendr-a</b> à midi.	<i>He will come down at noon.</i>
Nous	<b>descendr-ons</b> pour déjeuner.	<i>We shall come down for breakfast.</i>
Vous	<b>descendr-ez</b> à minuit.	<i>You will come down at midnight.</i>
Ils	<b>descendr-ont</b> à cinq heures.	<i>They will come down at five.</i>

## THE CONDITIONAL PRESENT

	1st,	2d,	3d Pers.
formed from the <i>Infinitive</i> + the endings <sup>1</sup> —	<i>Sing.</i> -ais,	-ait,	-ait.
<sup>1</sup> The same for all Conjugations.	<i>Plur.</i> -ions,	-iez,	-aient.

(a) The *Conditional* is used to denote an action the accomplishment of which depends on a *condition* either expressed in a dependent Clause, or understood. *N.B.*—The Verb denoting the *condition* must not be used in the Conditional Mood.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

Je parler-ais anglais, si je le savais.	<i>I should speak English,</i>	} <i>if I, you, he, etc., knew it.</i>
Tu parler-ais français, si tu le savais.	<i>You would speak French,</i>	
Il parler-ait grec, s'il le savait.	<i>He would speak Greek,</i>	
N. parler-ions latin, si n. le savions.	<i>We would speak Latin,</i>	
V. parler-iez italien, si v. le saviez.	<i>You would speak Italian,</i>	
Ils parler-aient espagnol s'ils le savaient.	<i>They would speak Spanish,</i>	

(b) The *Conditional* is also used as a kind of *Future Imperfect*; i.e. to denote a future contingency viewed from the *Past* (whilst the *Future Pres.* denotes a future contingency viewed from the *Present*).

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

On espérait {	que je finir-ais.	} <i>It was hoped that</i>	<i>I should finish.</i>
	que tu finir-ais sous peu.		<i>thou wouldst finish shortly.</i>
	qu'il finir-ait avant nous.		<i>he would finish before us.</i>
	que n. finir-ions bientôt.		<i>we should finish soon.</i>
	que v. finir-iez demain.		<i>you would finish now.</i>
	qu'ils finir-aient tôt ou tard.		<i>they would finish sooner or later.</i>

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

On demanda {	si je descendr-ais.	} <i>One asked if (whether)</i>	<i>I should come down.</i>
	si tu descendr-ais.		<i>thou wouldst come down.</i>
	s'il descendr-ait.		<i>he would come down.</i>
	si n. descendr-ions.		<i>we should come down.</i>
	si v. descendr-iez.		<i>you would come down.</i>
	s'ils descendr-aient.		<i>they would come down.</i>

*N.B.*—Only in the sense of *whether* can *si* be used with the *Future* or *Conditional*.

## 45

## THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE:

formed from the *Present-Participle-Stem* + *endings*<sup>1</sup> { 1st, 2d, 3d.  
Sing. -e, -es, -e;  
Plur. -ions, -ier, -ent.

<sup>1</sup> The same for all Conjugations.

*1st Rule of the Subjunctive.*—When the Verb in the Principal Sentence expresses a *wish, command, necessity, consent, etc.*, the Verb in the Dependent Clause must be in the Subjunctive Mood.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

Principal Sentence.	Dependent Clause.				
On exige que (qu')	je	<b>parl-e</b>	français.	They request that {	<i>I should speak French.</i>
	tu	<b>parl-es</b>	haut.		<i>thou shouldst speak loud.</i>
	il	<b>parl-e</b>	demain.		<i>he should speak to-morrow.</i>
	n.	<b>parl-ions</b>	anglais.		<i>we should speak English.</i>
	v.	<b>parl-iez</b>	italien.		<i>you should speak Italian.</i>
	ils	<b>parl-ent</b>	avec lui.		<i>they should speak with him.</i>

*2d Rule of the Subjunctive.*—When the Verb in the Principal Sentence is *impersonal*, and does not express a *fact*, the Verb in the Dependent Clause must be in the Subjunctive Mood.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

Principal Clause.	Dependent Clause.	
Il faut que (qu')	je <b>finiss-e.</b>	<i>It is necessary that</i> { <i>I should finish.</i> <i>you should finish.</i> <i>he should finish.</i> <i>we should finish.</i> <i>you should finish.</i> <i>they should finish.</i>
	tu <b>finiss-es.</b>	
	il <b>finiss-e.</b>	
	n. <b>finiss-ions.</b>	
	v. <b>finiss-iez.</b>	
	ils <b>finiss-ent.</b>	

*3d Rule of the Subjunctive.*—When the Verb in the Principal Sentence expresses an *affection of the mind (emotion)*, as *joy, sorrow, fear, shame, surprise, etc.*, the Verb in the Dependent Clause must be in the Subjunctive.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Principal Clause.	Dependent Clause.		
On est surpris que (qu')	je répond-e.	One is surprised that	<i>I should reply (answer).</i>
	tu répond-es.		<i>you should reply.</i>
	il répond-e.		<i>he should reply.</i>
	n. répond-ions.		<i>we should reply.</i>
	v. répond-iez.		<i>you should reply.</i>
	ils répond-ent.		<i>they should reply.</i>

## THE PRETERITE (IMPERFECT) SUBJUNCTIVE :

formed from the *Preterite* by changing {  
the -s of the 2d pers. sing. into— { Sing. 1st, 2d, 3d Pers.  
{ Plur. -sse, -sses, -t;  
-ssions, -ssiez, -ssent.

When the Verb of the Principal Sentence is in the *Preterite*, *Imperfect* or *Conditional*, the Verb in the Dependent Clause is generally put in the *Imperfect* or *Preterite*.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

Principal Sentence.	Dependent Clause.	
On exigeait que (qu')	je parl-asse.	They insisted that { I should speak. thou shouldst speak. he should speak. we should speak. you should speak. they should speak.
	tu parl-asses.	
	il parl-ât.	
	n. parl-ussions.	
	v. parl-assiez.	
	ils parl-assent.	

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

Principal Clause.	Dependent Clause.	
Il fallut que (qu')	je fin-isse.	It was necessary that { I should finish. you should finish. he should finish. we should finish. you should finish. they should finish.
	tu fin-isses.	
	il fin-it.	
	n. fin-issions.	
	v. fin-issiez.	
	ils fin-issent.	

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Principal Clause.	Dependent Clause.	
On fut surpris que (qu')	je répond-isse.	One was surprised that { I replied. you replied. he replied. we replied. you replied. they replied.
	tu répond-isses.	
	il répond-it.	
	n. répond-issions.	
	v. répond-issiez.	
	ils répond-issent.	

**47 THE IMPERATIVE:** formed from the*Present Indicative* by omitting the Personal Pronoun.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

Sing. 2d pers.	Parle <sup>1</sup> franchement.	<i>Speak (thou) openly.</i>
Sing. 3d pers.	Qu'il parle.	<i>Let him speak.</i>
Plur. 1st pers.	Parlons français.	<i>Let us speak French.</i>
Plur. 2d pers.	Parlez à cœur ouvert.	<i>Speak (ye) candidly.</i>
Plur. 3d pers.	Qu'ils parlent.	<i>Let them speak.</i>

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

Sing. 2d pers.	Finis ton repas.	<i>Finish thy meal.</i>
Sing. 3d pers.	Qu'il finisse.	<i>Let him finish.</i>
Plur. 1st pers.	Finissons une fois pour toutes.	<i>Let us finish once for all.</i>
Plur. 2d pers.	Finissez vos travaux.	<i>Complete your labours.</i>
Plur. 3d pers.	Qu'ils finissent.	<i>Let them finish.</i>

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Sing. 2d pers.	Réponds sans hésiter.	<i>Reply without hesitating.</i>
Sing. 3d pers.	Qu'il réponde.	<i>Let him reply.</i>
Plur. 1st pers.	Répondons à sa lettre.	<i>Let us reply to his letter.</i>
Plur. 2d pers.	Répondez donc enfin !	<i>Reply then at last !</i>
Plur. 3d pers.	Qu'ils répondent.	<i>Let them reply.</i>

**48 THE INFINITIVE PRESENT**

is a *Verbal Noun*, and as such is used either as the *Subject* or *Object* of a Verb, or as the *Complement* of *Verbs*, *Nouns*, and *Adjectives*; i.e. if the *Extension* of a Verb, Noun, or Adjective is a Verb, that Verb must be in the *Infinitive* :—

(a) *Without Preposition*, after certain Verbs only (see § 140) :—

Il veut {	parler à présent.	He wants { to speak now.
	finir demain.	{ to finish to-morrow.
	répondre ce soir.	{ to reply this evening.

(b) With the Preposition *de* after most *Verbs*, *Nouns*, and *Adjectives* (§ 141) :—

Il refuse de parler.	<i>He declines to speak.</i>
L'art de bâtir.	<i>The art of building.</i>
Vous êtes libre de répondre.	<i>You are at liberty to reply.</i>

(c) With the Preposition *à*, after *Nouns*, *Verbs*, and *Adjectives* (§ 142) :—

Une chambre à coucher.	<i>A bedroom.</i>
Il a réussi à finir.	<i>He has succeeded in finishing.</i>
Elle est prompte à répondre.	<i>She is quick at replying.</i>

(d) With other *Prepositions* : *pour*, *sans*, *après*, *par* (see § 144) :—

Il partit sans parler.	<i>He has left without speaking.</i>
Il est venu pour finir.	<i>He has come in order to finish.</i>
Il finit par répondre.	<i>He ended by replying.</i>

<sup>1</sup> In the *first* Conjugation the *s* of the 2d pers. sing. of the *Indicative* is dropped in the *Imperative*.

## THE PARTICIPLES.

## I. The PARTICIPLE PRESENT used—

(a) *Adjectively* (§ 145):—

(agreeing like an Adjective in Gender and Number)—

Une créature **parlante**. *A speaking creature.*Une nouvelle **réjouissante**. *Glad-denying news.*Une ligne **descendante**. *A descending line.*(b) *Verbally* (§ 146):—

(remaining unchanged)—

Une personne **parlant** bien. *A person speaking well.*Une personne se **réjouissant** de . . .  
*A person rejoicing at . . .*Une famille **descendant** de . . .  
*A family descending from . . .*

## II. The PARTICIPLE PERFECT conjugated—

(a) with **avoir**:—

in the Compound Tenses of

(1) *all transitive* [not reflex.] verbs;(2) *most intransitive* verbs:—(b) with **être**:—

I. in the Compound Tenses of

(1) *all reflexive* verbs;(2) *a few intransitive* verbs;II. in all Tenses of the *Passive Voice*.*Examples.*(1) J'ai **achevé** }  
J'ai **fini** } mes lettres.  
J'ai **perdu** }Les lettres que j'ai { **achevées**.  
                                  { **finies**.  
                                  { **perdues**.(2) J'ai **procédé**.  
J'ai **grandi**.  
J'ai **dépendu**.I. (1) Elles se sont **dépêchées**.  
Elles se sont **rafraichies**.  
Elles se sont **rendues**.(2) Elles sont **entrées**.  
Elles sont **sorties**.  
Elles sont **descendues**.II. Elles sont **trompées**.  
Elles sont **garanties**.  
Elles sont **battues**.The PART. PERF. conjugated with 'avoir' agrees in Gender and Number with its *preceding direct Object* (see §§ 149-150).The PART. PERF. conjugated with 'être,' or used without auxiliary verb, agrees in Number and Gender with its *Subject* (§ 148).

The PART. PERF. of a 'Reflexive Verb' agrees with the 'Reflexive Pronoun,' if it is the direct Object.

## SYNOPTIC TABLE OF THE

In order to conjugate a verb in full it is necessary to know the

(a) From the  
INFINITIVE PRESENT

(parl-er, fin-ir, romp-re)

are formed :—

(1) THE FUTURE PRESENT

by adding :—

(1st, 2d, 3d Pers.)

Sing. -ai, -as, -a ;

Plur. -ons, -ez, -ont : as,

1st Conj. parler-ai, -as, -a ;  
parler-ons, -ez, -ont.

2d Conj. finir-ai, -as, -a ;  
finir-ons, -ez, -ont.

4th Conj. rompr-ai,<sup>1</sup> -as, -a ;  
rompr-ons, -ez, -ont.

(2) THE CONDITIONAL PRESENT

by adding :—

-ais, -ais, -ait ;

-ions, -iez, -aient :

1st Conj. parler-ais, -as, -ait ;  
parler-ions, -iez, -aient.

2d Conj. finir-ais, -ais, -ait ;  
finir-ions, -iez, -aient.

4th Conj. rompr-ais,<sup>1</sup> -ais, -ait ;  
rompr-ions, -iez, -aient.

<sup>1</sup> In the 4th Conj. the final e of the Infinitive is dropped.

(b) From the  
PARTICIPLE PRESENT

(parl-ant, fin-iss-ant, romp-ant)

are formed :—

(1) THE PRESENT INDICAT. PLUR.

by changing :—

(1st, 2d, 3d P.)

-ant into -ons, -ez, -ent : as,

1st Conj. parl-ons, -ez, -ent.

2d Conj. fin-iss-ons, -ez, -ent.

4th Conj. romp-ons, -ez, -ent.

(2) THE IMPERFECT INDICAT.

by changing :—

-ant into -ais, -ais, -ait ;

-ions, -iez, -aient : as,

1st Conj. parl-ais, -ais, -ait ;  
parl-ions, -iez, -aient.

2d Conj. fin-iss-ais, -ais, -ait ;  
fin-iss-ions, -iez, -aient.

4th Conj. romp-ais, -ais, -ait ;  
romp-ions, -iez, -aient.

(3) THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

by changing

-ant into -e, -es, -e ; -ions, -iez, -ent :

I. parl-e, -es, -e ; -ions, -iez, -ent.

II. fin-iss-e, -es, -e ; -ions, -iez, -ent.

IV. romp-e, -es, -e ; -ions, -iez, -ent.

## FORMATION OF SIMPLE TENSES.

Principal Parts from which all other Moods and Tenses are derived :—

(c) From the  
INDICATIVE PRESENT

1st Conj.	parl-e,	-es,	-e ;
	parl-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
2d Conj.	fin-is,	-is,	-it ;
	fin-issons,	-issez,	-issent.
4th Conj.	romp-s,	-s,	-t. <sup>1</sup>
	romp-ons,	-ez,	-ent.

is formed :—

## (1) THE IMPERATIVE,

by dropping the Pers. Pronoun : as,

*Singular.*1st Conj. (2) parl-e,<sup>2</sup>*Plural.*

(1) parl-ons,

(2) parl-ez.

*Singular.*

2d Conj. (2) fin-is,

*Plural.*

(1) fin-issons,

(2) fin-issez.

*Singular.*

4th Conj. (2) romp-s,

*Plural.*

(1) romp-ons,

(2) romp-ez.

<sup>1</sup> If the final stem-consonant is a dental (*i.e.* *d-* or *t-*), then the inflexional *-t* of the 3d pers. sing. is dropped :  
il vend, il bat.

<sup>2</sup> In the 1st Conj. 2d pers. sing. the *s* is dropped.

(d) From the  
PRETERITE INDICATIVE

(2d pers. sing.)

(parl-as, fin-is, romp-is)

is formed :—

(1) THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE,  
by changing the *s* of the 2d Person  
Singular into

1st,	2d,	3d Pers.
-sse,	-sses,	-t ;
-ssions,	-ssiez,	-ssent :

as,

## 1st Conj.

parl-asse,	-asses,	-ât ;
parl-ussions,	-assiez,	-assent.

## 2d Conj.

fin-isse,	-isses,	-ît ;
fin-ussions,	-issiez,	-issent.

## 4th Conj.

romp-isse,	-isses,	-ît ;
romp-ussions,	-issiez,	-issent.

## (e) From the PARTICIPLE PERFECT

(I. parlé, II. fini, IV. rompu)

are formed :—

(1) The Compound Tenses of the *Active* and *Reflexive* Voice.(2) *All* Tenses of the *Passive* Voice.

## II. COMPOUND TENSES.

These are formed by means of an *Auxiliary Verb* + the *Perfect Participle* of the Verb to be conjugated; hence it is necessary first of all to know the conjugation of the Auxiliary Verbs **avoir** and **être** :—

AUXILIARY VERB, AVOIR, *to have*. I. SIMPLE TENSES.

## PRESENT.

INFINITIVE :—avoir, *to have*.PARTICIPLE :—eu, *had*.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

J' ai, *I have,*  
tu as, *thou hast,*  
il a, *he has,*  
nous av-ons, *we have,*  
vous av-ez, *you have,*  
ils ont, *they have.*

## Principal Clause.

## Dependent Clause.

Il faut que  
" qu'  
" que  
" qu'

j' ai-e,<sup>1</sup>  
tu ai-es,  
il ai-t,  
nous ay-ons,  
vous ay-ez,  
ils ai-ent,

*It is necessary  
that*

*I have,<sup>2</sup>  
thou have,  
he have,  
we have,  
you have,  
they have.*

## IMPERFECT.

J' av-ais, *I used to have,*  
tu av-ais, *you used to have,*  
il av-ait, *he used to have,*  
nous av-ions, *we used to have,*  
vous av-iez, *you used to have,*  
ils av-aient, *they used to have.*

PRETERITE. (Commonly called *Imperfect Subjunctive*).

## Principal Clause.

## Dependent Clause.

J' eu-s, *I had,*  
tu eu-s, *thou hadst,*  
il eu-t, *he had,*  
nous eû-mes, *we had,*  
vous eû-tes, *you had,*  
ils eu-rent, *they had.*

Il fallait que  
" qu'  
" que  
" qu'

j' euss-e,  
tu euss-es,  
il eût,  
nous euss-ions,  
vous euss-iez,  
ils euss-ent,

*It was neces-  
sary that*

*I had,  
thou hadst,  
he had,  
we had,  
you had,  
they had.*

## PRESENT.

## FUTURE.

J' aur-ai, *I shall have,*  
tu aur-as, *thou wilt have,*  
il aur-a, *he will have,*  
nous aur-ons, *we shall have,*  
vous aur-ez, *you will have,*  
ils aur-ont, *they will have.*

## CONDITIONAL.

J' aur-ais, *I should have,*  
tu aur-ais, *Thou wouldst have,*  
il aur-ait, *He would have,*  
nous aur-ions, *We should have,*  
vous aur-iez, *You would have,*  
ils aur-aient, *They would have.*

## IMPERATIVE.

## Singular.

1. —
2. ai-e, *have (thou),*
3. qu'il ai-t, *let him have.*

## Plural.

- ay-ons, *let us have,*  
ay-ez, *have (ye),*  
qu'ils ai-ent, *let them have.*

52

## AVOIR: II. COMPOUND TENSES.

<i>Present Perf.</i> (Indic. and Subj.),	formed by	Pres. (Indic. and Subj.)	+ Perfect Part.
<i>Pluperfect</i> (Indicat.),	„	Imperf. (Indicat.)	+ Perfect Part.
<i>Past Anterior</i> (Indic. and Subj.),	„	Preterite (Indic. and Subj.)	+ Perfect Part.
<i>Future and Conditional Perfect</i> ,	„	Future and Condit. Present	+ Perfect Part.

## PERFECT.

INFINITIVE:—avoir eu, *to have had.* | PARTICIPLE:—ayant eu, *having had.*

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT PERFECT.

Principal Clause.			Dependent Clause.		
J'	ai eu,	<i>I have had,</i>	Il regrette que j'	aie eu,	He regrets that
tu	as eu,	<i>thou hast had,</i>	„	tu aies eu,	
il	a eu,	<i>he has had,</i>	„	il ait eu,	
nous	avons eu,	<i>we have had,</i>	„	nous ayons eu,	
vous	avez eu,	<i>you have had,</i>	„	vous ayez eu,	
ils	ont eu,	<i>they have had.</i>	„	ils aient eu,	<i>I have had,</i> <i>thou hast had,</i> <i>he has had,</i> <i>we have had,</i> <i>you have had,</i> <i>they have had.</i>

## 1ST PAST PERFECT (Plusqueparfait).

J'	avais eu,	<i>I had had,</i>
tu	avais eu,	<i>thou hadst had,</i>
il	avait eu,	<i>he had had,</i>
nous	avions eu,	<i>we had had,</i>
vous	aviez eu,	<i>you had had,</i>
ils	avaient eu,	<i>they had had.</i>

2D PAST PERFECT (Antérieur). (Commonly called *Pluperfect Subj.*)

Principal Clause.			Dependent Clause.		
J'	eus eu,	<i>I had had,</i>	Il regrettait que j'	eusse eu,	He regretted that
tu	eus eu,	<i>thou hadst had,</i>	„	tu eusses eu,	
il	eut eu,	<i>he had had,</i>	„	il eût eu,	
n.	eûmes eu,	<i>we had had,</i>	„	n. eussions eu,	
v.	eûtes eu,	<i>you had had,</i>	„	v. eussiez eu,	
ils	eurent eu,	<i>they had had.</i>	„	ils eussent eu,	<i>I had had,</i> <i>thou hadst had,</i> <i>he had had,</i> <i>we had had,</i> <i>you had had,</i> <i>they had had.</i>

## PERFECT.

## FUTURE.

## CONDITIONAL.

J'	aurai eu,	<i>I shall have had,</i>	J'	aurais eu,	<i>I should have had,</i>
tu	auras eu.	<i>thou wilt have had,</i>	tu	aurais eu,	<i>thou wouldst have had,</i>
il	aura eu,	<i>he will have had,</i>	il	aurait eu,	<i>he would have had,</i>
nous	aurons eu,	<i>we shall have had,</i>	nous	aurions eu,	<i>we should have had,</i>
vous	aurez eu,	<i>you will have had,</i>	vous	auriez eu,	<i>you would have had,</i>
ils	auront eu,	<i>they will have had.</i>	ils	auraient eu,	<i>they would have had.</i>

AUXILIARY VERB, ÊTRE, *to be*. I. SIMPLE TENSES.

## PRESENT.

INFINITIVE: être, *to be*.PARTICIPLE: été, *been*.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

			Principal Clause.		Dependent Clause.		
Je	suis,	<i>I am,</i>	Il faut que	je	soi-s,	It is necessary that	{ <i>I be,</i> <i>thou be,</i> <i>he be,</i> <i>we be,</i> <i>you be,</i> <i>they be.</i>
tu	es,	<i>thou art,</i>	„	tu	soi-s,		
il	est,	<i>he is,</i>	„	qu' il	soi-t,		
nous	sommes,	<i>we are,</i>	„	que nous	soy-ons,		
vous	êtes,	<i>you are,</i>	„	vous	soy-ez,		
ils	sont,	<i>they are.</i>	„	qu' ils	soi-ent,		

## IMPERFECT.

j'	ét-ais,	<i>I used to be,</i>
tu	ét-ais,	<i>thou usedst to be,</i>
il	ét-ait,	<i>he used to be,</i>
nous	ét-ions,	<i>we used to be,</i>
vous	ét-iez,	<i>you used to be,</i>
ils	ét-aient,	<i>they used to be.</i>

## PRETERITE. (Commonly called Imperf. Subj.)

			Principal Clause.		Dependent Clause.		
Je	fu-s,	<i>I was,</i>	Il fallait que	je	fuss-e,	It was necessary that	{ <i>I were,</i> <i>thou wert,</i> <i>he were,</i> <i>we were,</i> <i>you were,</i> <i>they were.</i>
tu	fu-s,	<i>thou wast,</i>	„	tu	fuss-es,		
il	fu-t,	<i>he was,</i>	„	qu' il	fût,		
nous	fû-mes,	<i>we were,</i>	„	que nous	fuss-ions,		
vous	fû-tes,	<i>you were,</i>	„	vous	fuss-iez,		
ils	fu-rent,	<i>they were.</i>	„	qu' ils	fuss-ent,		

## PRESENT.

## FUTURE.

Je	ser-ai,	<i>I shall be,</i>
tu	ser-as,	<i>thou wilt be,</i>
il	ser-a,	<i>he will be,</i>
nous	ser-ons,	<i>we shall be,</i>
vous	ser-ez,	<i>you will be,</i>
ils	ser-ont,	<i>they will be.</i>

## CONDITIONAL.

Je	ser-ais,	<i>I should be,</i>
tu	ser-ais,	<i>thou wouldst be,</i>
il	ser-ait,	<i>he would be,</i>
nous	ser-ions,	<i>we should be,</i>
vous	ser-iez,	<i>you would be,</i>
ils	ser-aient,	<i>they would be.</i>

## IMPERATIVE.

1. —
2. sois, (*be thou*),
3. qu'il soit, (*let him be*).

soy-ons, (*let us be*),  
soy-ez, (*be (ye)*),  
qu'ils soi-ent, (*let them be*).

## ÊTRE: II. COMPOUND TENSES. (Formed like those of Avoir, § 52.)

## PERFECT.

INFINITIVE: Avoir été, *to have been.*PARTICIPLE: Ayant été, *having been.*

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT PERFECT.

J'	ai été,	<i>I have been,</i>	Il regrette que j'	aie été,	He regrets that	{ <i>I have been,</i> <i>thou hast been,</i> <i>he has been,</i> <i>we have been,</i> <i>you have been,</i> <i>they have been.</i>
tu	as été,	<i>thou hast been,</i>	„	tu aies été,		
il	a été,	<i>he has been,</i>	„	il ait été,		
nous	avons été,	<i>we have been,</i>	„	n. ayons été,		
vous	avez été,	<i>you have been,</i>	„	v. ayez été,		
ils	ont été,	<i>they have been.</i>	„	ils aient été,		

1st PAST PERFECT (*Plusqueparfait*).

J'	avais été,	<i>I had been,</i>
tu	avais été,	<i>thou hadst been,</i>
il	avait été,	<i>he had been,</i>
nous	avions été,	<i>we had been,</i>
vous	aviez été,	<i>you had been,</i>
ils	avaient été,	<i>they had been.</i>

2d PAST PERFECT (*Antérieur*). (Plupf. Subj.)

J'	eus été,	<i>I had been,</i>	Il regrettait que	j'	eusse été,	He regretted that	I	had been,
tu	eus été,	<i>thou hadst been,</i>		tu	eusses été,		thou	hadst been,
il	eut été,	<i>he had been,</i>		il	eût été,		he	had been,
nous	eûmes été,	<i>we had been,</i>		n.	eussions été,		we	had been,
vous	eûtes été,	<i>you had been,</i>		v.	eussiez été,		you	had been,
ils	eurent été,	<i>they had been.</i>		ils	eussent été,		they	had been.

## PRESENT.

## FUTURE.

## CONDITIONAL.

J'	aurai été,	<i>I shall have been,</i>	J'	aurais été,	<i>I should have been,</i>
tu	auras été,	<i>thou wilt have been,</i>	tu	aurais été,	<i>thou wouldst have been.</i>
il	aura été,	<i>he will have been,</i>	il	aurait été,	<i>he would have been,</i>
n.	aurons été,	<i>we shall have been,</i>	n.	aurions été,	<i>we should have been,</i>
v.	aurez été,	<i>you will have been,</i>	v.	auriez été,	<i>you would have been,</i>
ils	auront été,	<i>they will have been.</i>	ils	auraient été,	<i>they would have been.</i>

## SYNOPTIC TABLE OF THE THREE

TENSES.	FIRST CONJUGATION.	
<i>Present.</i>	INFINITIVE. parl-er, <i>to speak.</i>	PARTICIPLES. parl-ant, <i>speaking.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	avoir parlé, <i>to have spoken.</i>	parl-é, <i>spoken.</i>
<i>Present.</i>	INDICATIVE. <i>I am speaking, I speak, etc.</i> je parl-e, tu parl-es, il parl-e, n. parl-ons, v. parl-ez, ils parl-ent.	SUBJUNCTIVE. <sup>1</sup> <i>I may speak, etc.</i> je parl-e. tu parl-es. il parl-e. n. parl-ions. v. parl-iez. ils parl-ent.
<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>I was speaking, etc.</i> je parl-ais. tu parl-ais. il parl-ait. n. parl-ions. v. parl-iez. ils parl-aient.	
<i>Preterite.</i>	<i>I spoke, etc.</i> je parl-ai, tu parl-as, il parl-a, n. parl-âmes, v. parl-âtes, ils parl-èrent.	<i>I might speak, etc.</i> je parl-asse. <sup>2</sup> tu parl-asses. il parl-ât. n. parl-ussions. v. parl-ussiez. ils parl-assent.
<i>Future Present</i> and CONDITIONAL <i>Present.</i>	<i>I shall speak, etc.</i> je parler-ai, tu parler-as, il parler-a, n. parler-ons, v. parler-ez, ils parler-ont.	<i>I should speak, etc.</i> je parler-ais. tu parler-ais. il parler-ait. n. parler-ions. v. parler-iez. ils parler-aient.
<i>Present.</i>	IMPERATIVE. parl-e, <i>speak.</i> parl-ons, <i>let us speak.</i> parl-ez, <i>speak ye.</i>	

<sup>1</sup> The English renderings of the French *Subjunctive* are only approximate; for the Synt. §§ 158-165.

<sup>2</sup> Commonly called *Imperfect Subjunctive*.

## REGULAR CONJUGATIONS. I. SIMPLE TENSES.

SECOND CONJUGATION.		FOURTH CONJUGATION.	
INFINITIVE. <i>fin-ir, to finish.</i>	PARTICIPLES. <i>fin-issant, finish- ing.</i>	INFINITIVE. <i>romp-re, to break.</i>	PARTICIPLES. <i>romp-ant, break- ing.</i>
<i>avoir fini, to have finished.</i>	<i>fin-i, finished.</i>	<i>avoir rompu, to have broken.</i>	<i>romp-u, broken.</i>
INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE. <sup>1</sup>	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE. <sup>1</sup>
<i>I am finishing, etc.</i>	<i>I may finish, etc.</i>	<i>I am breaking, etc.</i>	<i>I may break, etc.</i>
<i>je fin-is,</i>	<i>je fin-isse.</i>	<i>je romp-s,</i>	<i>je romp-e.</i>
<i>tu fin-is,</i>	<i>tu fin-isses.</i>	<i>tu romp-s,</i>	<i>tu romp-es.</i>
<i>il fin-it,</i>	<i>il fin-isse.</i>	<i>il romp-t,</i>	<i>il romp-e.</i>
<i>n. fin-issons,</i>	<i>n. fin-issions.</i>	<i>n. romp-ons,</i>	<i>n. romp-ions.</i>
<i>v. fin-issez,</i>	<i>v. fin-issiez.</i>	<i>v. romp-ez,</i>	<i>v. romp-iez.</i>
<i>ils fin-issent,</i>	<i>ils fin-issent.</i>	<i>ils romp-ent,</i>	<i>ils romp-ent.</i>
<i>I was finishing, etc.</i>		<i>I was breaking, etc.</i>	
<i>je fin-issais.</i>		<i>je romp-ais.</i>	
<i>tu fin-issais.</i>		<i>tu romp-ais.</i>	
<i>il fin-issait.</i>		<i>il romp-ait.</i>	
<i>n. fin-issions.</i>		<i>n. romp-ions.</i>	
<i>v. fin-issiez.</i>		<i>v. romp-iez.</i>	
<i>ils fin-issaient.</i>		<i>ils romp-aient.</i>	
<i>I finished, etc.</i>	<i>I might finish, etc.</i>	<i>I broke, etc.</i>	<i>I might break, etc.</i>
<i>je fin-is,</i>	<i>je fin-isse.</i>	<i>je romp-is,</i>	<i>je romp-isse.</i>
<i>tu fin-is,</i>	<i>tu fin-isses.</i>	<i>tu romp-is,</i>	<i>tu romp-isses.</i>
<i>il fin-it,</i>	<i>il fin-it.</i>	<i>il romp-it,</i>	<i>il romp-it.</i>
<i>n. fin-imes,</i>	<i>n. fin-issions.</i>	<i>n. romp-imes,</i>	<i>n. romp-issions.</i>
<i>v. fin-ites,</i>	<i>v. fin-issiez.</i>	<i>v. romp-ites,</i>	<i>v. romp-issiez.</i>
<i>ils fin-irent,</i>	<i>ils fin-issent.</i>	<i>ils romp-irent,</i>	<i>ils romp-issent.</i>
<i>I shall finish, etc.</i>	<i>I should finish, etc.</i>	<i>I shall break, etc.</i>	<i>I should break, etc.</i>
<i>je finir-ai,</i>	<i>je finir-ais.</i>	<i>je rompr-ai,</i>	<i>je rompr-ais.</i>
<i>tu finir-as,</i>	<i>tu finir-ais.</i>	<i>tu rompr-as,</i>	<i>tu rompr-ais.</i>
<i>il finir-a,</i>	<i>il finir-ait.</i>	<i>il rompr-a,</i>	<i>il rompr-ait.</i>
<i>n. finir-ons,</i>	<i>n. finir-ions.</i>	<i>n. rompr-ons,</i>	<i>n. rompr-ions.</i>
<i>v. finir-ez,</i>	<i>v. finir-iez.</i>	<i>v. rompr-ez,</i>	<i>v. rompr-iez.</i>
<i>ils finir-ont,</i>	<i>ils finir-aient.</i>	<i>ils rompr-ont,</i>	<i>ils rompr-aient.</i>
IMPERATIVE.			
<i>fin-is, finish.</i>		<i>romp-s, break.</i>	
<i>fin-issons, let us finish.</i>		<i>romp-ons, let us break.</i>	
<i>fin-issez, finish ye.</i>		<i>romp-ez, break ye.</i>	

## SYNOPTIC TABLE OF THE THREE REGULAR

TENSES.	FIRST CONJUGATION.	
	INFINITIVE.	
<i>Perfect.</i>	<b>avoir parl-é, to have spoken.</b>	
	PARTICIPLE.	
<i>Perfect.</i>	<b>ayant parl-é, having spoken.</b>	
	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Present Perfect.</i> ( <i>Past Indefinite.</i> )	<i>I have spoken, etc.</i> j' <b>ai</b> parlé, tu <b>as</b> parlé, il <b>a</b> parlé, n. <b>avons</b> parlé, v. <b>avez</b> parlé, ils <b>ont</b> parlé,	( <i>He desires that</i> ) <i>I may have spoken, etc.</i> Il désire que { j' <b>aie</b> parlé. tu <b>aies</b> parlé. il <b>ait</b> parlé. n. <b>ayons</b> parlé. v. <b>ayez</b> parlé. ils <b>aient</b> parlé.
<i>1st Past Perfect.</i> ( <i>Pluperfect.</i> )	<i>I had spoken, etc.</i> j' <b>avais</b> parlé. tu <b>avais</b> parlé. il <b>avait</b> parlé. n. <b>avions</b> parlé. v. <b>aviez</b> parlé. ils <b>avaient</b> parlé.	
<i>2d Past Perfect.</i> ( <i>Past Anterior.</i> )	<i>I had spoken, etc.</i> j' <b>eus</b> parlé, tu <b>eus</b> parlé, il <b>eut</b> parlé, n. <b>eûmes</b> parlé, v. <b>eûtes</b> parlé, ils <b>eurent</b> parlé,	( <i>He desired that</i> ) <i>I might have spoken, etc.</i> Il désirait que { j' <b>eusse</b> parlé. tu <b>eusses</b> parlé. il <b>eût</b> parlé. n. <b>eussions</b> parlé. v. <b>eussiez</b> parlé. ils <b>eussent</b> parlé.
<i>Future Perfect</i> and CONDITIONAL <i>Perfect.</i>	<i>I shall have spoken, etc.</i> j' <b>aurai</b> parlé, tu <b>auras</b> parlé, il <b>aura</b> parlé, n. <b>aurons</b> parlé, v. <b>aurez</b> parlé, ils <b>auront</b> parlé,	<i>I should have spoken, etc.</i> j' <b>aurais</b> parlé. tu <b>aurais</b> parlé. il <b>aurait</b> parlé. n. <b>aurions</b> parlé. v. <b>auriez</b> parlé. ils <b>auraient</b> parlé.

CONJUGATIONS. II. COMPOUND TENSES: A. WITH *avoir*.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## INFINITIVE.

*avoir fin-i, to have finished.* || *avoir romp-u, to have broken.*

## PARTICIPLE.

*ayant fin-i, having finished.* || *ayant romp-u, having broken.*

INDICATIVE. <i>I have finished, etc.</i>	SUBJUNCTIVE. <i>(Although) I may have finished, etc.</i>	INDICATIVE. <i>I have broken, etc.</i>	SUBJUNCTIVE. <i>(Provided that) I may have broken, etc.</i>
j' ai fini, tu as fini, il a fini, n. avons fini, v. avez fini, ils ont fini,	Quoque { j' aie fini. tu aies fini. il ait fini. n. ayons fini. v. ayez fini. ils aient fini.	j' ai rompu, tu as rompu, il a rompu, n. avons rompu, v. avez rompu, ils ont rompu,	Pourvu que { j' aie rompu, tu aies rompu, il ait rompu. n. ayons rompu. v. ayez rompu. ils aient rompu.
<i>I had finished, etc.</i> j' avais fini. tu avais fini. il avait fini. n. avions fini. v. aviez fini. ils avaient fini.		<i>I had broken, etc.</i> j' avais rompu. tu avais rompu. il avait rompu. n. avions rompu. v. aviez rompu. ils avaient rompu.	
<i>I had finished, etc.</i> j' eus fini, tu eus fini, il eut fini, n. eûmes fini, v. eûtes fini, ils eurent fini,	Quoque { j' eusse fini. tu eusses fini. il eût fini. n. eussions fini. v. eussiez fini. ils eussent fini.	<i>I had broken, etc.</i> j' eus rompu, tu eus rompu, il eut rompu, n. eûmes rompu, v. eûtes rompu, ils eurent rompu,	Pourvu que { j' eusse rompu. tu eusses rompu. il eût rompu. n. eussions rompu. v. eussiez rompu. ils eussent rompu.
<i>I shall have finished, etc.</i> j' aurai fini, tu auras fini, il aura fini, n. aurons fini, v. aurez fini, ils auront fini,	<i>I should have finished, etc.</i> j' aurais fini. tu aurais fini. il aurait fini. n. aurions fini. v. auriez fini. ils auraient fini.	<i>I shall have broken, etc.</i> j' aurai rompu, tu auras rompu, il aura rompu, n. aurons rompu, v. aurez rompu, ils auront rompu,	<i>I should have broken, etc.</i> j' aurais rompu. tu aurais rompu. il aurait rompu. n. aurions rompu. v. auriez rompu. ils auraient rompu.

## INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE FORMS OF CONJUGATION.

57

## A. INTERROGATIVE FORM.

(1) Simple Interrogation, viz. without Interrogative Pronoun or Adverb:—

(a) The Subject a PERSONAL PRONOUN:—

Parlé-je ? <sup>1</sup>	<i>Do I speak (am I speaking) ?</i>
Parles-tu ?	<i>Dost thou speak (art thou speaking) ?</i>
{ Parle-t-il [on] ?	<i>Does he (it) speak (is he [it] speaking) ?</i>
{ Parle-t-elle ?	<i>Does she speak (is she speaking) ?</i>
Parlons-nous ?	<i>Do we speak (are we speaking) ?</i>
Parlez-vous ?	<i>Do you speak ?</i>
Parlent-ils (elles) ?	<i>Do they speak ?</i>

Or—

Est-ce que je parle ?	<i>Do I speak (am I speaking) ?</i>
Est-ce que tu parles ?	<i>Dost thou speak (art thou speaking) ?</i>
Est-ce qu'il (elle) parle ?	<i>Does he (she) speak (is he [she] speaking) ?</i>
Est-ce que nous parlons ?	<i>Do we speak (are we speaking) ?</i>
Est-ce que vous parlez ?	<i>Do you speak ?</i>
Est-ce qu'ils (elles) parlent ?	<i>Do they speak ?</i>

In Compound Tenses:—

Ai-je parlé ? or Est-ce que j'ai parlé ? *Have I spoken ?*

(b) The Subject a NOUN:—

L'orateur parle-t-il ? or, Est-ce que l'orateur parle ? *Does the orator speak ?*  
 La bonne parle-t-elle ? or, Est-ce que la bonne parle ? *Does the servant speak ?*  
 Les orateurs parlent-ils ? or, Est-ce que les orateurs parlent ? *Do the orators speak ?*  
 Les bonnes parlent-elles ? or, Est-ce que les bonnes parlent ? *Do the servants speak ?*

In like manner with Verbs of any other conjugation ; as,

Finis-tu (or, Est-ce que tu finis) ?	<i>Art thou finishing ?</i>
Vendez-vous (or, Est-ce que v. vendez) ?	<i>Do you sell ?</i>
A-t-il (or, Est-ce qu'il a) bien dormi ?	<i>Has he slept well ?</i>
Sont-ils (or, Est-ce qu'ils sont) allés ?	<i>Are they gone ?</i>

(2) For Relative Interrogation, viz. introduced by an Interrogative Pronoun or Adverb, see Synt. § 106.

58

## B. NEGATIVE FORM.

Je	ne parle pas.	<i>I do not speak (I am not speaking).</i>
Tu	ne parles pas.	<i>Thou dost not speak.</i>
Il (elle)	ne parle pas.	<i>He (she) does not speak.</i>
Louis	ne parle pas.	<i>Louis is not speaking.</i>
Nous	ne parlons pas.	<i>We do not speak.</i>
Vous	ne parlez pas.	<i>You do not speak.</i>
Ils (elles)	ne parlent pas.	<i>They do not speak.</i>
Ces écoliers	ne parlent pas.	<i>These pupils do not speak.</i>

<sup>1</sup> To avoid the unpleasant sound of two mute syllables following each other, the final e mute of the verb is pronounced *acute*, and this is indicated in print or writing by an acute accent. If the 1st person singular is a monosyllable, the interrog. form, Est-ce que je . . . must be used for the sake of euphony: Est-ce que je prends ? etc. Except: —ai-je ? suis-je ? dis-je ? dois-je ? puis-je ? sais-je ? vais-je ? vois-je ? which have been sanctioned by usage.

In like manner with—

- (a) *the 2d Conj.*:—Je **ne** finis **pas**. *I do not finish (I am not finishing).*  
 Nous **ne** finissons **pas**, etc. *We do not finish, etc.*
- (b) *the 4th Conj.*:—Je **ne** réponds **pas**. *I do not reply.*  
 Nous **ne** répondons **pas**. *We do not reply, etc.*
- (c) *Aux. Verbs*:—Je n'ai **pas** mon couteau. *I have not my knife.*  
 Nous n'avons **pas** nos livres ici. *We have not our books here, etc.*  
 Je **ne** suis **pas** indisposé. *I am not unwell.*  
 Nous **ne** sommes **pas** tranquilles. *We are not quiet, etc.*

In French a verb is made *negative* in meaning by placing the particle 'ne' before that verb; in most cases this 'ne,' which is the real negation, must be supplemented by some Adverb or Noun to indicate the *manner* or *degree* in which the action expressed by that verb is negated: (see § 152) as,

- Cet écolier-ci **ne** travaille **pas**. *This pupil is not working.*  
 (which is the plainest and most general form of negation);  
 Cet écolier-là **ne** travaille **point**. *That pupil does not work (at all).*  
 Votre écolier **ne** travaille **plus**. *Your pupil works no more (no longer), i.e. does not work now.*
- Le vôtre **ne** travaille **pas** non plus. *Yours does not work either.*  
 Vous **ne** travaillez **guère**. *You hardly ever work.*  
 Ce fainéant **ne** travaille **jamais**. *This idler never works.*  
 Elle **ne** travaille **que** rarement. *She works only (but) rarely.*
- Je **ne** demande rien. *I ask for nothing.*  
 Je **ne** demande **personne**. *I do not ask for anything.*  
*I ask for nobody (no one).*  
*I do not ask for anybody (any one).*

*Observation 1.*—Rien and **personne**, in accordance with their original substantive nature, may stand as the *Subject* of a Verb; as,

- Rien **ne** décourage l'homme persévérant. *Nothing daunts a persevering man.*  
 Personne **ne** travaille ici. *Nobody (no one) is working here.*

*Obs. 2.*—INFINITIVE:—Ne **pas** parler (finir, etc.) *Not to speak (finish, etc.).*

## 59

## C. INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE FORM.

- Ne parlé-je **pas**? or, Est-ce que je **ne** parle **pas**? *Am I not speaking?*  
 Ne parles-tu **pas**? or, Est-ce que tu **ne** parles **pas**? *Art thou not speaking?*  
 Ne parle-t-il **plus**? *Is he no longer speaking?*  
 Ne parle-t-elle **jamais**? *Does she never speak?*  
 Ne parlons-nous **pas**? *Don't we speak?*  
 Ne parlez-vous **point**? *Don't you speak?*  
 Ne parlent-ils **plus**? *Are they not speaking now?*

The *interrogative* form is made *negative* by placing **ne** before, and **pas** or **point**, **plus**, **jamais**, etc. after, the interrogative form of the Verb: as,

- L'orateur **ne** parle-t-il **pas** bien? *Does not the orator speak well?*  
 or, Est-ce que l'orateur **ne** parle **pas** bien?  
 Pourquoi les écoliers **ne** répondent-ils **pas**? *Why do the pupils not reply?*

## 60

## PECULIARITIES OF REGULAR VERBS.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

(a) <b>appel-er,</b> to call.	(b) <b>jett-er,</b> to throw.	(c) <b>men-er,</b> to lead.	(d) <b>espér-er,</b> to hope.
----------------------------------	----------------------------------	--------------------------------	----------------------------------

*Present Indicative.*

j' appell-e	je jett-e	je mèn-e	j' espèr-e
tu appell-es	tu jett-es	tu mèn-es	tu espèr-es
il appell-e	il jett-e	il mèn-e	il espèr-e
n. appel-ons	n. jett-ons	n. men-ons	n. espér-ons
v. appel-ez	v. jett-ez	v. men-ez	v. espér-ez
ils appell-ent	ils jett-ent	ils mèn-ent	ils espèr-ent

(Thus also the *Pres. Sub.* and the *Imperative.*)*Future and Conditional.*

j'appell-erai, etc.	je jett-erai, etc.	je mèn-erai, etc.	j'espérer-ai, etc.
j'appell-erais, etc.	je jett-erais, etc.	je mèn-erais, etc.	j'espérer-ais, etc.

In order to avoid the unpleasant sound of two mute syllables following close upon one another, the stem of a Verb with an *e* mute in the last syllable but one is strengthened whenever the following syllable becomes mute; this strengthening of the stem in pronunciation is indicated in writing or printing, either—

(a) By doubling the final stem-consonant *l*, as above.(b) By doubling the final stem-consonant *t*, as above.

*Except*—*Celer*, to hide; *geler*, to freeze; *bourreler*, to torture (*fig.*); *démanteler*, to dismantle; *écarteler*, to quarter; *harceler*, to harass; *marteler*, to hammer; *modeler*, to fashion; *peler*, to peel;

*Acheter*, to buy; *becqueter*, to peck; *colleter*, to collar; *crocheter*, to hook; *épousseter*, to dust; *étiqueter*, to label (and their compounds),—

all these, instead of doubling the consonant, change *e* into *è* (see *c*): as—

je cèl-e, <i>I yield, etc.</i>	j' achèt-e, <i>I buy, etc.</i>
tu cèl-es,	tu achèt-es,
il cèl-e,	il achèt-e,
nous cel-ons,	nous achet-ons,
vous cel-ez,	vous achet-ez,
ils cèl-ent,	ils achèt-ent,

Or (*c*) By changing the *e* mute into *è*, if the final stem-consonant is not *l* or *t*, as above.

(*d*) Verbs with an *é* in the last syllable but one change this *é* into *è* whenever the following syllable becomes mute (except in the Future and Conditional), to indicate that the sound of *e* becomes long and *ouvert*.

(e) essay-er, to try.	(f) pri-er, to pray.	(g) chang-er, to change.	(h) plac-er, to place.
--------------------------	-------------------------	-----------------------------	---------------------------

*Present Indicative.*

j' essaï-e	je pri-e	je chang-e	je plac-e
tu essaï-es	tu pri-es	tu chang-es	tu plac-es
il essaï-e	il pri-e	il chang-e	il plac-e
n. essay-ons	n. pri-ons	n. change-ons	n. plac-ons
v. essay-ez	v. pri-ez	v. chang-ez	v. plac-ez
ils essaï-ent	ils pri-ent	ils chang-ent	ils plac-ent.

(Thus also the *Imperative*.)*Future.**Imperfect Indicative.*

j' essaier-ai, etc.	je pri-ais, etc.	je change-ais, etc.	je plac-ais, etc.
	n. pri-ions	n. chang-ions	n. plac-ions
	v. pri-iez	v. chang-iez	v. plac-iez
j' essaier-ais, etc.	ils pri-aient	ils change-aient	ils plac-aient.

(Thus also the *Preterite Indic. and Subj.*)

(e) Verbs in **-ayer, -eyer, -uyer**, change the **y** into **i** whenever the inflection becomes mute. Those in **-ayer** and **-eyer**, however, may retain **y** throughout:—je paie, or paye; je païrai or payerai, etc.

(f) Verbs in **-ier** are regular throughout, and are only mentioned here to show the working of the Imperfect Plural; notice also **cre-ér**; je cré-e, P. P. **cré-é**, f. **cré-ée**, etc.

(g) Verbs in **-ger** insert an **e** between the stem and the inflection when the latter begins with **a** or **o**, to indicate that **g** retains throughout the whole conjugation the soft sound which it always has before **e** or **i**.—See App., § 93.

(h) Verbs in **-cer** change the **c** into **ç** whenever the inflection begins with **a** or **o**, to indicate that **c** retains throughout the whole conjugation the sound of **s** which it always has before **e** or **i**.—See § 93.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

**fleurir** (to bloom) in the sense of to flourish, { PRES. PART.:—florissant.

to prosper, has:— { IMPERFECT:—je florissais, etc.,  
which are the remnants of the old French verb 'florir.'

**bénir**, to bless, to consecrate, has two forms { béni, -e, blessed.

for the PAST PART.:— { bénit, -e, consecrated.

The former, as a rule, applied to *persons* only; as, Un peuple **béni** de Dieu.

The latter, to *things* only; as, **pain bénit**; **eau bénite**.

**haïr**, to hate, in the *Singular* of PRES. INDIC. and IMPERAT., has **i** instead of **ï**:—

Je hais, tu hais, il hait; but *Plural*— nous haïssons, etc.

## COMPOUND TENSES: B. WITH être.

Most *Intransitive* Verbs denoting *Motion* from one place to another, or *Transition* from a state into another, are conjugated in their *Compound Tenses* with the auxiliary Verb *être*: as,

aller, to go.      décéder, } to die.      éclore, to be hatched, to blow.      retourner, to return.  
arriver, to arrive.      mourir, } to enter.      entrer, to enter.      sortir, to go out.  
tomber, to fall.      venir, to come.

Perf.	INFINITIVE.			PARTICIPLE.		
	être arrivé, to have (be) arrived.			étant arrivé, having (being) arrived.		
	INDICATIVE.			SUBJUNCTIVE.		
Present Perfect.	<i>I have arrived, etc.</i>			<i>I have arrived, etc.</i>		
	je	suis	arrivé (-ée). <sup>1</sup>	Jusqu'à ce que	je	sois arrivé (-ée).
	tu	es	arrivé (-ée). <sup>1</sup>		tu	sois arrivé (-ée).
	il	est	arrivé.	Until	il	soit arrivé.
	elle	est	arrivée.		elle	soit arrivée.
	nous	sommes	arrivés (-ées). <sup>2</sup>		nous	soyons arrivés (-ées).
	vous	êtes	arrivés (-ées). <sup>2</sup>		vous	soyez arrivés (-ées).
	ils	sont	arrivés.		ils	soient arrivés.
	elles	sont	arrivées.		elles	soient arrivées.
Past Perf., Anter., and Plupft.	<i>I had arrived, etc.</i>			<i>I had arrived, etc.</i>		
	j'	étais	arrivé (-ée), etc.	Jusqu'à ce que	je	fusse arrivé (-ée), etc.
	nous	étions	arrivés (-ées) etc.		nous	fussions arrivés (-ées) etc.
Fut. Perf. and CONDITIONAL Perfect.	<i>I shall have arrived, etc.</i>			<i>I should have arrived, etc.</i>		
	je	serai	arrivé (-ée).	je	serais	arrivé (-ée).
	tu	seras	arrivé (-ée).	tu	serais	arrivé (-ée).
	il (elle)	sera	arrivé (-ée).	il (elle)	serait	arrivé (-ée).
	nous	serons	arrivés (-ées).	nous	serions	arrivés (-ées).
	vous	seriez	arrivés (-ées).	vous	seriez	arrivés (-ées).
	ils(elles)	seront	arrivés (-ées).	ils(elles)	seraient	arrivés (-ées).

Observation.—A few Intransitive Verbs may be conjugated either with *avoir* or *être*:

With *avoir* to denote the *action*:—

La rivière a baissé aujourd'hui.

The river has fallen to-day.

With *être* to denote the *result* of the action, the actual state or condition:—

La rivière est bien baissée.

The river is very low.

The principal of these Verbs are:—

accourir	to hasten	déchoir	to decay	embellir	to embellish
apparaître	to appear	déborder	to overflow	empirer	to grow worse
disparaître	to disappear	monter	to ascend	grandir	to grow
baïsser	to sink	descendre	to descend	rajeunir	to grow young again
changer	to change	échapper	to escape	rester	(to remain (with être)
croître	{ to grow	échouer	to { strand	vieillir	{ to reside (with avoir)
	{ to increase.		{ fail.		{ to grow old.

<sup>1</sup> Viz. arrivée, if *je* or *tu* represents a Female.

<sup>2</sup> Viz. arrivées, if *nous* or *vous* represent Females.

## THE PASSIVE VOICE.

**62** The PASSIVE VOICE is formed by means of the Auxiliary Verb *être* (§ 53-54) and the PART. PERF. of the Verb to be conjugated.

This PART. PERF. must agree in *Gender* and *Number* with its *Subject*.

Pres.	INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLE.	
	être honoré, <sup>1</sup> <i>to be honoured.</i>		étant honoré, <sup>1</sup> <i>being honoured.</i>	
Perf.	avoir été honoré, <sup>1</sup> <i>to have been honoured.</i>		ayant été honoré, <sup>1</sup> <i>having been honoured.</i>	
Present.	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
	<i>I am honoured, etc.</i> je suis honoré (-ée). tu es honoré (-ée). il est honoré. elle est honorée. nous sommes honorés (-ées). vous êtes honorés (-ées). ils sont honorés. elles sont honorées.		<i>I be honoured.</i> je sois honoré (-ée). tu sois honoré (-ée). il soit honoré. elle soit honorée. nous soyons honorés (-ées). vous soyez honorés (-ées). ils soient honorés. elles soient honorées.	
Pret. & Impf.	<i>I was honoured, etc.</i> j'étais honoré (-ée), etc. nous étions honorés (-ées), etc. je fus honoré (-ée), etc. nous fûmes honorés (-ées) etc.		<i>(In order that)</i> Afin que <i>I might be honoured, etc.</i> je fusse honoré (-ée), etc. n. fussions honorés (-ées), etc.	
Perfect & Ant. Plough.	<i>I have (had) been honoured, etc.</i> j'ai été honoré, etc. j'avais été honoré, etc. j'eus été honoré, etc.		<i>(In order that)</i> Afin que <i>I may (might) be honoured.</i> j'aie été honoré, etc. j'eusse été honoré, etc.	
Fut. Perf.	<i>I shall be honoured, etc.</i> je serai honoré (-ée). nous serons honorés (-ées).		<i>Con. Pres.</i> <i>I should be honoured if...etc.</i> je serais honoré (-ée), si... n. serions honorés (-ées), si...	
Fut. Perf.	<i>I shall have been honoured, etc.</i> j'aurai été honoré (-ée). nous aurons été honorés (-ées).		<i>Con. Perf.</i> <i>I should have been honoured if, etc.</i> j'aurais été honoré (-ée). n. aurions été honorés (-ées).	
Present.	IMPERATIVE.			
	sois honoré (-ée), <i>be (thou) honoured.</i> qu'il soit honoré, <i>let him be honoured.</i>			soyons honorés (-ées), <i>let us be honoured.</i> soyez honorés (-ées), <i>be (ye) honoured.</i> qu'ils soient honorés, <i>let them be honoured.</i>

<sup>1</sup> f. honorée; pl., m. and f., honorés (-ées).

63 REFLEXIVE VERBS are of two kinds:—

(a) *Exclusively* Reflexive :—**se repentir**, to repent ;

(b) *Occasionally* Reflexive :—**se sentir**, to feel one's self.

Of both of these many are not used reflexively in English :—**se fâcher**, to get angry, etc.

### I. SIMPLE TENSES.

INFINITIVE.				PRESENT.		PARTICIPLE.			
se laver, to wash one's self.						se lavant, washing one's self.			
INDICATIVE.				PRESENT.		SUBJUNCTIVE.			
						(He wishes that) I should wash myself, etc.			
je	me	lave,	I wash myself.	Il désire que (qu')		je	me lave,		
tu	te	laves,	thou washest thyself.			tu	te lave,		
il	se	lave,	he washes himself.			il	se lave,		
elle	se	lave,	she washes herself.			elle	se lave,		
on	se	lave,	one washes one's self.			on	se lave,		
nous	nous	lavons,	we wash ourselves,			nous	nous lavions,		
vous	vous	lavez,	you wash yourselves,			vous	vous laviez,		
ils	se	lavent,	} they wash themselves.			ils	se lavent,		
elles	se	lavent.				elles	se lavent.		
INTERROGATIVE.				INDICATIVE PRESENT.		NEGATIVE.			
Do I wash myself? etc.						I do not wash myself, etc.			
me lavé-je?						je ne me lave pas,			
te laves-tu?						tu ne te laves pas,			
se lave-t-il (elle)?						il ne se lave pas,			
nous lavons-nous?						n. ne nous lavons pas,			
vous lavez-vous?						v. ne vous laves pas,			
se lavent-ils?						ils ne se lavent pas.			
INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE COMBINED:—									
Am I not washing myself? etc.									
ne me lavé-je pas?				ne nous lavons-nous pas?					
ne te laves-tu pas?				ne vous lavez-vous pas?					
ne se lave-t-il pas?				ne se lavent-ils pas?					
AFFIRMATIVE.				IMPERATIVE.		NEGATIVE.			
lave-toi, wash thyself.						ne te lave pas, do not wash thyself.			
qu'il se lave, let him wash himself.						qu'il ne se lave pas, let him not wash himself.			
lavons-nous, let us wash ourselves.						ne nous lavons pas, let us not wash ourselves.			
lavez-vous, wash yourself.						ne vous lavez pas, do not wash yourselves.			
qu'ils se lavent, let them wash themselves.						qu'ils ne se lavent pas, let them not wash themselves.			
Like the Present, conjugate the other Simple Tenses:—									
je me lavais, I was washing myself, etc.				avant que je me lavasse, . . before I washed myself.					
je me lavai, I washed myself, etc.									
je me laverai, I shall wash myself, etc.				je me laverais, si . . . I should wash myself, if...					

## VERBS.

The REFLEXIVE Form of conjugation is also used with *Reciprocal Verbs*, i.e. Verbs the action of which, instead of reacting (reflecting) on the *same* agent (Subject), is described as *mutually* affecting the two or more *different* agents implied by the Subject :—*Ils se haïssent, they hate each other, or one another.*

II. COMPOUND TENSES FORMED THROUGHOUT WITH *être* (AND *never* WITH *avoir*).

INFINITIVE.			PERFECT.			PARTICIPLE.		
s'être lavé, <i>to have washed one's self.</i>						s'étant lavé, <i>having washed one's self.</i>		
INDICATIVE.			PRESENT PERFECT.			SUBJUNCTIVE.		
<i>I have washed myself, etc.</i>						<i>Although I have washed myself, etc.</i>		
je	me suis	lavé (-ée).	Quoique (qu')			je	me sois	lavé (-ée).
tu	t'es	lavé (-ée).				tu	te sois	lavé (-ée).
il (on)	s'est	lavé.				il	se soit	lavé.
elle	s'est	lavée.				elle	se soit	lavée.
n.	nous sommes	lavés (-ées).				n.	nous soyons	lavés (-ées).
v.	vous êtes	lavés (-ées).				v.	vous soyez	lavés (-ées).
ils	se sont	lavés.			ils	se soient	lavés.	
elles	se sont	lavées.			elles	se soient	lavées.	
INTERROGATIVE.			INDICATIVE PRESENT.			NEGATIVE.		
<i>Have I washed myself? etc.</i>						<i>I have not washed myself, etc.</i>		
me suis-je lavé (-ée)?			je			ne me suis pas lavé (-ée).		
t'es-tu lavé (-ée)?			tu			ne t'es pas lavé (-ée).		
s'est-il lavé?			il			ne s'est pas lavé.		
s'est-elle lavée?			elle			ne s'est pas lavée.		
nous sommes-n. lavés (ées)?			n.			ne nous sommes pas lavés (-ées).		
vous êtes-v. lavés (ées)?			v.			ne vous êtes pas lavés (-ées).		
se sont-ils lavés?			ils			ne se sont pas lavés.		
se sont-elles lavées?								
INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE COMBINED.								
<i>Have I not washed myself? etc.</i>								
ne me suis je pas lavé (-ée)?			ne nous sommes -n. pas lavés (-ées)?					
ne t'es-tu pas lavé (-ée)?			ne vous êtes-v. pas lavés (-ées)?					
ne s'est-il pas lavé?			ne se sont-ils pas lavés?					
Like the <i>Pres. Perf.</i> are conjugated the other <i>Compound Tenses</i> :—								
<i>I had washed myself, etc.</i>						<i>I might have washed myself, etc.</i>		
je m'étais lavé (-ée).						je me fusse lavé (-ée), etc.		
je me fus lavé (-ée).						<i>I should have washed myself, etc.</i>		
<i>I shall have washed myself, etc.</i>						je me serais lavé (-ée), etc.		
je me serai lavé (-ée).								

The Part. Perf. must agree in Gender and Number with the *Reflexive Pronoun* if the latter is the *Direct Object*; the Part. Perf. remains invariable if the Reflex. Pron. is an *Indirect Object* :—*Elle s'est lavée*; but “*Elle s'est procuré un billet* ;” *s'* being here = *for herself*.

## 64

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.

(a) Denoting the *state of the atmosphere* :—

Pendant un orage il pleut, il grêle,	<i>During a thunderstorm it rains, it</i>
il tonne, il éclaire.	<i>hails, it thunders, it lightens</i>
En hiver il gèle, il neige.	<i>In winter it freezes, it snows.</i>
Au printemps il dégèle.	<i>In spring it thaws.</i>
Quel temps fait-il ? (for Conj. of faire, see § 77).	<i>What sort of weather is it ?</i>
Tantôt il fait beau temps, tantôt mauvais temps.	<i>Sometimes it is fine, at other times it is bad weather.</i>
Au mois d'août il fait chaud.	<i>In August it is hot.</i>
Au printemps il fait doux.	<i>In spring it is mild.</i>
En automne il fait frais.	<i>In autumn it is cool.</i>
En hiver il fait froid.	<i>In winter it is cold.</i>
Il fait jour à six heures du matin.	<i>It is daylight at six in the morning.</i>
Il fait nuit (sombre) après le coucher du soleil.	<i>It is dark after sunset.</i>
En novembre il fait du brouillard.	<i>In November it is foggy.</i>
En mars il fait de la poussière.	<i>In March it is dusty.</i>
Il fait clair de lune.	<i>The moon shines.</i>

(b) Only occasionally impersonal :—

Il s'agit de faire son devoir.	<i>The question is to do one's duty.<sup>1</sup></i>
De quoi s'agissait-il ?—	<i>What was it necessary to do ?—</i>
Il s'agissait de payer.	<i>It was necessary to pay.</i>
De qui s'agissait-il ?—	<i>Who was concerned ?—</i>
Il s'agissait de nous.	<i>We were concerned.</i>
Il s'agira de votre honneur.	<i>Your honour will be at stake.</i>
<sup>1</sup> Notice the different ways of rendering <i>s'agir de</i> in English.	
Il importe que vous finissiez cette règle.	<i>It is important that you should finish this sum.</i>
Il arrive souvent qu'on est trompé.	<i>It often happens that one is deceived.</i>
Il semble que cela soit facile.	<i>It seems to be easy.</i>
Il y va de votre vie (§ 65).	<i>Your life is at stake, etc.</i>
Il y va de vos intérêts.	<i>Your interests are at stake, etc.</i>
1. Il me faut une clef (§ 72).	<i>I want (must have) a key.</i>
Il te faut un dé.	<i>You want (must have) a thimble.</i>
Il lui faut un crayon.	<i>He (she) wants (must have) a pencil.</i>
Il nous faut du thé.	<i>We want (must have) tea.</i>
Il vous faut de l'eau.	<i>You want (must have) water.</i>
Il leur faut des plumes.	<i>They want (must have) pens.</i>
2. Il me faut finir.	} <i>I must finish, etc.</i>
Il faut que je finisse.	
Il faut que l'ouvrier finisse.	<i>The workman must finish, etc.</i>

**y avoir, to be.**

## INDICATIVE.

Il y a quelqu'un ici.	<i>There is some one here.</i>
Il y a des gens là-bas.	<i>There are people over there.</i>
Il y avait un homme là-bas.	<i>There was a man yonder.</i>
Il y avait beaucoup de monde.	<i>There were many people.</i>
Il y eut un accident (des accidents).	<i>There was an accident (were accidents).</i>
Il y aura du fruit cette année.	<i>There will be fruit this year.</i>
Il y aurait moins de misère, si . . .	<i>There would be less misery, if . . .</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Croyez-vous qu'il y ait du danger ?	<i>Do you think there is any danger ?</i>
J'ignorais qu'il y eût du danger.	<i>I was not aware that there was any danger.</i>

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Il y a (avait) eu un orage, etc.	<i>There has (had) been a thunderstorm, etc.</i>
Il y aura eu un accident, etc.	<i>There must have been an accident, etc.</i>
Il y aurait eu des pertes, etc.	<i>There would have been losses, etc.</i>
Quoiqu'il y ait eu de la pluie.	<i>Although there has been some rain.</i>

## INTERROGATIVE.

Y a-t-il loin d'ici à Genève ?	<i>Is it far from here to Geneva ?</i>
Combien y a-t-il de Paris à Londres ?—	<i>How far is it from Paris to London ?—</i>
Il y a environ 450 kilomètres..	<i>About 280 miles.</i>
Y avait-il souvent des concerts ?	<i>Were there often concerts ?</i>
Y a-t-il eu un orage ce matin ?	<i>Has there been a storm this morning ?</i>
Y a-t-il longtemps que vous êtes ici ?—	<i>Have you been here a long time ?—</i>
Mais oui, il y a une demi-heure.	<i>Why yes, half an hour.</i>
Combien y a-t-il qu'elle est mariée ?—	<i>How long has she been married ?—</i>
Il n'y a que quinze jours.	<i>Only a fortnight. (See Synt. § 110.)</i>

## NEGATIVE.

Il n'y a pas de danger ici.	<i>There is no danger here.</i>
Il n'y avait jamais tant de monde.	<i>There were never so many people.</i>
Il n'y a guère eu de visiteurs.	<i>There have hardly been any visitors, etc.</i>
Il n'y avait pas eu d'argent.	<i>There had not been any money, etc.</i>
Pourvu qu'il n'y ait plus de querelles.	<i>Provided there be no more any quarrels, etc.</i>

## INTERROGATIVE-NEGATIVE.

N'y a-t-il personne à la maison ?	<i>Is there nobody at home ?</i>
N'y avait-il rien à faire ?	<i>Was there nothing to be done ?</i>
N'y aurait-il pas eu de l'avantage ?	<i>Would there have been no advantage ?</i>

## B. IRREGULAR AND ANOMALOUS VERBS

## SYNOPTIC TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION OF IRREGULAR AND ANOMALOUS VERBS

## ILLUSTRATED BY REPRESENTATIVE VERBS

The FIRST CONJUGATION contains only two Anomalous Verbs :—

**Aller**, *to go*, the parts of which are derived from three different Stems :—

**va-** in Indic. Pres. Sing., 3d p. Plur., and Imperat. 2d p. Sing ;

**ir-** in Future and Conditional Pres. ;

and **all-** in all other Parts.

**Envoyer**, *to send*, anomalous in Fut. and Condit. only.

INFINITIVE.	PART. PRES.	INDIC. PRES. SING. 3d p. PL.	PRETERITE.	PART. PERF.
SECOND CONJUGATION.				
(a) dorm-ir.	dorm-ant.	dor-s, -s, -t ;	Regular : — dorm-is.	Regular : — dorm-i.
(b) cueill-ir.	cueill-ant.	cueill-e, -es, -e ;	cueill-is.	cueill-i.
ouvr-ir	ouvr-ant.	ouvr-e, -es, -e ;	ouvr-is.	ouvr-ert.
(c) ten-ir.	ten-ant.	tien-s, -s, -t ; tienn-ent.	tin-s.	ten-u.
THIRD CONJUGATION.				
(a) rec-ev-oir.	rec-ev-ant.	reçoi-s, -s, -t ; recoiv-ent.	Contracted Stem : — reç-us.	reç-u.
(b) mou-v-oir.	mou-v-ant.	meu-s, -s, -t ; meuv-ent.	mus.	mu.
(c) vou-l-oir.	vou-l-ant.	veu-x, -x, -t ; veul-ent.	voul-us.	voul-u.
(d) asse-oir.	assey-ant.	assoï-s, -s, -t ;	ass-is.	ass-is.
FOURTH CONJUGATION.				
(a) plai-nd-re.	plai-gn-ant.	plain-s, -s, -t ;	Pres. Part. Stem : — plai-gn-is.	Lat. Supine Stem : — plain-t.
(b) condui-re.	condui-s-ant.	condui-s, -s, -t ;	condui-s-is.	condui-t.
(c) di-re.	di-s-ant.	di-s, -s, -t ,	Contracted Stem : — di-s.	di-t.
(d) connaît-t-re.	connaï-ss-ant.	connaï-s, -s, -t ;	conn-us.	conn-u.
(e) plai-re.	plai-s-ant.	plai-s, -s, -t ;	plus.	plu.
(f) résou-d-re.	réso-lv-ant.	résou-s, -s, -t ;	résol-us.	resou-s (résol-u).

## 1ST CONJUGATION :—aller, to go. I. SIMPLE TENSES.

TENSES.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLES.
<i>Present.</i> <i>Perfect.</i>	<i>aller, to go.</i> <i>être allé, to have gone.</i>	<i>allant, going.</i> <i>allé, gone.</i> <i>étant allé, having gone.</i>
	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Present.</i>	<i>I am going, etc.</i> je vais, tu vas, il va, nous allons, vous allez, ils vont.	<i>It is necessary that—</i> <i>Il faut que</i> { I go, etc. j' aille, tu ailles, il aille, nous allions, vous alliez, ils aillent.
<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>I was going, etc.</i> j' allais, nous allions, etc.	
<i>Pret.</i>	<i>I went, etc.</i> j' allai, nous allâmes, etc.	<i>Il fallut que</i> { <i>that I should go, etc.</i> j' allasse, nous allussions.
<i>Fut. Pres.</i>	<i>I shall go, etc.</i> j' irai, nous irons, etc.	CONDITIONAL (Present).
		<i>I should go, etc.</i> j' irais, nous irions.
IMPERATIVE.		
<i>Present.</i>	2. va, go (thou). (va followed by y or en takes s :—vas-y ; vas-en chercher.)	1. allons, let us go. 2. allez, go ye.
II. COMPOUND TENSES.		
<i>Pres. Perf.</i>	<i>I have gone, etc.</i> je suis allé (-ée), n. sommes allés (-ées).	<i>I have gone, etc.</i> je sois allé (-ée), n. soyons allés (-ées).
<i>Plupf. and Anter.</i>	<i>I had gone, etc.</i> j' étais (fus) allé (-ée), n. étions (fûmes) allés (-ées)	<i>I had gone, etc.</i> je fusse allé (-ée), n. fussions allés (-ées).
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>I shall have gone, etc.</i> je serai allé (-ée), n. serons allés (-ées).	CONDITIONAL (Perfect).
		<i>I should have gone, etc.</i> je serais allé (-ée), n. serions allés (-ées).

Envoyer, to send, is irregular in the *Fut.* and *Condit.* only :—  
j'enverrai, etc., j'enverrais, etc.

## S'en aller, to go away. I. SIMPLE TENSES.

Pres.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLES.
	s'en aller, to go away.	s'en allant, going away.
Present.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	<i>I go away, etc.</i> je m' en vais, tu t' en vas, il s' en va, n. nous en allons, v. vous en allez, ils s' en vont.	<i>(Before) I go away, etc.</i> Avant que { je m' en aille, tu t' en ailles, il s' en aille, n. nous en allions, v. vous en alliez, ils s' en aillent.
Impf. and Pret.	<i>I was going away (went away), etc.</i> je m' en allais (allai), n. nous en allions (allâmes).	<i>Quoique (Although) I might go away, etc.</i> { je m' en allasse, n. nous en allussions, etc.
Fut. Pres.	<i>I shall go away, etc.</i> je m' en irai, n. nous en irons, etc.	<b>CONDITIONAL (Present.)</b> <i>I should go away, etc.</i> je m' en irais, n. nous en irions, etc.
Affirmative. IMPERATIVE. Negative.		
	va-t'en, go (thou) away. allons-nous-en, let us go away. allez - vous-en, go (ye) away.	ne t' en va pas, do not go away. ne nous en allons pas, let us not go away. ne vous en allez pas, (ye) not go away.
Present.	NEGATIVE. INDICATIVE.	INTERROGATIVE.
	<i>I do not go away, etc.</i> je ne m' en vais pas, tu ne t' en vas pas, il ne s' en va pas, n. ne nous en allons pas, v. ne vous en allez pas, ils ne s' en vont pas.	<i>Do I go away ? etc.</i> m' en vais-je ? t' en vas-tu ? s' en va-t-il ? nous en allons-n. ? vous en allez-v. ? s' en vont-ils ?
Present.	NEGATIVE-INTERROGATIVE.	
	ne m' en vais-je pas ? <i>Am I not going away ? etc.</i> ne t' en vas-tu pas ? ne s' en va-t-il pas ? ne nous en allons-n. pas ? ne vous en allez-v. pas ? ne s' en vont-ils pas ?	

S'en aller, *to go away*. II. COMPOUND TENSES.

Perf.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
	s'en être allé, <i>to have gone away</i> .	s'en étant allé, <i>having gone away</i> .
Past Indefinite.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	<i>I have gone away, etc.</i> je m' en suis allé (-ée), tu t' en es allé (-ée), il s' en est allé, n. nous en sommes allés (ées), v. vous en êtes allés (-ées), ils s' en sont allés.	<i>I have gone away, etc.</i> <i>Provided that</i> <i>Pourvu que</i> { je m' en sois allé (ée), tu t' en sois allé (ée), il s' en sois allé, n. n. en soyons allés (ées), v. v. en soyez allés (ées), ils s' en soient allés.
Plupf.	<i>I had gone away, etc.</i> je m' en étais allé (-ée), n. nous en étions allés (-ées).	
P. Anter.	<i>I had gone away, etc.</i> je m' en fus allé (-ée), n. nous en fûmes allés (-ées).	<i>I had gone away, etc.</i> je m' en fusse allé, n. nous en fussions allés (-ées).
Fut. Perf.	<i>I shall have gone away, etc.</i> je m' en serai allé (-ée), n. nous en serons allés (ées).	CONDITIONAL (Perfect.) <i>I should have gone away, etc.</i> je m' en serais allé (-ée), n. nous en serions allés (-ées).
Past Indef.	NEGATIVE.	INTERROGATIVE.
	<i>I have not gone away, etc.</i> je ne m' en suis pas allé (-ée), tu ne t' en es pas allé, il ne s' en est pas allé, n. ne n. en sommes pas allés, v. ne v. en êtes pas allés, ils ne s' en sont pas allés.	<i>Do I go away ? etc.</i> m' en suis-je allé (-ée)? t' en es-tu allé ? s' en est-il allé ? n. en sommes-nous allés (-ées)? v. en êtes vous allés ? s' en sont-ils allés ?
Past Indef.	NEGATIVE-INTERROGATIVE.	
	ne m' en suis-je pas allé (-ée)? <i>Have I not gone away ? etc.</i> ne t' en es-tu pas allé ? ne s' en est-il pas allé ? ne nous en sommes-n. pas allés (-ées)? ne vous en êtes-vous pas allés ? ne s' en sont-ils pas allés ?	

All *Irregular* and *Anomalous* Verbs of the Second Conjugation differ from the *Regular* Conj.

(1) By the absence of the character -iss- in the Part. Pres. and its derived tenses :  
Compare—fin-ir, fin-iss-ant, with dorm-ir, dorm-ant.

n. fin-iss-ons, je fin-issais, with n. dorm-ons, je dorm-ais.

(2) By the Indic. Pres.-Sing. inflections : compare—je fin-is, with je dor-s, je cueill-e, etc.

INFINITIVE PRESENT.	PARTICIPLE PRESENT.	INDICATIVE PRESENT.	SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.
<i>The following drop their final stem-consonants (m, t, v, ill) in the Singular (see § 81):—</i>			
* dorm-ir to sleep	dorm-ant	je dor-s, n. dorm-ons tu dor-s, v. dorm-ez il dor-t, ils dorm-ent.	je dorm-e, n. dorm-ions tu dorm-es, v. dorm-iez il dorm-e, ils dorm-ent.
ment-ir to lie	ment-ant	je men-s, n. ment-ons tu men-s, v. ment-ez il men-t, ils ment-ent.	je ment-e, etc.
se repent-ir to repent	se repent-ant	je me repen-s, n. n. repent-ons tu te repen-s, v. v. repent-ez il se repen-t, ils se repent-ent	je me repent-e, etc.
sent-ir to feel, to smell	sent-ant	je sen-s, n. sent-ons tu sen-s, v. sent-ez il sen-t, ils sent-ent.	je sent-e, etc.
serv-ir to serve	serv-ant	je ser-s, n. serv-ons tu ser-s, v. serv-ez il ser-t, ils serv-ent.	je serv-e, etc.
part-ir to set out	part-ant	je par-s, n. part-ons tu par-s, v. part-ez il par-t, ils part-ent.	je part-e, etc.
sort-ir to go out	sort-ant	je sor-s, n. sort-ons tu sor-s, v. sort-ez il sor-t, ils sort-ent.	je sort-e, etc.
bouill-ir to boil (intrans.)	bouill-ant	je bou-s, n. bouill-ons tu bou-s, v. bouill-ez il bou-t, ils bouill-ent.	je bouill-e, etc.
* faill-ir to fail Fut. faudrai	(faill-ant)	(je fau-x, n. faill-ons) * (tu fau-x, v. faill-ez) il fau-t, ils faill-ent.	il faill-e, etc.
vêt-ir to clothe	vêt-ant	je vêt-s, n. vêt-ons tu vêt-s, v. vêt-ez il vêt, ils vêt-ent.	je vêt-e, etc.
fui-ir to flee	fuy-ant	je fui-s, n. fuy-ons tu fui-s, v. fuy-ez il fui-t, ils fui-ent.	je fui-e, etc.
ou-ïr to hear Fut. j'oirai, obsol.	(oy-ant)	(j' oi-s, n. oy-ons) (tu oi-s, v. oy-ez) (ils oi-t, ils oi-ent).	(j' oie, etc.)

## CONJUGATION.

The Imperfect (Indic. and Sub.), Future\* and Imperative are only given when irregularly formed.

\* The Conditional invariably has the Future-stem.

Of the Compound Tenses only the Past Indef. (*Pres. Perf.*) is given, and this only when conjugated with *être*.

PRETERITE (PASSÉ DÉFINI).	PARTICIPLE PERFECT.	COMPOUND VERBS, REMARKS, ETC.
	(The Past Indefinite is given only when formed with <i>être</i> ).	Conjugate thus—
je dorm-is, n.dorm-îmes tu dorm-is, v.dorm-îtes il dorm-it, ils dorm-irent je ment-is, etc.	dormi   menti	endormir, <i>to lull to sleep</i> . s'endormir, <i>to fall asleep</i> . se rendormir, <i>to fall asleep again</i> . démentir <i>to give the lie</i> .
je me repent-is, etc.	repenti (il s'est repenti, elle s'est repentie)	
je sent-is, etc.	senti	consentir, <i>to consent</i> . pressentir, <i>to forebode</i> . [effects. ressentir, <i>to resent</i> ; se ressentir, <i>to feel the</i>
je serv-is, etc.	servi	(asservir, <i>to enslave</i> , is regular : asservissant, etc.) desservir, <i>to clear the table</i> ; <i>to do an ill office</i> .
je part-is, etc.	parti (il est parti, elle est partie)	départir, <i>to dispense, to divide</i> . repartir, <i>to start again</i> ; repartant. [etc.] (répartir, <i>to distribute</i> , is reg. :—répartissant,
je sort-is, etc.	sorti (il est sorti, elle est sortie)	ressortir, <i>to go out again</i> . [issant, etc.) (ressortir, <i>to be in the jurisdiction</i> :—ressort- (assortir, <i>to assort</i> :—assortissant, etc.)
je bouill-is, etc.	bouilli	faire bouillir, <i>to boil</i> (transitive).
je faill-is, etc.	failli	* the 1st and 2d pers. are hardly ever used. défaillir, <i>to feel faint</i> , used in Infinit. ; Pres. ; Indic. Plur. ; Impf. ; Pret. and Pres. Part. ; seldom in the other tenses. faillir = <i>to become bankrupt</i> , is regular.
je vêt-is, etc.	vêtu	dévêtir, <i>to divest</i> . revêtir, <i>to invest</i> .
je fui-s, etc.	fui	s'enfuir, <i>to run away</i> .
(j' ouis)	ouï	all Simple Tenses but the Infinitive and Part. Perf. are obsolete. Cp. [FUT. orrai. in Corneille (1636)].

INFINITIVE PRESENT.	PARTICIPLE PRESENT.	INDICATIVE PRESENT.		SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.
<i>The following have the 1st Conj.-endings:—e, es, e:—</i>				
cueill-ir <i>to gather, collect</i> FUT. je cueiller-ai	cueill-ant	je cueill-e, tu cueill-es, il cueill-e,	n. cueill-ons v. cueill-ez ils cueill-ent.	je cueill-e, etc.
saill-ir, <i>to jut out</i>	saill-ant	il saill-e,	ils saill-ent.	il saill-e, etc.
assaill-ir <i>to assail</i>	assaill-ant	j' assaill-e, tu assaill-es, il assaill-e,	n. assaill-ons v. assaill-ez ils assaill-ent.	j' assaill-e, etc.
ouvr-ir, <i>to open</i>	ouvr-ant	j' ouvr-e, tu ouvr-es, il ouvr-e,	n. ouvr-ons v. ouvr-ez ils ouvr-ent.	j' ouvr-e, etc.
offr-ir, <i>to offer</i>	offr-ant	je offr-e, tu offr-es, il offr-e,	n. offr-ons v. offr-ez ils offr-ent.	j' offr-e, etc.
FUTURE <i>contracted:—</i>		<i>The stem vowel altered in the Sing. and 3d pers. Plur.:—</i>		
acquér-ir, <i>to acquire</i> FUT. j'acquerrai	acquér-ant	j' acquier-s, tu acquier-s, il acquier-t,	n. acquér-ons v. acquér-ez ils acquièr-ent	j' acquièr-e, n. acquér-ions tu acquièr-es, v. acquér-iez il acquièr-e, ils acquièr-ent
ten-ir, <i>to hold</i> FUT. je tiendrai	ten-ant	je tien-s, tu tien-s, il tien-t,	n. ten-ons v. ten-ez ils tienn-ent.	tienn-e, ten-ions tienn-es, ten-iez tienn-e, tienn-ent.
ven-ir, <i>to come</i> FUT. je viendrai	ven-ant	je vien-s, tu vien-s, il vien-t,	n. ven-ons v. ven-ez ils vienn-ent.	vienn-e, ven-ions vienn-es, ven-iez vienn-e, vienn-ent.
mour-ir, <i>to die</i> FUT. je mourrai	mour-ant	je meur-s, tu meur-s, il meur-t,	n. mour-ons v. mour-ez ils meur-ent.	meur-e, mour-ions meur-es, mour-iez meur-e, meur-ent.
cour-ir, <i>to run</i> FUT. je courrai	cour-ant	je cour-s, tu cour-s, il cour-t,	n. cour-ons v. cour-ez ils cour-ent.	je cour-e, n. cour-ions tu cour-es, v. cour-iez il cour-e, ils cour-ent.
<i>Defective:—</i>				
gésir, <i>to lie, to rest</i>	gis-ant * <i>Impf. gisais*</i> <i>* Pron. s = ss</i>	— — il gît,	n. gis-ons v. gis-ez ils gis-ent. } *	(wanting)

CONJUGATION—*Continued.*

PRETERITE (PASSÉ DÉFINI).	PARTICIPLE PERFECT.	COMPOUND VERBS, REMARKS, ETC.
je cueill-is, etc.	ceuill-i	accueillir, <i>to welcome, to receive.</i> } FUT. like recueillir, <i>to gather, to reap.</i> } cueillir. se recueillir, <i>to collect one's self.</i>
il saill-it, etc.	saill-i	FUT. <b>saillera.</b> saillir, <i>to gush</i> , is regular:— <b>saillissant.</b>
j' assaill-is, etc.	assaill-i	assaillir, <i>to assail</i> ; tressaillir, <i>to start, shudder.</i>
j' ouvr-is, etc.	ouv-ert	entr'ouvrir, <i>to set ajar</i> ; rouvrir, <i>to reopen.</i> couvrir, <i>to cover</i> ; P.P. couvert. découvrir, <i>to discover.</i>
j' offr-is, etc.	off-ert	souffrir, <i>to suffer</i> ; P.P. souffert.
<i>Contracted:—</i>		
j' acqu-is, etc.	acqu-is	conquérir, <i>to conquer.</i> s'enquérir, <i>to inquire</i> ; requérir, <i>to require.</i> querir, <i>to fetch</i> (Infinitive only).
je tin-s, n. tîn-mes tu tin-s, v. tîn-tes il tin-t, ils tin-rent	ten-u	s'abstenir, <i>to abstain</i> ; appartenir, <i>to belong.</i> contenir, <i>to contain</i> ; détenir, <i>to detain.</i> entretenir, <i>to keep up</i> ; maintenir, <i>to maintain.</i> obtenir, <i>to obtain</i> ; retenir, <i>to retain.</i> soutenir, <i>to sustain, to assert.</i>
je vin-s. n. vîn-mes tu vin-s, n. vîn-tes il vin-t, ils vin-rent	ven-u (je suis ven-u, elle est ven-ue)	advenir (or avenir), <i>to happen</i> ; circonvenir, <i>to impose upon</i> ; contrevenir à, <i>to in-</i> <i>fringe</i> ; convenir, <i>to suit</i> ; devenir, <i>to</i> <i>become</i> ; disconvenir, <i>to disagree</i> ; inter- venir, <i>to interfere</i> ; parvenir, <i>to attain, to</i> <i>reach</i> ; prévenir, <i>to warn</i> ; provenir, <i>to</i> <i>proceed from</i> ; revenir, <i>to come back</i> ; se souvenir de, <i>to remember</i> ; subvenir à, <i>to relieve</i> ; survenir, <i>to happen.</i>
je mour-us, etc.	mort (il est mort elle est mort-e)	se mourir, <i>to be dying</i> , used in all simple tenses, except in the Pret.
je cour-us, etc.	cour-u	accourir, <i>to hasten to</i> ; concourir, <i>to concur</i> ; courre (le cerf), Obsol. Infin., <i>to hunt</i> (the stag, etc.); discourir, <i>to discourse</i> ; par- courir, <i>to run over</i> ; secourir, <i>to help</i> , etc.
(wanting)	(wanting)	Obs. Ci-gît, <i>here lies</i> (on gravestones). issir (obsol.), <i>to descend from</i> , used in Comp. Tenses only:—je suis issu, etc. fêrir, <i>to strike</i> ; P.P. fêru (obsol.).

	INFINITIVE PRESENT.	PARTICIPLE PRESENT.	INDICATIVE PRESENT.	SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.
	FUT. contracted:—			
70			The Stem Contracted:—	
	recev-oir, to receive FUT. je recevrai	recev-ant	je reçoi-s, tu reçoi-s, il reçoi-t,	n. recev-ons v. recev-ez ils recev-ent. reçoiv-e, recev-ions reçoiv-es, recev-iez reçoiv-e, rejoiv-ent.
	dev-oir, to owe FUT. je devrai	dev-ant	je doi-s, tu doi-s, il doi-t,	n. dev-ons v. dev-ez ils doiv-ent. doiv-e, dev-ions doiv-es, dev-iez doiv-e, doiv-ent.
			The Stem-vowel altered (see § 81):—	
71				
	sav-oir, to know FUT. je saurai	sach-ant, (IMPF. savais)	je sai-s, tu sai-s, il sai-t,	n. sav-ons v. sav-ez ils sav-ent. sach-e, sach-ions sach-es, sach-iez sach-e, sach-ent.
	mouv-oir, to move FUT. je mouvrai	mouv-ant	je meu-s, tu meu-s, il meu-t,	n. mouv-ons v. mouv-ez ils mouv-ent. meuv-e, mouv-ions meuv-es, mouv-iez meuv-e, meuv-ent.
	pleuv-oir, to rain FUT. il pleuvra	pleuv-ant	— — il pleu-t,	— — il pleuve, —
	pouv-oir, can, to be able FUT. je pourrai	pouv-ant	je peu-x,* tu peu-x, il peu-t,	n. pouv-ons v. pouv-ez ils peuv-ent. puiss-e, puiss-ions puiss-es, puiss-iez puiss-e, puiss-ent.
72				
	voul-oir, to wish, to want FUT. je voudrai	voul-ant	je veu-x, tu veu-x, il veu-t,	n. voul-ons v. voul-ez ils veul-ent. veuill-e, voul-ions veuill-es, voul-iez veuill-e, veuill-ent.
	val-oir, to be worth FUT. je vaudrai	val-ant	je vau-x, tu vau-x, il vau-t,	n. val-ons v. val-ez ils val-ent. vaill-e, val-ions vaill-es, val-iez vaill-e, vaill-ent.
	fall-oir, must, to be necessary FUT. il faudra	(wanting) IMPERSONAL:—	il me faut, il te faut, il lui faut,	il nous faut il vous faut il leur faut. il me faille, il te faille, il lui faille, etc.
	déch-oir, to decay F. je déch-errai	(wanting) (IMPF. déchoyais)	je déchoi-s, tu déchoi-s, il déchoi-t,	n. déchoy-ons v. déchoy-ez ils déchoi-ent. je déchoi-e.
	éch-oir, to fall due FUT. écherra	éch-é-ant	{ il échoi-t, { il éche-t	(wanting) ils échoi-ent.
	voir, to see FUT. je verrai	voy-ant	je voi-s, tu voi-s, il voi-t,	n. voy-ons v. voy-ez ils voi-ent. je voi-e; etc.

## CONJUGATION.

PRETERITE. (PASSÉ DÉFINI).	PARTICIPLE PERFECT.	COMPOUND VERBS, REMARKS, ETC.
<i>Contracted :—</i> je reçu-s, n. reçûmes tu reçu-s, v. reçû-tes il reçu-t, ils reçu-rent  je du-s, n. dû-mes tu du-s, v. dû-tes il du-t, ils du-rent   je su-s   je mu-s   il plu-t je pu-s  je voulu-s  je valu-s  il me fallu-t, il te fallu-t, il lui fallu-t, etc.  je déchu-s  j' échu-s, tu échu-s, il échu-t, etc.  je vi-s	<i>Contracted :—</i> reçu  dû, f. due  su  mû, f. mue pl. mus, mues  plu pu  voulu  valu  fallu  déchu (il est déchu, elle est déchue)  échu (il est échu, elle est échue)  vu	apercevoir, <i>to perceive</i> ; concevoir, <i>to conceive</i> ; percevoir, <i>to collect</i> (taxes, etc.) décevoir, <i>to deceive</i> .  redevoir, <i>to owe still</i> .   IMPERATIVE :—Sing. (2) sache. Plur. (1) sachons. „ (2) sachez.  émouvoir, <i>to affect</i> . promouvoir, <i>to promote</i> , used in Infinit. and Compound Tenses only.   * Or — je puis. <i>Interrogative always :—puis-je ?</i>  IMPERATIVE :— Veux, } <i>unusual and emphatic</i> ; voulons, } <i>whilst, veuillez = be so good</i> voulez. } <i>as to . . .</i>  PRES. SUBJ. of prévaloir, <i>to prevail</i> :— je prévale ; équivaloir, <i>to be equivalent</i> ; revaloir, <i>to return like for like</i> .  falloir is Impersonal (see § 64, b).   choir, <i>to fall</i> , is only used in the Infinit. and Past. Perf. :—chu, f. chue (chute, obsol.)  si le cas y échet, } le cas écheant, } <i>the case occurring</i> . s'il y échet. }  Pret. Fut. pourvoir, <i>to provide</i> :—pourvus, pourvoirai. prévoir, <i>to foresee</i> :—prévis, prévoirai. entrevoir, <i>to catch a</i> <i>glimpse</i> ; revoir, <i>to</i> <i>see again</i> .

INFINITIVE PRESENT.	PARTICIPLE PRESENT.	INDICATIVE PRESENT.	SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.
(Future contracted.) s'asse-oir je m'asseyerai Fut. jem'assiérai  or— je m'asseyerai je m'assoierai surse-oir to supersede  seoir, to fit, to be becoming Fut. il siéra appar-oir to be evident	s'assey-ant (s'assey-ant)   sursoy-ant  sey-ant  (wanting)	je m'assied-s, n.n. assey-ons tu t' assied-s, v.v. assey-ez il s' assied, ils s' assey-ent or— je m'assoï-s, n.n. assoy-ons tu t' assoï-s, v.v. assoy-ez il s' assoï-t, ils s' assoï-ent je sursoï-s, n. sursoy-ons tu sursoï-s, v. sursoy-ez il sursoï-t, ils sursoï-ent — — il sied, ils sié-ent. il appert (law term).	assey-e, assey-ions assey-es, assey-iez assey-e, assey-ent. or— assoï-e, assoy-ions, etc.  (wanting)  (wanting) (wanting)

## FOURTH

The original Lat. stem-consonant appears in the Pres. Part. and its derivatives,  
see § 81.

4 plaind-re to pity  ceind-re to gird  X joind-re to join	plai-gn-ant  cei-gn-ant  joi-gn-ant	je plain-s, n. plai-gn-ons tu plain-s, v. plai-gn-ez il plain-t, ils plai-gn-ent. je cein-s, n. cei-gn-ons tu cein-s, v. cei-gn-ez il cein-t, ils cei-gn-ent. je join-s, n. joi-gn-ons tu join-s, v. joi-gn-ez il join-t, ils joi-gn-ent.	je plai-gn-e, n. plai-gn-ions tu plai-gn-es, v. plai-gn-iez il plai-gn-e, ils plai-gn-ent je cei-gn-e, etc. je joi-gn-e, etc.
5 condui-re to lead, to conduct  construi-re to construct, to build cui-re to cook, to bake nui-re to hurt, harm lui-re to shine écri-re to write	condui-s-ant  construi-s-ant  cui-s-ant  nui-s-ant  lui-s-ant  écri-v-ant	je condui-s, n. condui-s-ons tu condui-s, v. condui-s-ez il condui-t, ils condui-s-ent je construi-s, n. construi-s-ons tu construi-s, v. construi-s-ez il construi-t, ils construi-s-ent je cui-s, n. cui-s-ons tu cui-s, v. cui-s-ez il cui-t, ils cui-s-ent. je nui-s, n. nui-s-ons tu nui-s, v. nui-s-ez il nui-t, ils nui-s-ent. je lui-s, n. lui-s-ons tu lui-s, v. lui-s-ez il lui-t, ils lui-s-ent. j' écri-s, n. écri-v-ons tu écri-s, v. écri-v-ez il écri-t, ils écri-v-ent.	je condui-e, n. condui-ions tu condui-es, v. condui-iez il condui-e, ils condui-ent. je construi-e, etc. je cui-s-e, etc. je nui-s-e, etc. je lui-s-e, etc. j' écriv-e, etc.

CONJUGATION—*Continued.*

PRETERITE.	PARTICIPLE PERFECT.	COMPOUND VERBS, REMARKS, ETC.
je m'assi-s, n. n. assî-mes tu t'assi-s, v. v. assî-tes il s'assi-t, ils s'assi-rent.	assis (il s'est assis elle s'est assise)	asseoir, <i>to seat, to set.</i> rasseoir, <i>to set again; (rassis, composed, stale).</i> se rasseoir, <i>to sit down again.</i>
je sursi-s	sursis	
(wanting) (wanting)	(wanting) (wanting)	seoir, <i>to sit, to be situated :—</i> PRES. PART. : séant, <i>sitting (law term).</i> PAST. PART. : sis, <i>f. sise, situated.</i>

## CONJUGATION.

Pret. formed from the Pres. Part. stem.	P.P. derived fr. Lat. supine <i>planctum</i> , etc.	
je plai-gn-is, n. plai-gnî-mes tu plai-gn-is, v. plai-gnî-tes il plai-gn-it, ils plai-gni-rent je cei-gn-is, etc.	plaint  ceint	se plaindre, <i>to complain.</i> craindre, <i>to fear.</i> contraindre, <i>to compel.</i> atteindre, <i>to reach; astreindre, to compel;</i> enfreindre, <i>to infringe; éteindre, to extin-</i> <i>guish; feindre, to feign; peindre, to paint;</i> restreindre, <i>to restrict; teindre, to dye.</i>
je joi-gn-is, etc.	joint	enjoindre, <i>to enjoin; rejoindre, to overtake;</i> poindre, <i>to prick, to dawn; oindre, to</i> <i>anoint.</i>
je condui-s-is, n. condui-s tu condui-s-is, v. condui-s-ites il condui-s-it, ils condui-s-irent je construi-s-is, etc.	conduit  construit	Thus all verbs in -duire: déduire, <i>to deduct;</i> éconduire, <i>to show out; introduire, to in-</i> <i>troduce; produire, to produce; réduire, to</i> <i>reduce; séduire, to seduce; traduire, to trans-</i> détruire, <i>to destroy; instruire, to instruct. [late.</i>
je cui-s-is, etc.	cuit	recuire, <i>to boil (bake) again—(biscuit, twice</i> <i>baked).</i>
je nui-s-is, etc.	nui	
(wanting)	lui	reluire, <i>to glitter, to gleam.</i>
j'écri-v-is, etc.	écrit	décrire, <i>to describe; inscrire, to inscribe.</i> prescrire, <i>to prescribe; proscrire, to proscribe.</i> souscrire, <i>to subscribe; transcrire, to copy.</i>

## FOURTH

INFINITIVE PRESENT.	PARTICIPLE PRESENT.	INDICATIVE PRESENT.	SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.
<b>76</b> <b>traire</b> <i>to milk</i>	tray-ant	je trai-s,    n. tray-ons tu trai-s,    v. tray-ez il trai-t,    ils trai-ent.	je trai-e, etc.
<b>vaincre</b> <i>to conquer</i>	vainqu-ant	je vainc-s,    n. vainqu-ons tu vainc-s,    n. vainqu-ez il vainc,    v. vainqu-ent.	je vainqu-e, etc.
<b>suivre</b> <i>to follow</i>	suiv-ant	je sui-s,    n. suiv-ons tu sui-s,    v. suiv-ez tu sui-t,    ils suiv-ent.	je suiv-e, etc.
<b>77</b> <b>rire</b> <i>to laugh</i>	ri-ant	je ri-s,    n. ri-ons tu ri-s,    v. ri-ez il ri-t,    ils ri-ent.	je ri-e, etc.
<b>suffire</b> <i>to suffice</i>	suffi-s-ant	je suffi-s,    n. suffi-s-ons tu suffi-s,    v. suffi-s-ez il suffi-t,    ils suffi-s-ent.	je suffis-e, etc.
<b>dire</b> <i>to say</i>	di-s-ant	je di-s,    n. di-s-ons tu di-s,    v. DI-T-ES il di-t,    ils di-s-ent.	je dis-e, etc.
<b>maudire</b> <i>to curse</i>	maudi-ss-ant	je maudi-s, n. maudi-ss-ons tu maudi-s, v. maudi-ss-ez il maudi-t, ils maudi-ss-ent.	je maudiss-e, etc.
<b>fai-re</b> <i>to do</i> Fut. je ferai	fai-s-ant* (*pron. fesant fesais, fesons)	je fai-s,    n. fai-s-ons* tu fai-s,    v. FAI-T-ES il fai-t,    ils FONT.	je fass-e, n. fass-ions tu fass-es, v. fass-iez il fass-e, ils fass-ent.
<b>mettre</b> <i>to put, to place</i>	mett-ant	je met-s,    n. mett-ons tu met-s,    v. mett-ez il met,    ils mett-ent.	je mett-e, etc.
<b>pren-d-re</b> <i>to take, to catch</i>	pren-ant	je prend-s, n. pren-ons tu prend-s, v. pren-ez il prend,    ils prenn-ent.	je prenn-e, n. pren-ions tu prenn-es, v. pren-iez il prenn-e, ils prennent
<b>battre</b> <i>to beat</i>	batt-ant	je bat-s,    n. batt-ons tu bat-s,    v. batt-ez il bat,    ils batt-ent.	je batt-e, etc.

CONJUGATION—*Continued.*

PRETERITE (PASSÉ DÉFINI).	PARTICIPLE PERFECT.	COMPOUND VERBS, REMARKS, ETC.
(wanting)	P.P. derived fr. Lat. supine <i>tractum</i> , etc.  trait	abstraire, <i>to abstract</i> ; distraire, <i>to divert</i> ; extraire, <i>to extract</i> ; soustraire, <i>to take</i> <i>away</i> , etc. ; braire, <i>to bray</i> (3d pers. only).
je vainqu-is, etc.	vaincu	Obs. qu, instead of c, to preserve the hard sound of c ; compare—public, fem. pub- lique. convaincre, <i>to convince</i> .
je suiv-is, etc.	suivi	poursuivre, <i>to pursue</i> , <i>to prosecute</i> . s'ensuivre, <i>to follow</i> (intrans.), used in 3d pers. only.
<i>Preterite and Part. Perf. contracted :—</i>		
je ri-s, etc.	ri	sourire, <i>to smile</i> .
je suffi-s, etc.	suffi	confire, <i>to preserve</i> ( <i>pickles</i> , etc.), P.P. confit. circoncire, <i>to circumcise</i> .
je di-s, n. di-mes, tu di-s, n. di-tes, il di-t, ils di-rent.	dit	redire, <i>to say again</i> , v. redites. contredire, <i>to contradict</i> . dédire, <i>to retract</i> . interdire, <i>to forbid</i> . médire, <i>to speak ill</i> . prédire, <i>to predict</i> . vous contredisez, etc.
je maudi-s, etc.	maudit	
je fi-s, etc.	fait	contrefaire, <i>to feign</i> ; défaire, <i>to undo</i> ; faire, <i>to do again</i> ; satisfaire, <i>to satisfy</i> ; surfaire, <i>to overcharge</i> .
je mi-s, etc.	mis	admettre, <i>to admit</i> ; commettre, <i>to commit</i> ; compromettre, <i>to compromise</i> ; émettre, <i>to</i> <i>emit</i> ; omettre, <i>to omit</i> ; permettre, <i>to per-</i> <i>mit</i> ; promettre, <i>to promise</i> ; remettre, <i>to</i> <i>deliver</i> , <i>to delay</i> ; soumettre, <i>to subdue</i> ; transmettre, <i>to transmit</i> .
je pri-s, etc.	pris	apprendre, <i>to learn</i> ; désapprendre, <i>to un-</i> <i>learn</i> ; comprendre, <i>to understand</i> ; en- treprendre, <i>to undertake</i> ; déprendre, <i>to</i> <i>part</i> ; s'prendre de, <i>to be taken with</i> ; se méprendre, <i>to be mistaken</i> ; reprendre, <i>to</i> <i>resume</i> , etc. ; surprendre, <i>to take by surprise</i> .
batti-s, etc.	battu	

## FOURTH

INFINITIVE PRESENT.	PARTICIPLE PRESENT.	INDICATIVE PRESENT.	SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.
The Lat. final stem-cons. appears in Pres. Part. and its derivatives, see § 81			
78 <b>connaî-t-re</b> <i>to know</i>	<b>connai-ss-ant</b>	je <b>connai-s</b> , n. <b>connai-ss-ons</b> tu <b>connai-s</b> , v. <b>connai-ss-ez</b> il <b>connaî-t</b> , ils <b>connai-ss-ent</b>	je <b>connaiss-e</b> , n. <b>connai-ss-ions</b> tu <b>connaiss-es</b> , v. <b>connai-ss-iez</b> il <b>connaiss-e</b> , ils <b>connai-ss-ent</b>
<b>paî-t-re</b> <i>to graze</i>	<b>pai-ss-ant</b>	je <b>pai-s</b> , n. <b>pai-ss-ons</b> tu <b>pai-s</b> , v. <b>pai-ss-ez</b> il <b>paî-t</b> , ils <b>pai-ss-ent</b> .	je <b>paiss-e</b> , etc.
<b>croî-t-re</b> <i>to grow</i>	<b>croi-ss-ant</b>	je <b>croî-s</b> , n. <b>croi-ss-ons</b> tu <b>croî-s</b> , v. <b>croi-ss-ez</b> il <b>croî-t</b> , ils <b>croi-ss-ent</b> .	je <b>croiss-e</b> , etc.
<b>naî-t-re</b> <i>to be born</i>	<b>nai-ss-ant</b>	je <b>nai-s</b> , n. <b>nai-ss-ons</b> tu <b>nai-s</b> , v. <b>nai-ss-ez</b> il <b>naî-t</b> , ils <b>nai-ss-ent</b> .	je <b>naiss-e</b> , etc.
<b>croi-re</b> <i>to believe</i>	<b>croy-ant</b>	je <b>croi-s</b> , n. <b>croy-ons</b> tu <b>croi-s</b> , v. <b>croy-ez</b> il <b>croi-t</b> , ils <b>croi-ent</b> .	je <b>croi-e</b> , n. <b>croy-ions</b> tu <b>croi-es</b> , n. <b>croy-iez</b> il <b>croi-e</b> , ils <b>croi-ent</b> .
<b>plai-re</b> (intrans.) <i>to please</i>	<b>plai-s-ant</b>	je <b>plai-s</b> , n. <b>plai-s-ons</b> tu <b>plai-s</b> , v. <b>plai-s-ez</b> il <b>plai-t</b> , ils <b>plai-s-ent</b> .	je <b>plais-e</b> , etc.
<b>tai-re</b> <i>to keep secret</i>	<b>tais-ant</b>	je <b>tai-s</b> , n. <b>tai-s-ons</b> tu <b>tai-s</b> , v. <b>tai-s-ez</b> il <b>tai-t</b> , ils <b>tai-s-ent</b> .	je <b>tais-e</b> , etc.
<b>li-re</b> <i>to read</i>	<b>li-s-ant</b>	je <b>li-s</b> , n. <b>li-s-ons</b> tu <b>li-s</b> , v. <b>li-s-ez</b> il <b>li-t</b> , ils <b>li-s-ent</b> .	je <b>lis-e</b> , etc.
<b>boi-re</b> <i>to drink</i>	<b>bu-v-ant</b>	je <b>boi-s</b> , n. <b>bu-v-ons</b> tu <b>boi-s</b> , v. <b>bu-v-ez</b> il <b>boi-t</b> , ils <b>boi-v-ent</b> .	je <b>boiv-e</b> , n. <b>bu-v-ions</b> tu <b>boiv-es</b> , v. <b>bu-v-iez</b> il <b>boiv-e</b> , ils <b>boiv-ent</b> .
<b>conclu-re</b> <i>to conclude</i>	<b>conclu-ant</b>	je <b>conclu-s</b> , n. <b>conclu-ons</b> tu <b>conclu-s</b> , v. <b>conclu-ez</b> il <b>conclu-t</b> , ils <b>conclu-ent</b> .	je <b>conclu-e</b> , etc.

CONJUGATION—*Continued.*

PRETERITE (PASSÉ DÉFINI).	PARTICIPLE PERFECT.	COMPOUND VERBS, REMARKS, ETC.
<i>Contracted :—</i>		
je connu-s, n. connu-mes tu connu-s, v. connu-tes il connu-t, ils connu-rent	connu	méconnaître, <i>to slight</i> ; reconnaître, <i>to recognise</i> ; paraître, <i>to appear</i> ; apparaître, <i>to appear, to become visible</i> ; comparaître, <i>to appear, in a court of justice</i> ; disparaître, <i>to disappear</i> . Obs. The <i>i</i> takes a circumflex before a <i>t</i> .
(wanting)	(wanting)	reparaître, <i>to feed</i> . PRET. repus, P. P. repu. se repaître de, <i>to feed on</i> .
je crû-s, etc.	crû	accroître, <i>to increase</i> ; Pret. accrûs; P. P. accrû. décroître, <i>to decrease</i> ; „, décroûs; „, décroû.
je naqui-s, etc.	né (il est né elle est née)	renaître, <i>to be born again, to revive</i> (intrans.), has no Pret. nor Part. Perf.
je cru-s, etc.	cru	accroire, is only used in Infin., after faire :— faire accroire, <i>to make believe</i> .
je plu-s, etc.	plu	déplaître, <i>to displease</i> . complaître, <i>to humour</i> .
je tu-s, etc.	tû, f. tue (il s'est tû elle s'est tue)	se taire, <i>to be silent (hushed)</i> :— je me tais, tu te tais, il se tait, etc.
je lu-s, etc.	lu	élire, <i>to elect</i> . réélire, <i>to elect again</i> . relire, <i>to read again</i> .
je bu-s, etc.	bu	boire (intransitive), <i>to blot</i> .
je conclu-s, etc.	conclu	exclure, <i>to exclude</i> .

## FOURTH

INFINITIVE PRESENT.	PARTICIPLE PRESENT.	INDICATIVE PRESENT.	SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.
The Lat. final stem-cons. appears in Pres. Part. and its derivatives, see § 81.			
9 absou-d-re to absolve	absol-v-ant	j' absou-s, n. absol-v-ons tu absou-s, v. absol-v-ez il absou-t, ils absol-v-ent.	j' absolv-e, etc.
résou-d-re to resolve, to change into	résol-v-ant	je résou-s, n. résol-v-ons tu résou-s, v. résol-v-ez il résou-t, ils résol-v-ent.	je résol-v-e, etc.
mou-d-re to grind (in a mill, etc.)	mou-l-ant	je moud-s, n. mou-l-ons tu moud-s, v. mou-l-ez il moud, ils mou-l-ent.	je mou-l-e, etc.
cou-d-re to sew	cou-s-ant	je coud-s, n. cou-s-ons tu coud-s, v. cou-s-ez il coud, ils cou-s-ent.	je cou-s-e, etc.
viv-re to live	viv-ant	je vi-s, n. viv-ons tu vi-s, v. viv-ez il vi-t, ils viv-ent.	je viv-e, etc.

## DEFECTIVE

INFINITIVE PRESENT.	PART. PRES.	INDICATIVE PRESENT.
80 brui-re, to roar, rustle	bruy-ant	je brui-s, (no plural) tu brui-s, il brui-t.
clo-re, to close Fut. je clorai	(wanting)	je clo-s, (no plural) tu clo-s, il clôt-t.
éclo-re, to blow, to be hatched	(wanting)	il éclôt-t, ils éclo-s-ent.
fri-re, to fry Fut. je frir-ai	(wanting)	je ffi-s, (no plural) tu fri-s, il fri-t.
sourd-re, to spring out Fut. il sourdra	(wanting)	il sourd, ils sourd-ent.

CONJUGATION—*Continued.*

PRETERITE (PASSÉ DÉFINI).	PARTICIPLE PERFECT.	COMPOUND VERBS, REMARKS, ETC.
(wanting)	<i>Past contracted:—</i>	
je résolu-s, etc.	absous <sup>1</sup> (f. <i>absoute</i> )	<sup>1</sup> absous, f. <i>absoute</i> , <i>absolved, acquitted.</i> absolu (adj.), <i>absolute.</i> dissoudre (P. P. dissou-s, -te), <i>to dissolve.</i>
je moulu-s, etc.	résous, <sup>1</sup> résolu <sup>2</sup>	<sup>1</sup> résous, <i>dissolved.</i> <sup>2</sup> résolu, <i>determined.</i>
je cousi-s	moulu	émoudre, <i>to whet, to sharpen.</i> réoudre, <i>to whet again.</i> remoudre, <i>to grind (grain) again.</i>
je vécu-s	cousu	découdre, <i>to unsew, to rip.</i> recoudre, <i>to sew again.</i>
	vécu	revivre (intrans.), <i>to come to life again.</i> faire revivre, <i>to revive (trans.)</i> survivre à, <i>to survive.</i>

## VERBS.

PRETERITE.	PAST PART.	REMARKS, ETC.
(wanting)	bruit	<i>Imperf. Indic. :—</i> bruyais, or bruissais, etc.
(wanting)	clos	
(wanting)	éclos	Fut. il éclora. ils écloreont.
(wanting)	frit	Wanting tenses are formed with faire :— nous faisons frire, etc.
il sourd-it	(wanting)	

# 81 RÉSUMÉ OF THE PRINCIPAL PHONETIC LAWS WHICH UNDERLIE SOME FORMS OF THE CONJUGATION OF REGULAR AND IRREGULAR VERBS.

*N.B.*—In all French words the *tonic* accent (which must not be confounded with *orthographic* accents, although they often coincide) rests

- (1) on the *last* syllable, if it is sounded :—*nous par-lons'* ; *vous de-mandez'* ;
- (2) on the *last but one* (penultimate), if the last is *mute* :—*je par-le* ;  
ils vendi'-rent.

## I.—STRENGTHENING of the Stem :

If in any form of conjugation the *inflexion* of a Verb becomes mute or disappears, the *stem*, which in that case bears the tonic accent, may require *strengthening* in pronunciation, especially if its vowel is *mute* or *short*.

This strengthening of the stem in the *spoken* language is indicated *graphically* in different ways : as,

- (a) by changing *e* mute or *é* into *è* ;
- (b) by doubling the *final stem-consonant* ,
- (c) by changing *e* mute or *é* into the *diphthong* *ie* ;
- (d) by changing *e* mute into *oi* ;

*Under this head may be classed the following case of vowel change :—*

- (e) changing *ou* into *eu* (or *ui*).

## EXAMPLES.

	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Pres. Participle.</i>	<i>Pres. Ind. and Subj.</i>	
			<i>1st and 2d Pers. Plur.</i>	<i>Singular, and 3d Pers. Plur.</i>
(a)	<i>sem-er'</i>	<i>sem-ant'</i>	<i>sem-ons', -ez', -ions', -iez'</i>	<i>sèm-e, -es, -e ; sèm-ent.</i>
	<i>céd-er'</i>	<i>céd-ant'</i>	<i>céd-ons', etc.</i>	<i>céd-e, -es, -e ; céd-ent.</i>
(b)	<i>chancel-er'</i>	<i>chancel-ant'</i>	<i>chancel-ons', etc.</i>	<i>chancell-e, -es, -e ; chancell-ent.</i>
	<i>jet-er'</i>	<i>jet-ant'</i>	<i>jet-ons', etc.</i>	<i>jett-e, es, -e ; jett-ent.</i>
(c)	<i>prend-re</i>	<i>pren-ant'</i>	<i>pren-ons', etc.</i>	<i>Subj. prenn-e, -es, e ; prenn-ent.]</i>
	<i>ven-ir'</i>	<i>ven-ant'</i>	<i>ven-ons', etc.</i>	<i>vien-s, -s, -t ; vienn-ent.</i>
(d)	<i>ten-ir'</i>	<i>ten-ant'</i>	<i>ten-ons', etc.</i>	<i>tien-s, s, -t ; tienn-ent.</i>
	<i>acquér-ir'</i>	<i>acquér-ant'</i>	<i>acquér-ons', etc.</i>	<i>acquier-s, -s, -t ; acquièr-ent.</i>
(e)	<i>dev-oir'</i>	<i>dev-ant'</i>	<i>dev-ons', etc.</i>	<i>doi-s, -s, -t ; doiv-ent.</i>
	<i>pouv-oir'</i>	<i>pouv-ant'</i>	<i>pouv-ons', etc.</i>	<i>peu-x, -x, -t (je puis) ; ils veul-ent.</i>

*Observation 1.*—U into *oi*, and *a* into *ai*, only in—

*buv-ant', buv-ons', etc. ; boi-re ; boi-s, -s, -t ; -vent, etc. ;*

*savoir :—je sai-s, -s, -t ; in avoir :—ay-ant ; j'ai ; j'aie, etc.*

*Observation 2.*—For examples like (a) and (b) see § 60.

Like (d) :—all Verbs in *-cevoir* ; as, *recevoir*, etc. see § 70.

Like (e) :—*mour-ir, je meurs, etc. ; mouv-oir, je meu-s, etc. ;*

*pouv-oir, je peu-x.* In Molière's time we still find—*trouver, je treuve.*

*Observation 3.*—Most of these phonetic laws hold good in the flexion and derivation of other parts of speech.<sup>1</sup> Compare :

(a) *complet, f. complète ; Genève, f. négresse, nègre.*

(b) *cruel, f. cruelle ; muet, f. muette.*

(c) *chenil, chien ; fébril, fièvre.*

(d) *me, moi ; régat, roi ; espérer, espoir.*

(e) *avouer, l'aveu ; douloureux, la douleur ; prouver, la preuve.*

<sup>1</sup> For the full understanding of Latin-French sound-lore we must refer the student to special treatises on 'Historical Grammar,' as—*Brachet's 'Grammaire Historique'* and '*Dict. Etymologique* ;' *Meissner's 'Philology of the French Language*,' and to *Littre's Dictionary*.

## II.—SOFTENING of the Final Stem-Consonant :—

The consonants **c** and **g** being pronounced

*hard* before **a, o, u** ; as, cap, corde, cure ; garde, gomme, guerre ;

*soft* before **e, i, y** ; as, ce, ciel, cygne ; genou, gilet, gynécée ;

it becomes necessary, in the case of verbs whose final stem-consonants **c** or **g** are pronounced *soft* throughout, to indicate by some graphic sign that they remain soft even if the inflection begins with **a, o, u** ; this is done

by changing **c** into **ç** :—perc-er ; perc-ant ; je perc-e ; n. perc-ons,  
recev-oir ; recev-ant ; je reç-ois ; n. recev-ons,

by changing **g** into **ge** :—mang-er ; mange-ant ; je mange ; n. mange-ons.

*Observation.*—Thus with other parts of speech :—le perçoir ; la mangeoire ; la gageure, etc.

## III.—HARDENING of the Final Stem-Consonant :—

If, on the other hand, the final stem-consonants **c** or **g** are pronounced *hard* throughout, it is necessary to indicate in writing that they remain hard even if the inflection begins with **e** or **i** ; this is done

by changing **c** into **qu**, but rather inconsistently (**qu** being applied where there is no need for it) :—

vainc-re ; ils vainqu-ent, but also—vainqu-ant, etc. See § 76.

by changing **g** into **gu** (but quite as inconsistently, **gu** being applied indiscriminately throughout, both before **a, o, u** and **e, i**) :—

distingu-er, distingu-ant ; je distingu-e ; n. distingu-ons, etc.

*Observation.*—Only in the case of a few adjectives derived from Participles has the superfluous **u** been dropped, whereby they may now be distinguished from the Pres. Part. proper :—

extravaguant, extravagant ; fatiguant, fatigant, etc.

The same law holds good with the inflection of Adjectives :—

public, f. publique ; long, f. longue.

IV.—VOCALISING the Final Stem-Consonant (*i.e.* changing **l, ll, ill, v** into **u**) :—

In the case of some verbs of the 2d or 3d conjugation, the stem of which ends in **-l** or **-ill**, these endings are changed into **u**, when the inflection is a *silent consonant* (**f, x, t**) :—

Pres. Indic. Sing.		Future.
faill-ir, (faill-ant) ;	je fau-x, -x, -t ; <sup>1</sup>	} il fau-d-ra.
fall-oir, — ;	— il fau-t ;	
val-oir, val-ant ;	je vau-x, -x, -t ;	il vau-d-ra.
résou-dre, resolv-ant ;	je résou-s, -s, -t ;	il résou-d-ra.
absou-d-re, absolv-ant ;	j' absou-s, -s, -t ;	il absou-d-ra.

Thus also in the *Future* of **savoir** and **avoir**, the **v = u** :—  
 { je sau-rai.  
 { j' au-rai.

<sup>1</sup> In bouill-ir, the **-ill-** coalesces with the stem-vowel **ou** :—je bou-s, -s, -t.

For this process of vocalisation, which has so extensively operated in the formation of the French language, we must again refer the student to an historical grammar ; we will only revert here to a few instances which have occurred before :—

cheval, pl. chevaux ; travail, pl. travaux ; bel and beau ; fol and fou ;  
mol and mou ; col and cou ; chevelure and cheveu, etc, etc.

(c) In verbs in **-ind-re**, **n** is changed into the liquid **-gn** (a semi-vowel), and **d** dropped, see V. (c), in the *Pres. Part.* and *Preterite*, as also in their derivatives :—

plai-**nd**-re ; plai-**gn**-ant, etc. ; je plai-**gn**-is, etc.

*Observation.*—For the transposition of Lat. **ng** into **gn**, comp. *viginti*, *vingt* ; *pugnus*, *poing* ; *stagnum*, *étang*, etc.

#### V.—DROPPING of the Final Stem-Consonant :—

If the stem of a verb of the 2d, 3d, or 4th conjugation ends in **rm**, **rv**, **rt**, **nt**, or in a double consonant, one or both of these are dropped before the *silent* consonant-inflections **-s**, **-x**, **-t** : as,

*Pres. Indic. and Imperat.*

*Sing.*

(a) dorm-ir :—dorm-ant, n. dorm-**ons**, etc. ; | dor-s, -s, -t.  
(thus— ment-ir, je men-s, etc. (see § 67).  
mett-re :—mett-ant, n. mett-**ons**, etc. ; | met-s, -s, — ; thus— battre.

(b) connai-t-re :—connai-**ss**-ant, n. connai-**ss**-**ons**, | connai-s, -s, -t ; thus—  
etc. ; | paître, etc. (see § 78).

Before **-t**, a circumflex is placed over *i* to indicate the thrown out **ss** :—  
il connaît, je connaîtrai, etc.

(c) In verbs in **-ind-re**, *Pres. Part.* **-gn-ant** (Lat. **-ng-**), the **g** is dropped before **s** and **t** :—

plain-d-re :—plai-**gn**-ant, plai-**gn**-**ons**, etc. ; | plain-s, -s, -t ; thus—  
| craindre, etc. (see § 74).

*Observation.*—In *prend-re*, on the other hand, the organic **d** (Lat. *prehendere*) is dropped in *Pres. Part.* and its derivatives :—

pren-d-re, pren-ant ; n. pren-**ons**, etc., je pren-**ais**, etc., but, prend-s, -s, —.

(d) Thus also **v** is thrown out before inflectional **-s**, **-x**, or **-t** :

suiv-re :—suiv-ant, n. suiv-**ons**, etc. ; | sui-s, -s, -t ; thus— viv-re.  
mouv-oir :—mouv-ant, n. mouv-**ons**, etc. ; | meu-s, -t, -t ;  
pouv-oir :—pouv-ant, n. pouv-**ons**, etc. ; | peu-x, -x, -t. Fut. pourr-ai.

(e) Organic **v** (fr. Lat. **b**) is thrown out before **-s**, **-t**, and before **-r** (*i.e.* *Infin.*, *Fut.*, and *Condit.*) :

écri-re :—écri-**v**-ant, n. écri-**v**-**ons**, etc. ; | écri-s, -s, -t. Fut. écri-rai, etc.  
boi-re :—bu-**v**-ant, n. bu-**v**-**ons**, etc. ; | boi-s, -s, -t. „, boi-rai, etc.

(f) Organic *s* (fr. Lat. *c*) is thrown out before -*s*, -*t*, and -*r* :

condui-re :—condui-s-ant, n. condui-s-ons, etc. ;	conduis,-s,-t. Fut.condui-rai, etc.
fai-re :—fai-s-ant, n. fai-s-ons.	fai-s, -s, t.     ,,   fe-rai, etc. (see § 77.)

VI.—INTERCALATING a Euphonic Dental Consonant (*d* or *t*) between the *Stem* and the Infinitive- (hence also Future and Conditional-) *Inflection* :—

In Verbs of the 2d, 3d, and 4th conjugation, the stem of which ends in *l* (or *l* vocalised into *u*) *n*, *s*, a euphonic *d* or *t* is intercalated before *r* to ease the hardness of pronunciation : as,

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Future and Conditional.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Future and Conditional.</i>
(a) faill-oir :—	fau-d-ra.	faill-ir	fau-d-rai.
voul-oir :—	vou-d-rai.	ten-ir	tien-d-rai.
val-oir :—	vau-d-rai.	ven-ir	vien-d-rai.

*Observation.*—Thus, Lat. *pulvis*, acc. *pulverem*, contracted *pulv'rem*, Fr. pou-d-re ; Lat. *gener*, acc. *generum*, gen'rum, Fr. gen-d-re, Gr. ἀνὴρ, ἀνδρός.

(b) <i>Pres. Part.</i>		<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Future and Condit.</i>
résolv-ant	(Lat. stem— resolv-),	résou-d-re,	résou-d-rai, etc.
absolv-ant	(   ,,   absolv-),	absou-d-re,	absou-d-rai, etc.
moul-ant	(   ,,   mol-),	mou-d-re,	mou-d-rai, etc.
cous-ant	(   ,,   consu-),	cou-d-re, <sup>1</sup>	cou-d-rai, etc.
plaign-ant <sup>2</sup>	(   ,,   plang-),	plain-d-re,	plain-d-rai, etc.

*Observation.*—In *pren-ant*, the *d* is organic (Lat. *prehend-*) :—  
pren-d-re, pren-d-rai, etc.

<sup>1</sup> Pres. Indic. Sing. :— cou-d-s, -s, —.

<sup>2</sup> Like 'plaindre,' all verbs in -indre (see § 74).

(c) connaiss-ant (Lat. stem— cognosc-),	connaî-t-re,	connaî-t-rai, etc.
naiss-ant (   ,,   nasc-),	naî-t-re,	naî-t-rai, etc.

Like these, all Verbs in -*aitre* and -*oitre* ; see § 78.

*Observation.*—Thus, être from Low Lat. *ess-ère*, *ess're* ; old Fr. *estre*.

VII.—INTERCALATING a Euphonic *i* between the *Stem* and the *Inflection* :—

If in any form of conjugation of a verb whose stem ends in *oi*, *ui*, *ai* or *ei*, the inflection begins with a *sounded vowel*, there occurs a *hiatus* ; in order to ease this gap in the voice, a euphonic *i* is intercalated between the stem and the inflection ; and this *i*, coalescing in written language with the preceding *i* of the stem, is represented by *y* (*y* being = *ii* or *ï*) ; hence—

employ-er, employ-ant, n. employ-ons, -ez, etc. ; j'emploi-e, -es, -e ; -ent.  
essuy-er, essuy-ant, n. essuy-ons, -ez, etc. ; j'essui-e, -es, -e ; -ent.

In Verbs in *ay-or*, *oy-or*, the *y* generally remains throughout on account of the different pronunciation :—

for *j'emploi-e*, and *j'essui-e*, are sounded *j'emploi*, *j'essui* ;  
whilst— *je paye*, and *je grassey-e*, „ *je pai-ie*, *je grassei-ie*.

The same rule is applied in Verbs of the 2d, 3d, and 4th conjugations :—

*fui-r* : *fuy-ant*, n. *fuy-ons*, -ez, *je fuy-ais*, etc. ; but, *je fui-s*, -s, -t ; -ent.

*voi-r* : *voy-ant*, n. *voy-ons*, -ez, *je voy-ais*, etc. ; but, *je voi-s*, -s, -t ; -ent.

*asseoi-r* : { *assey-ant*, n. *assey-ons*, -ez, etc. ;

{ *assey-ant*, n. *assey-ons*, -ez, etc. ; but, *j'assoi-s*, -s, t ; ent.

thus— *croi-re* : *cro-y-ant*, n. *cro-y-ons*, etc. ; *brai-re*, *bray-ant*, etc.

*trai-re* : *tray-ant*, n. *tray-ons*, etc. ; *brui-re*, *bruy-ant*, etc.

*Observation.* In the case of the *Imperat.* of Verbs of the 1st conj. (and of those of the 2d conj. with -e, -es, -e, in Pres. Sing.) used before *y* or *en*, the hiatus is avoided by restoring the original inflectional *s* :—*vas-y* ; *vas-en chercher*.

Thus in the Interrogative forms *a-t-il*, *parlera-t-il*, etc., the *t* (originally inflectional, cp. Lat. *habet*, etc.) reasserts itself when euphony requires.

#### VIII. SUBSTITUTING AN INFLECTIONAL *x* FOR *s* IN THE 1st AND 2d pers. sing.

Pres. Indic. after the final Stem-Vowel *u* (vocalised *i*) :—

*faill-ir*, (*je fau-x*, *tu fau-x*). *voul-oir*, *je vau-x*, *tu vau-x*.

*voul-oir*, *je veu-x*, *tu veu-x*. *pouv-oir*, *je peu-x*, *tu peu-x*.

Compare—*mal*, pl. *maux* ; *égal*, *égaux* (see *Introd.*).

#### IX.—DROPPING THE INFLECTIONAL *t* OF THE 3d pers. sing. Pres. Ind. after *dentals* and *gutturals* :—

*vend-re*, il *vend* ; but— *romp-re*, il *rompt*.

*coud-re*, il *coud* ; but— *plai-re*, il *plaî-t*, etc.

*mett-re*, il *met*, (see V. *α*).

*batt-re*, il *bat* ; *vainc-re*, il *vainc*.

## FOURTH CHAPTER.

### THE PARTICLES.

#### INTRODUCTORY :—

The four classes of Particles: *Adverbs, Interjections, Prepositions, Conjunctions*, are closely connected: for *Prepositions* are Adverbs used with Nouns:—**en** (prep.) + **vérité** = **vraiment**. Some words do duty for either:—**dessus** (prep.) la table; but, Est-il sous la table?—Non, il est **dessus** (adv.). Again, there are *Adverbs* used as *Conjunctions*:—**quand** viendrez-vous? but—Je ne sais pas **quand** il viendra; and *Prepositions* compounded with **que** become *Conjunctions*:—Je le fais **pour** vous—Je vous le dis **pour que** vous le sachiez; whilst *Interjections* are Adverbs loosely connected with the sentence.

82

#### A. ADVERBS.

Adverbs are classified according to *meaning* into—

##### (a) Adverbs of *Place* :—

Où est-il ?—Il est <b>ici</b> (là).	<i>Where is he ?—He is here (there).</i>
<i>Pronominal</i> :—Il y est.	<i>He is there (i.e. the place mentioned).</i>
Où vas-tu ?—Je vais <b>là</b> .	<i>Where are you going ?—I am going.</i>
<i>Pronominal</i> :—J'y vais.	<i>there (thither).</i>
D'où viens tu ?—Je viens <b>de là</b> .	<i>Where do you come from ?—</i>
<i>Pronominal</i> :—J'en viens.	<i>I am coming from there (thence).</i>
Je viens <b>de chez moi</b> .	<i>I am coming from home.</i>
Par où iras-tu ?—	<i>Which way shall you go ?—</i>
J'irai <b>par ici</b> ou <b>par là</b> .	<i>I shall go this way or that way.</i>
Je le croyais <b>dedans</b> , il est <b>dehors</b> .	<i>I thought he was in, he is out.</i>
Il a mis son domestique <b>dehors</b> .	<i>He has turned his servant out of doors.</i>
Votre maison me plaît mieux <b>en dedans</b> qu'en <b>dehors</b> .	<i>Your house pleases me better inside than outside.</i>
Voyez sur la table, cherchez <b>dessus</b> et <b>dessous</b> .	<i>Look on the table, search on it and below it.</i>
Passez <b>par-dessous</b> .	<i>Pass underneath.</i>
Ceux de l'âge de deux ans et <b>au-dessous</b> .	<i>Those of two years and under.</i>
Il y a quelque piège <b>là-dessous</b> .	<i>There is some snare underneath.</i>
Il n'est ni <b>dessus</b> ni <b>dessous</b> .	<i>It is neither on it nor below it.</i>
Il a un habit et un manteau <b>par-dessus</b> .	<i>He has a coat and a cloak over it.</i>
<b>Au-dessus</b> , étaient écrits ces mots :	<i>Above, the following words were written :</i>
Pourquoi toujours revenir <b>là-dessus</b> ?	<i>Why always return to that subject ?</i>
Comme nous l'avons dit <b>ci-dessus</b> .	<i>As we have mentioned above.</i>

Est-il derrière ou devant ?—

Il est bien loin.

*Is he before or behind?—*

*He is a long way off.*

(b) Adverbs of *Time*:—

Est il déjà arrivé ?—

Non, il n'est pas encore arrivé.

Il arrivera demain ou après-demain.

*Has he already arrived?—*

*No, he has not.*

*He will arrive to-morrow or the day after to-morrow.*

Où étiez-vous donc hier (au) soir ?—

Et avant-hier ?—

C'est aujourd'hui la foire.

Autrefois il y faisait bien beau, mais maintenant je ne m'y plais plus.

*Where were you then last night?—*

*And the day before yesterday?*

*To-day is the fair.*

*Formerly it was very pleasant there, but now I don't like the place.*

(c) Adverbs of *Quantity*, see § 9 :—

Combien de laine ? *how much wool?*

Trop de laine, *too much wool.*

Beaucoup d'argent, *much money.*

Peu d'argent, *little money.*

Plus de fromage, *more cheese.*

Moins de fromage, *less cheese.*

Autant d'or, *as much gold.*

Pas tant d'or, *not so much gold.*

Combien de verres ? *how many glasses?*

Trop de verres, *too many glasses.*

Beaucoup d'amis, *many friends.*

Peu d'amis, *few friends.*

Plus de cerises, *more cherries.*

Moins de cerises, *fewer cherries.*

Autant de corbeilles, *as many baskets.*

Pas tant de corbeilles, *not so many baskets.*

Pas de richesse, *no wealth.*

Point de richesse, *no wealth at all.*

(d) Adverbs of *Manner or Quality*:—

Comment vous portez-vous ?—

Je me porte très bien, comme vous voyez.

J'en suis fort aise.

Il est venu tout exprès, plutôt que de vous faire attendre.

Il aurait dû venir plus tôt.

Il est tant soit peu égoïste.

Il a obtenu le premier prix !—Ah, vraiment ?

*How do you do?—*

*I am very well, as you see.*

*I am very glad of it.*

*He has come on purpose, rather than keep you waiting.*

*He ought to have come sooner.*

*He is rather selfish.*

*He has won the first prize !—Has he ?*

83

(e) Adverbs of *Manner*, derived regularly from *Adjectives*:—

Adverbs are formed by—

(1) adding *-ment* to *Adjectives* ending in a vowel: as,

Cette plante est très rare.

On la trouve très rarement.

Sa conduite a été sage.

Il s'est conduit sagement.

*This plant is very rare.*

*One very rarely finds it.*

*His conduct has been good.*

*He has behaved well.*

- (2) Adding **-ment** to the *feminine* form of Adjectives ending in a *consonant*: as,

Il a le parler <b>franc</b> , la parole <b>franche</b> .	<i>His words are candid (He is plain</i>
Il parle très <b>franchement</b> .	<i>He speaks candidly. (spoken.</i>
Un hazard <b>heureux</b> .	} <i>A fortunate chance.</i>
Une chance <b>heureuse</b> .	
<b>Heureusement</b> il rencontra son ami.	<i>Fortunately he met his friend.</i>

- (3) Changing into **-mment** the ending **-nt** of Adjectives in **-ant**, or **-ent**<sup>1</sup> (*i.e.* assimilating the dentals **-nt** to the labial **m**): as,

Péril <b>instant</b> .	<i>Imminent (urgent) peril.</i>
Prier <b>instamment</b> .	<i>To beseech urgently.</i>
Le renard est <b>prudent</b> .	<i>The fox is cautious.</i>
Il s'y prend <b>prudemment</b> .	<i>He sets about it cautiously.</i>

Except:—*lentement, slowly*; *présentement, presently*; *véhémentement, vehemently*, which do not change **-nt** into **m**.

<sup>1</sup> For the historical origin of this formation of Adverbs by means of **-ment**, see *Introd.*

ANOMALIES.—1. Aveuglément, *blindly*; commodément, *comfortably*; conformément, *conformably*; énormément, *enormously*; immensément, *immensely*; opiniâtrément, *obstinately*; uniformément, *uniformly*.

The above Adverbs change the *e* mute of the Adjective into *é*.

2. Communément, *commonly*; confusément, *confusedly*; expressément, *expressly*; importunément, *importunately*; obscurément, *obscurely*; précisément, *precisely*; profondément, *profoundly*; profusément, *profusely*.

The above change the feminine ending *e* mute of the Adjective (*commune, confuse, etc.*) into *é*.

3. Assidûment, *assiduously*; crûment, *crudely*; dûment, *duly*; gaîment, *gaily*.

The above take a *circumflex* on the final vowel of the Adjective.

Observation 1.—Adj. **gentil**, Adv. = **gentiment**;  
bref and brief, Adv. **brîèvement**.

2.—**vite** is both Adj. and Adv.; **vitement** is only used in familiar language.

3.—Adjectives used *adverbially* without changing:—

parler bas, haut.	<i>to speak low, aloud.</i>
tenir bon; sentir bon, mauvais.	<i>to hold out; to smell, nice, bad.</i>
voir (parler) clair.	<i>to see clearly; to speak plainly.</i>
acheter (vendre, coûter) cher.	<i>to buy (sell) dear; to cost a great deal.</i>
couper court, demeurer court.	<i>to cut short; to stick fast.</i>
marcher droit; se tenir droit.	<i>to go ahead; to stand straight.</i>
faire (venir, etc.) <b>expres</b> .	<i>to do (to come, etc.) on purpose.</i>
chanter faux, juste.	<i>to sing out of tune; in tune.</i>
tenir ferme; frapper ferme.	<i>to hold firm; to hit hard.</i>
deviner (frapper) juste.	<i>to guess (to hit) right.</i>
raisonner (viser) juste.	<i>to reason (to aim) well.</i>

*Positive.*

{ *Adj.* Son écriture est bonne.  
*His writing is good.*  
*Adv.* Elle écrit bien.  
*She writes well.*

{ *Adj.* Sa prononciation est mauvaise.  
*His pronunciation is bad.*  
*Adv.* Il prononce mal.  
*He pronounces badly.*

{ *Adj.* Le remède est mauvais.  
*The remedy is bad.*  
*Adv.* Ils se conduisent mal.  
*They behave badly.*

{ *Adj.* Cette somme est petite.  
*This sum is small.*  
*Adv.* Il parle peu.  
*He speaks but little.*

*Adv.* Ce cheval est petit.  
*This horse is small.*

*Adv.* Il travaille beaucoup.  
*He works much (hard).*

J'ai beaucoup d'argent.  
*I have much money.*

*Comparative.*

La vôtre est meilleure.  
*Yours is better.*  
 Vous écrivez mieux.  
*You write better.*

La vôtre est plus mauvaise.  
*Yours is worse.*  
 Il prononce plus mal.  
*He pronounces worse.*

Il est pire que le mal.  
*It is worse than the disease.*  
 Ils sont pis que jamais ensemble.  
*They are on worse terms than ever.*

Elle est moindre que l'autre.  
*It is less than the other.*  
 Il parle moins que vous.  
*He speaks less than you.*

Il est plus petit que le mien.  
*It is smaller than mine.*

Elle travaille plus que personne.  
*She works harder than anybody.*

{ Il en a plus que moi.  
*He has more than I.*  
 Il en a davantage.  
*He has more.*

*Superlative.*

Celle-là est la meilleure.  
*That is the best.*  
 Charles écrit le mieux.  
*Charles writes best.*

La sienne est la plus mauvaise.  
*His is the worst.*  
 Elle prononce le plus mal.  
*She pronounces worst.*

C'est le pire de tous.  
*It is worst of all.*

C'est la moindre de toutes.  
*It is the least of all.*  
 Il parle le moins de tous.  
*He speaks least of all.*

C'est le plus petit.  
*It is the smallest.*

C'est lui qui travaille le plus.  
*It is he who works the most.*

C'est lui qui en a le plus.  
*He has the most.*

## 85 Adverbs of Affirmation and Negation:—

(a) Used *Disjunctively*, i.e. independently of a Verb:—

Es-tu malade?—Oui (je crois **que** oui). *Are you ill?—Yes (I think so).*

Tu n'es pas malade, n'est-ce pas?— *You are not ill, are you?—*

Si (je te dis **que** si).<sup>1</sup> *Yes, I am (I tell you I am).*

Vous payera-t-il?— *Will he pay you?—*

Non (je crois **que** non). *No (I think not).*

Es-tu prêt?—Point du tout. *Are you ready?—Not at all.*

J'ai faim; et toi?—Pas moi. *I am hungry; are you?—Not I.*

(β) Used *Conjunctively*, i.e. qualifying a Verb expressed or understood, see § 58-59, and Syntax, § 152-155.

<sup>1</sup> In answer to a negative question.

## 86

### B. INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections are Adverbial Phrases expressing—

(a) *Surprise*:— **ah! oh! ô!; tiens! quoi! vraiment!**

**par exemple! lo! what! indeed!**

(b) *Joy, approval, encouragement*:— { **ah! bon!; bien! à la bonne heure! bravo!**  
*well done! allons! courage! en avant! come!*  
*cheer up! forwards!*

(c) *Grief, etc.*:— **hélas! alas! ah! aie! ouf!;**

**ciel! miséricorde! O heavens! have mercy!**

(d) *Help*:— **au feu! au secours! au voleur! fire! help! stop thief!**

(e) *Disgust*:— **fi! fi donc! fie! for shame!**

(f) *Silence*:— **st! chut! silence! paix! be quiet! silence! hush!**

(g) *Doubt, indifference, etc.*:— { **bah! zest! fiddlestick!**

(h) *Warning*:— **gare! mind! look out! take care!**

*Observation.*—The French word **encore!**, used by the English, is expressed in French by the Latin word **bis!**

## 87

### C. PREPOSITIONS.

**de**: (for a systematic treatment of **de** as the sign of the Lat. Gen. and Abl. cases, and answering to the Lat. prep. **de**, see Synt. § 135-137).

(a) answering to *from*: i.e. denoting *origin, starting point, difference, etc.*

(1) after *Nouns*; (2) *Adjectives* or *Verbs*; and (3) *Verbs*: as,

Une lettre **de** son père. *A letter from his father.*

Du milieu **de** l'assemblée. *From the midst of the assembly.*

Ceci est différent **de** cela. *This is different from that.*

Loin **de** lui agréer. *Far from suiting him.*

D'où venez-vous? **De** chez moi. *Where do you come from? From my house.*

Le français dérive du Latin. *French is derived from Latin.*

(b) answering to the English *of*, or to —'s, sign of the *Possessive Case* (see § 5-6).

(1) After *Nouns*; (2) *Adjectives* or *Adverbs*; and (3) *Verbs*: as,  
L'amour d'une mère est inaltérable *A mother's love is unalterable.*  
(Subj. Gen.)

L'amour du gain est une passion *Greed of gain is a passion.*  
(Obj. Gen.)

Le titre de roi (Descript. Gen.) *The title of king.*

Un verre de vin (Partitive Gen.) *A glass of wine.*

La science du bien et du mal (Object. Gen.) *The knowledge of good and evil.*

Digne de confiance. *Worthy of confidence.*

Désireux de plaire. *Desirous of pleasing.*

Indépendamment de . . . *Independently of . . .*

Parler de la guerre. *To speak of the war.*

Se repentir de sa faute. *To repent of one's fault.*

(c) answering to an English *Adjective* (see § 120-121):

Les vins de France (Gen. of quality). *French wines.*

La porte du jardin. *The garden gate.*

Une montre d'or. *A gold watch.*

(d) answering to the English *some* or *any*, expressed or understood (see § 8).

Donnez-moi du pain (de bon pain). *Give me some bread (good bread).*

Avez-vous de la chance? *Have you any chance?*

Non, je n'ai pas de chance. *No, I have not any (no) chance.*

(e) answering to the English *for*, after (1) *Nouns*, (2) *Adjectives*, or (3) *Verbs*: as,

Le respect des autels (Object. Gen.) *Respect for altars.*

Il est reconnaissant de vos bontés. *He is grateful for your kindness.*

Je réponds de sa probité. *I answer for his honesty.*

Sauter de joie. *To jump for joy.*

In Adv. Phrases: de crainte de, *for fear of*; de longtemps, *for a long time (past)*.

(f) answering to the English *with*, especially after *Adjectives* and *Verbs* expressing an *affection of the mind*, or *fulness* and its contraries (see § 136):

Il est ivre de bonheur. *He is intoxicated with happiness.*

Les rivières sont remplies de poisson. *The rivers are filled with fish.*

Il frémit de rage. *He trembled with rage.*

On le couvrit de honte. *They covered him with shame.*

(g) answering to the English *by*, especially after *Verbs* denoting *mental action* in the *Passive Voice*; as,

Il est honoré de ses concitoyens. *He is honoured by his citizens.*

Il est plus grand de trois pouces. *He is taller by three inches.*

In Adv. Phrases: de jour, de nuit, de beaucoup; *by day, by night, by far.*

(h) answering to the English *on* (or *off*), especially after Verbs of *playing*, *feeding*; as,

Jouer **de** la harpe. *To play on the harp.*

Vivre **de** légumes. *To live on vegetables.*

Etre **de** service. *To be on duty.*

In Adv. Phrases: **de** ce côté, *on this side*; **de** ma part, *on my part*.

In Titles: De l'usure, *on usury*.

(i) answering to the English *in* :—

L'homme le plus savant **de** la ville. *The most learned man in the town.*

Sain **de** corps et d'esprit. *Sound in body and mind.*

In Adv. Phrases: De cette manière, *in this manner*; d'un air maussade, *sulkily*; jamais de ma vie, *never in my life*.

(j) answering to the English *to* :—

Médecin **du** roi. *Physician to the king.*

La route **de** Versailles. *The way to Versailles.*

(k) answering to the English *about* :—

De quoi s'agit-il? *What is the question about?*

Savez-vous **de** quoi on parle? *Do you know what they are talking about?*

**88** à : (for a systematic treatment of *à* as the sign of the Dative Case, and answering to the Lat. *ab* and *ad*, see Synt. § 129).

(a) answering to the English *to* (Indir. Object. see § 130, a):—

Il donne son bien **aux** pauvres. *He gives all he has to the poor.*

Avez-vous répondu **à** sa lettre? *Have you replied to his letter?*

(b) answering to the English *to*, *at*, *in* (compl. of Intrans. Verbs and Adjectives, § 134):

Ils vont **à** Paris. *They are going to Paris.*

Le palais appartient **au** roi. *The palace belongs to the king.*

La copie est conforme **à** l'original. *The copy is conformable to the original.*

Il est (va) **à** l'école. *He is in (is going to) school.*

La vache est **à** l'écurie. *The cow is in the stable.*

Jouer **aux** cartes. *To play at cards.*

(c) answering to the English *from* after Verbs of *taking*, *asking*, etc. (see § 130, b):—

On a pris la montre **à** cet homme. *They have taken the man's watch from him.*

(d) answering to the English *for*, to denote *duty*, *office*, etc. :—

C'est **à** lui d'agir. *It is for him to act.*

(e) answering to other Prepositions in numerous adverbial Phrases :—

**à** genoux; **à** cheval; **à** pied. *on the knees; on horseback; on foot.*

**à** la mode; **à** la française. *in fashion; in the French fashion.*

**à** sa démarche; **au** poids. *by his gait; by weight.*

**à** midi; **à** ces mots. *at noon; at these words.*

(f) before Nouns used adjectively to qualify other Nouns (see § 16, b, 3):—

La boîte **aux** lettres. *The letter-box.*

89 Dans and en (*in, inside, at*), compared :—

**Dans** in a *determinate* sense,  
(*with a determinate adj.*) :—

**En** in a *general* sense,  
(*without a determinate adj.*) :—

(a) With regard to *place*, answering to the question *where ?* as,

**Dans la France méridionale.**

*In Southern France.*

**Dans notre voyage.**

*In (during) our journey.*

**Dans la guerre de Crimée.**

*In the Crimean war.*

**Dans la ville de Paris.**

*Inside the city of Paris.*

**Dans la prison de St. Mazas.**

*In the prison of St. Mazas.*

**Dans cette bataille il fut tué.**

*In this battle he was killed.*

**Il est dans votre secret.**

*He is in your secret.*

**Dans sa fureur il ne ménagea rien.**

*In his fury he spared nobody.*

**Il demeure en France.**

*He lives in France.*

**Ils sont en voyage.**

*They are on a journey.*

**Ces tribus sont toujours en guerre.**

*These tribes are always at war.*

**Je crois que nous dînerons en ville.**

*I think we shall dine out.*

**Il passa toute sa vie en prison.**

*He passed nearly all his life in prison.*

**Des troupes rangées en bataille.**

*Troops drawn up in battle array.*

**Dites-le-lui en secret.**

*Tell it him in secret.*

**Le taureau harcelé entra en fureur.**

*The goaded bull became furious.*

(b) With regard to *time*, answering to the question *when ? how long ?* as,

**Cela arriva dans la même année.**

*That happened in the same year.*

**Je finirai ce travail dans quinze jours.**

*I shall finish this work within a fortnight.*

**Dans huit jours.** *In a week.*

**Victor Hugo est né en 1802.**

*Victor Hugo was born in 1802.*

**Je finirai ce travail en quinze jours.**

*It will take me a fortnight to complete this work.* [week.]

**D'aujourd'hui en huit jours.** *To-day*

**Dans, in, inside, within :—**

**Le parc du Régent est dans Londres**  
(*dans la ville de L.*).

*Regent's Park is inside London.*

**Dans la maison il y a une cuisine.**

*In the house there is a kitchen.*

**Il y a cent lits dans cet hôpital.**

*There are 100 beds in this hospital.*

**A, at, in, present at :—**

**Mon ami est-il à Londres ?—Il n'est plus à la ville, il est à la campagne.**

*Is my friend in L.?—He is no longer in town, he is in the country.*

**Est-il à la maison ?**

*Is he at home ?*

**Le poète Gilbert mourut à l'hôpital.**

*The poet Gilbert died in a hospital.*

*The other Prepositions compared :—*

90 Avant, before, with regard to time  
or order :—

**Je me lève avant six heures.**

*I rise before six o'clock.*

**Je le désire avant tout.**

*I desire it before everything.*

**Devant, before, with regard to place :—**

**La fontaine est devant l'hôtel.**

*The fountain is in front of the hotel.*

**Allez droit devant vous.**

*Go straight before you.*

**Après, after (time or order) :—**

Il arriva **après** nous.

*He arrived after us.*

**Entre, between, among :—**

Soit dit **entre** nous.

*Be it said between ourselves.*

Ces animaux s'**entre**-déchirent.

*These animals devour each other.*

**Sur, on, upon, over, from  
(towards) :—**

Le château est bâti **sur** le rocher.

*The castle is built on the rock.*

L'armée est **sur** pied.

*The army is on foot.*

L'aigle planait **sur** la vallée.

*The eagle was hovering over the valley.*

Cet appartement donne **sur** le jardin.

*This suite of rooms looks upon the garden.*

Ne jugez pas **sur** les apparences.

*Don't judge from appearances.*

**Sous, under (in, before) :—**

Il s'assit **sous** un arbre.

*He sat down under a tree.*

**Sous** le règne de Henri IV.

*In the reign of Henry IV.*

**Sous** peine de la vie.

*On pain of death (lit. of life).*

Cela s'est passé **sous** nos yeux.

*That happened before our eyes.*

**Sous** condition.

*On condition.*

**Vers, towards, about :—**

Tournez-vous **vers** moi.

*Turn towards me.*

**Vers** la fin du siècle dernier.

*Towards the end of last century.*

Elles arrivent **vers** le printemps.

*They arrive towards spring.*

**Vers** les quatre heures.

*About four o'clock.*

**Derrière, behind (place) :—**

L'écurie est **derrière** la maison.

*The stable is behind the house.*

**Parmi, among, in the midst of :—**

Il l'a trouvé **parmi** mes papiers.

*I found it among my papers.*

L'ivraie est mêlée **parmi** le bon grain.

*The tares are mixed with the wheat.*

**Au-dessus de, above, beyond,  
upwards of :—**

C'est **au-dessus de** nos forces.

*It is above our strength.*

Les élèves de douze ans et **au-dessus**.

*The pupils of 12 years and upwards.*

**Par-dessus, over :—**

Mettez cela **par-dessus**.

*Put that over it.*

**De-dessus, from the top of :—**

Enlevez la poussière **de-dessus** ces livres.

*Remove the dust from these books.*

**Au-dessous (de), dessous, below,  
beneath, under :—**

J'ai cherché dessus et dessous le lit.

*I looked on the bed and under it.*

**Au-dessous de** la taille moyenne.

*Undersized.*

Cet emploi est **au-dessous de** lui.

*This office is beneath him.*

**Par-dessous, under, underneath :—**

Un cilice **par-dessous** les vêtements.

*A hair-shirt under the garments.*

**Envers, towards (as regards feeling) :—**

Il est charitable **envers** les pauvres.

*He is charitable to the poor.*

**Contre, against, contrary to :—**

Marchons **contre** l'ennemi.

*Let us march against the enemy.*

Cela est **contre** son habitude.

*That is contrary to his habit.*

**Près, proche (de), near, close :—**  
**Près du chemin de fer.**  
*Near the railway.*  
**Il demeure à Passy, près Paris.**  
*He lives in Passy, near Paris.*  
**Il est bien près de midi.**  
*It is very near twelve o'clock.*  
**Il est allé loger proche le (proche du) palais.**  
*He has taken up his abode near the palace.*

**Depuis, since, from (time and place) :—**  
**Depuis hier.** *Since yesterday.*  
**Depuis les Vosges jusqu'à l'Océan.**  
*From the Vosges as far as the Ocean.*

**Par, by, through, out of :—**  
**Je passerai par Calais.**  
*I shall pass through Calais.*  
**Par où ?—Par ici.**  
*Which way ?—This way.*  
**Par bonheur le train s'arrêta à temps.**  
*Fortunately the train stopped in time.*  
**Où allez-vous par cette pluie-là ?**  
*Where are you going in this rain ?*  
**Il a fait cela par crainte.**  
*He did that through fear.*  
**Deux fois par semaine.** *Twice a week.*

**Voici, here is, here are :—**  
**Voici le percepteur (les percepteurs).**  
*Here is the tax collector (here are the tax collectors).*  
**Nous voici quatre.**  
*Now there are four of us.*  
**Je vous apporte l'ordre que voici.**  
*I bring you this order here.*  
**Me voici ; que voulez-vous ?**  
*Here I am ; what do you want ?*  
**Nous voici à la fin de l'hiver.**  
*Now we are at the end of winter.*  
**Voici venir le printemps.**  
*Now the spring is coming.*  
**Voici de quoi se composait son bagage.**  
*This is what his luggage consisted of.*

**Auprès de, near, with, to :—**  
**La rivière passe auprès de cette ville.**  
*The river flows near that town.*  
**Il a libre accès auprès du prince.**  
*He has free access to the prince.*  
**Votre mal n'est rien auprès du sien.**  
*Your complaint is nothing to his.*  
**Il m'a noirci auprès du ministre.**  
*He has traduced me in the opinion of the minister.*

**Dès, from = to start from :—**  
**Dès aujourd'hui.** *From to-day.*  
**Dès lors.** *From that time.*  
**Dès longtemps.** *Long ago.*  
**Dès ce soir.** *This very evening.*

**A travers ; au travers de, across, athwart, through :—**  
**Ils allèrent à travers (les) champs.**  
*They went through the fields.*  
**Il se fit jour au travers des ennemis.**  
*He cut his way through the enemies.*  
**Au travers des vitres.**  
*Through the window-panes.*  
**Je vois clair au travers de tout cela.**  
*I can see through all that.*

**Voilà, there is, there are :—**  
**Voilà l'homme que vous demandez.**  
*There is the man you want.*  
**Ah, vous voilà déjà de retour !**  
*Oh, here you are again !*  
**Les beaux sentiments que voilà !**  
*Fine sentiments these are !*  
**Vous voulez de l'argent ; en voilà.**  
*You want money ; there is some.*  
**Le voilà qui arrive.**  
*There he comes.*  
**Voilà qu'on sonne !**  
*There ! some one is ringing.*  
**Du pain et du lait, voilà son déjeuner de tous les jours.**  
*Bread and milk, that is his breakfast every day.*

91

## D. CONJUNCTIONS.

I.—*Co-ordinative, i.e.* Conjunctions which link *Words* or *Co-ordinate (Independent)* Clauses :—

Et le riche et le pauvre.

*Both the rich and poor.*

Il n'est ni prodigue ni avare.

*He is neither prodigal nor avaricious.*

Personne ne peut-il voir ni entendre ?

*Cannot anybody either see or hear ?*

Ni lui ni son frère ne sont coupables.

*Neither he nor his brother is guilty.*

Sans manger ni boire.

*Without either eating or drinking.*

Ainsi que le soleil dissipe les nuages,  
ainsi la vérité détruit le mensonge.

*Just as the sun dispels the clouds,  
thus truth defeats falsehood.*

Non seulement il n'est pas savant,  
mais il est très ignorant.

*Not only is he not learned,  
but he is very ignorant.*

Tant en paix qu'en guerre.

*Both in peace and war.*

On disait qu'il ne viendrait pas,  
cependant le voici.

*It was said he was not coming,  
yet here he is.*

Il est encore très jeune,  
et néanmoins il est fort sage.

*He is still very young,  
and nevertheless he is very well  
behaved.*

Tantôt il veut une chose,  
tantôt il en veut une autre.

*Sometimes he wants one thing,  
another time he wants something else.*

Plus la haine est injuste, plus elle  
est cruelle.

*The more unjust hate is, the more  
cruel it is.*

92

II.—*Subordinative, i.e.* Conjunctions which link *Subordinate (Dependent)* Clauses with the *Principal Sentence* :—

(a) With the following Verb in the *Indicative* or *Conditional* ; as,

Je ne sais pas si elle viendra.

*I do not know whether she will come.*

Je ne savais pas si elle viendrait.

*I did not know whether she would come.*

Si elle arrive pendant mon absence.

*If she arrives during my absence.*

Il y a deux ans que (=depuis que)  
je ne suis venu en France.

*I have not been to France for two years.*

Quand (même) je le voudrais, je ne le  
pourrais pas. Or—

*Though (even if) I would, I could  
not do it.*

Je le voudrais que je ne le pourrais pas.

Quand il viendra, dites-lui . . .

*When he comes, tell him . . .*

Lorsque je serai mieux informé.

*When I am better informed.*

Il avait le secret de plaire,  
lors même qu'il contredisait.

*He had the secret of pleasing,  
even when he contradicted.*

A peine\* fûmes-nous arrivés, que...

*Hardly had we arrived, when . . .*

Il est prodigue, aussi\* est-il  
criblé de dettes.

*He is prodigal, consequently he is  
over head and ears in debt.*

Peut-être\* ne viendra-t-il pas.

*Perhaps he won't come.*

S'il n'a pas réussi, toujours\*  
a-t-il fait son devoir.

*Though he has not succeeded, at any rate  
he has done his duty.*

S'il n'est pas riche, du moins\*  
est-il à son aise.

*Though he be not rich, at least  
he is in easy circumstances.*

\* After the above Adverbial Conjunctions, as also after *encore, even then; aussi bien, à plus forte raison, with still more reason; tout au plus, at most*,—the Verb, as a rule, is placed before the Subject.

Les hommes se jugent mal, parce qu'ils se méconnaissent.	<i>Men misjudge each other, because they do not know each other.</i>
Puisque vous le voulez, faites-le donc!	<i>Since you wish it, do it then.</i>
Je ferai comme vous dites.	<i>I shall do as you say.</i>
Il faut battre le fer pendant qu' (tandis qu') il est chaud.	<i>One must strike the iron while it is hot.</i>
J'en userai avec lui selon qu'il en usera avec moi.	<i>I shall treat him according as he treats me.</i>
Il s'amuse, tandis que nous travail- lons.	<i>He amuses himself whilst we on the contrary are working.</i>
Il vous ressemble fort, si ce n'est qu' il est plus petit.	<i>He bears a strong likeness to you, only he is shorter.</i>
Attendu que mes ordres s'y opposent.	<i>Inasmuch as it is contrary to my in- structions.</i>
Restez ici tant que vous voudrez.	<i>Stay here as long as you like.</i>

(b) With the following Verb in the *Subjunctive*, see § 164-5: as,

Je le dis, afin que vous le sachiez.	<i>I say it in order that you may know it.</i>
Approchez que (= afin que) je vous parle.	<i>Come nearer, in order that I may speak to you.</i>
On le fera, quoique vous en disiez.	<i>It shall be done, whatever you may say.</i>
Je vous le dis, quoique vous le sachiez déjà.	<i>I tell it to you, though you know it already.</i>
Bien qu'il soit pauvre, il est content.	<i>Although he is poor he is content.</i>
Quoi que ce soit qu'elle dise.	<i>Whatever she may say.</i>
En cas qu'elle soit malade.	<i>In case she should be ill.</i>
Encore qu'il soit jeune.	<i>Young though he be.</i>
Pourvu que vous le fassiez.	<i>Provided you do it.</i>
Sans qu'on le sût jamais.	<i>Without it ever being known.</i>
Que sert d'amasser à moins qu'on ne jouisse?	<i>What is the good of hoarding unless one enjoys one's fortune?</i>
Pour peu que vous m'aimiez.	<i>If you love me ever so little.</i>
Où que vous soyez, j'irai vous rejoindre.	<i>Wherever you be, I shall join you.</i>
Il mourut avant que la révolution éclatât.	<i>He died before the Revolution broke out.</i>
Cachez-vous, de crainte qu'il ne vous trouve.	<i>Hide yourself lest he should find you.</i>
Malgré qu'il en ait.	<i>In spite of him.</i>
Cachez-lui votre dessein, de peur (de crainte) qu'il ne le traverse.	<i>Conceal your design from him, lest he should thwart it.</i>
Amuse-toi en attendant qu'il vienne.	<i>Amuse yourself until he comes.</i>

(c) With the Verb in the *Indicative* to denote an accomplished fact, or in the *Subjunctive* to denote a contingency : as,

Que cela soit, je n'en disconviens pas.	<i>That this is so I do not dispute.</i>
S'il est malade et qu'il soit empêché.*	<i>If he is ill and prevented.</i>
Il a travaillé de façon que son maître est satisfait de lui.	<i>He worked so that his master is satisfied with him.</i>
Qu'il travaille de façon que son maître soit satisfait de lui.	<i>Let him work so that his master may be satisfied with him.</i>
Vous écrivez de manière qu'on ne peut déchiffrer votre écriture.	<i>You write so that one cannot decipher your writing.</i>
Ecrivez donc de manière qu'on puisse le lire.	<i>Do write so that one may read it.</i>

\* *que* standing for *si* requires the verb in the *Subjunctive*, though *si* itself does not.

(d) With the Verb in the *Infinitive* : as,

Je le fais afin de vous obliger.	<i>I do it to oblige you.</i>
Il est assez riche pour se passer cette fantaisie.	<i>He is rich enough to gratify this fancy.</i>
Réfléchissez toujours avant d'agir.	<i>Always reflect before acting.</i>
A moins d'être fou, il n'est pas possible de raisonner ainsi.	<i>It is not possible to argue thus, unless one be a fool.</i>
Agissez, au lieu de jouer.	<i>Act instead of playing.</i>
Après avoir déposé la couronne.	<i>After having resigned the crown.</i>
Sans coup fêrir.	<i>Without striking a blow.</i>
Tais-toi, de crainte de l'offenser	<i>Do be silent lest you should offend him.</i>
Loin de me remercier, il m'a dit des injures.	<i>So far from thanking me he insulted me.</i>
Faute d'avoir été prévenu à temps.	<i>For want of having been informed in time.</i>
Je mourrai plutôt que de le souffrir.	<i>I will rather die than submit to it.</i>
Je le ferai de manière à le satisfaire.	<i>I shall do it so as to satisfy him.</i>



## APPENDICES.

### I.—REMARKS ON PRONUNCIATION.

*N.B.*—Any attempt to represent *French sounds* by *English letters* must necessarily prove futile and misleading. The few English equivalents here given must be distinctly understood to be merely *approximate*. Our aim is to supply carefully classified material, rather than Rules.

#### I.—SIMPLE VOWEL SOUNDS.

1. **a** is sounded *long* ( = English *a* in *far*, rather) :—
  - (a) if it has a circumflex :—château, gâteau, blâmer, etc.  
longer still if the last syllable is mute :—âme, âne, grâce, ils blâment.
  - (b) before *-r*, *-re* :—char, phare, cigare.
  - (c) in the endings :—*las*, *passer*, *passion*, *cadre*, *mare*, *barre*, *tard*, *l'art*,  
*fable*, *base*, *gaze*, *rage*.  
[Short in—*étable*, *table* ; *ailleurs*, *caillou* ; *chasse*, *masse*, *terrasse* ; and  
in the pret.-inflection, as : *parlas*.]
2. **a** is sounded *short* :—
 

if it has no circumflex (see however 1, *b*, *c*), especially when *initial* or  
*final* :—*ami*, *animal*, *arabe*, *balai*, *arbre*, *la*, *là* ; *spectacle*, *mal*, *pape*.  
[*Long* in—*miracle*, *oracle*, *espace*, *flamme*, *Jacques*.]

*Observation 1.*—A word may be affected in its quantity by its position :—  
un brève homme ; but— un homme brève.

*Observation 2.*—**a** is *silent* in— *août*, *la Saône*, *le taon*.
3. **e atonic** has a *dull* sound (*e sourd*) :—
  - (a) in monosyllables :—*je*, *me*, *te*, *le*, *se*, *ne*, *que*, etc.
  - (b) in the first or inner syllables of words of two or more syllables :—  
*mener*, *tenir*, *retour*, *second*, *petit*, etc.  
except in the cases mentioned below in 4 (a) ;
  - (c) in the suffixes—*noble*, *arbre*, *boucle*, *sucré*, *souffle*, *soufre*, *aveugle*,  
*maigre*, *peuple*, *propre*, *notre*, *pauvre*.
4. **e atonic** is *silent* :—
  - (a) in the inner syllable of a word, after a cons. which it requires no effort  
to pronounce with the first consonant of the next syllable :—  
thus— *acheter* = *ach'ter* ; *jouera* = *jou'rai* ; *gaieté* (*gaité*) = *gaité*.  
but audible in— *revenir*, *tirera*, because *r* before *v*, *v* before *n*, and *r*  
before *r*, are more easily pronounced with *e sourd*.

(b) in endings not mentioned above, in 3 (c), especially after another vowel :—*je loue ; amie ; commande.*

*Observation.*—It must be distinctly understood, however, that though final *e* is mute, it makes itself felt—

on the preceding *vowel*, by making it longer :—*amī, amie.*

on the preceding *consonant*, either by making it sounded :—*rond, ron-de ; petit, peti-te ;*

or by softening it :—*vif, vive ;*

or, again, before *n* or *m*, by depriving them of their nasal sound :—*fin, fi-ne.*

In colloquial language the tendency to slur over unaccented syllables is much stronger than in the *discours soutenu.*

For *e* followed by *m* or *n* in the same syllable, see III. Nasal Sounds.

5. *e fermé* has a sharp quick sound, not only

(a) in *ê*, in all cases :—*dé, été, vérité, né, préféré, etc.*

longer if followed by *e* mute :—*épée, armée, données ;* but also

(b) in the verbal endings *-er, -ez, -ai* :—*parler, parlez, parlai = parlé ; donnerai = donné* (but—*parlai-je = parlè-je*) ; also in *gai*, and *je sais, -s, -t.*

(c) in the Subst.- and Adj.-endings *-ied, -er, -ez* :—*pied, papier, léger, nez.*

Also in—*et, and.*

(Except in *amer. cuiller, enfer, hiver, univers, Jupiter*, in which, as in the monosyllables in *-er* (see below), *er* is sounded = *èr.*

6. *e ouvert* has a long open sound (nearly like English *e* in *there*), not only

(a) in *è* :—*frère, père, mère, élève, dernière, etc. ;* but also

(b) in *ê* :—*tête, arrête, grêle, même, être, etc.*

(c) in *e* before sounded consonants (or double cons.) in the same syllable :—*fer, mer, ver, vers, elle, pierre, maîtresse, cette, ancienne.*

(d) in *e* before silent *-s, -t* in the same syllable :—*tu es, les, est, billet, baquet, complet, etc.*

Shorter in—*chef, sec, sel, miel.*

(e) in *ai, ei* :—*aime, parlais, aise, laine, reine, Seine, soleil.*

(f) in initial *e* in an atonic syl. before *l, r, s*, followed by another consonant, or before *x* :—*Elbe, erreur, cerele, espalier, exemple.*

(g) in *e* :—*œnologie, Œdipe, œsophage.*

*Observation 1.*—In *-ège* the sound of *è* approaches that of *é* :—*collège, je protège.*

*Observation 2.*—*ai = e* sound in :—*faisant, n. faisons ; Impf. je faisais, etc. ; bienfaisance, bienfaisant, faiseur* (but *not* in *bienfait-eur*) ; *faisan, faisanderie.*

*Observation 3.*—In *-ail, -aill-*, the *i* belongs to the liquid *l* and not to *a* :—*ailleurs ; pron. = a-year.*

7. *o fermé* is pronounced long, not only

(a) in *ô* :—*le nôtre, diplôme, rôle, trône, côte, etc. ;* but also

(b) in *o* before *-se, -me*, and in *o* final :—*rose, chose, tome, os, numéro ;*

(c) in *au, cau*, before a mute syl., and in *au, cau* final :—*pauvre, autre, aune, étau, chameau, beau, etc.*

*Observation.*—*â* is short exceptionally in—*hôtel, hôpital.*

8. *o ouvert* is pronounced

(a) *long* in *o*, *au*, followed by *r* :—*or*, *trésor*, *sonore*, *aurore*, *fort*, *Maure*, (also exceptionally in—*axiome*, *idiome*, *tome*, *zone*).

(b) *short* in *o*, *au* initial or penultimate, except before *r* or *s*, see 7 (b) and 8 (a) :—*offre*, *odeur*, *noble*, *noce*, *il vole*, *Rome* ; *donne*, *autel*, *mauvais*, *aurai*, *Paul*, etc.

*Observation.*—*o* is silent in :—*faon*, *paon*, *Laon*.

9. *i* and *y* are sounded either—

(a) *short* in all cases not mentioned in (b) :—*si*, *ici*, *dit*, *pièce* ; *hygiène*, *Cyclope*, etc.

(b) *longer* if followed by *e* *mute* or a *mute syllable* :—*vie*, *île*, *n. dîmes* : *Tyre*, *lyre*.

*Observation.*—*y* also stands for double *i* (*î*) :—*pays*, *nous payons* (see § 81).

10. *u* is sounded

(a) *long* if *û*, or followed by *-e*, *-re*, *-se* :—*sûr*, *sûre*, *nue*, *vue*, *culture*, *ruse*, *typhus* (*s* sounded).

(b) *short* in all other cases :—*sur*, *lui*, *sucré*, *ture*, *culte*, *purge*, etc.

*Observation 1.*—*u* is also used after *y* or *q* as the sign of hard *g* or *c*, in which case it is silent :—*longu-e*, *publiqu-e* (see §§ 20 (d) and 81).

*Observation 2.*—*u* is sounded = *ou* after *q* in a few foreign words :—*quartz*, *quarto*, etc.

*Observation 3.*—*u* before *m* in Latin words = *o* :—*album*, *forum*.

*Observation 4.*—*eu* is sounded = *u* exceptionally in—*j'eus*, *tu eus*, etc. ; *j'eusse*, etc., and *Past. Part. eu*.

11. *eu*, *œu*, *fermé*, is sounded *long*—

(a) in *-eû* :—*jeûne*, *jeûner* (except in *eûmes*, *eûtes*, see 10, *Obs.* 3).

(b) before *sounded -d*, *-t*, *-se*, *-x* :—*meute*, *peureuse*, *deuxième*.

(c) before *silent final consonants* :—*nœud*, *les bœufs*, *les œufs* (*plur.*)

*Shorter in*—*feu*, *jeu*, *eux*.

12. *eu*, *œu*, *ouvert*, is sounded

(a) *long* if followed by—*r*, *re*, *rs*, *re*, *vre* :—*bonheur*, *heure*, *cœur*, *sœur*, *pleurs*, *fleuve*, *meuvent*, *œuvre*.

(b) *short*, before most *sounded consonants* (except *-d*, *-t*, *-se*, *-x*) :—*neuf*, *veuf*, *seul*, *jeune*, *meuble* ; *bœuf* and *œuf* (*sing.*)

*Observation 1.*—*œ*, *ue*, like *eu* in—*œil*, *orgueil*, *cueillir*, and its derivatives, *accueillir*, *recueil*, etc.

*Observation 2.*—In *gageure*, the *e* is the sign of *soft g*, hence = *gajure*.

13. *ou* (like English *oo* in *fool*) is sounded

(a) *long*, if *oû*, or before *-e*, *-r*, *-re*, *-se*, *-tre*, *-vre* :—*goût*, *coûte* ; *roue*, *labour*, *je labore*, *toujours*, *pelouse*, *outré*, *Louvre*.

(b) *shorter* before another vowel :—*vouer*, *louable* ; and before *-rce*, *-rse*, *rte* :—*source*, *course*, *courte*.

## II.—DIPHTHONGS (the *first* vowel is always short, sometimes both).

### 1. **oi** is sounded—

(a) like *ouā* before *r* and *re* :—*noir, soir, croire, poire*, etc.

(b) like *ouă* in other cases :—*roi, soi, moine, voile, poignée*, etc.

*Observation*.—**Oignon** is pronounced 'ognon.' **Roide**, for *raide*, is becoming obsolete.

### 2. **oui** :—*oui, Louis, fouine*, etc.

### 3. **oue** (*e* = *é* or *è*) :—*ouest, couenne*.

### 4. **oua** :—*couard* (archaic) ; *bivouac*.

*Observation*.—In *moelle*, *oe* = *oi*.

### 5. **ia, iai, iau, io** :—*diable, piano ; biais, liaison ; bestiaux, speciaux, violon*, etc.

### 6. **ié** :—*pitié, piéton, moitié ; pied, peuplier* (see I. 5, *b c*).

### 7. **iè** :—*dernière, fière ; miel, fiel ; bière, hier, miette, piège* (see I. 6, *c d*).

### 8. **ieu** :—*lieu, vieux, cieux ; yeux*.

### 9. **ui** :—*pluie, huile, ruine, juif, cuire, suite, puissant*.

After *g*, the *u* (*a*) may be the sign of *hard g*, and is then silent (see I. 10,

*Obs. 1*) : as, *guider, déguiser, guise, guirlande*, etc.

or (*b*) it is *sounded* :—*aiguiser ; aiguille, aiguillon* (and its other derivatives), *linguiste, linguale, inextinguible ; Guise, le Guide* (Reni).

Thus after *q*, (*a*) *u* silent :—*qui, marquis, inquiet, équitable, équilibre, équinoxe*, etc.

(*b*) *u* sounded :—*équitation ; quiet*.

### 10. **ua** after *q*—

(a) *u* silent in most words assimilated to French :—*quand, qualité, quatre, quarante*, etc.

(b) *u* sounded with *a* = *oua* in most words not assimilated to French :—*quartz, quantum, aquarelle, quarto, quadruple*, and most words in *quadr*—(*quadrature*, etc.)

### 11. **ue** (*a*) silent, if final :—*vague, distingue* ; like *û* in *uë* : *aiguë* ;

like *ué* in *-uër* : *arguer*, etc. ; like *uè* in *uais* : *arguais*, etc.

(b) sounded = *uè* in :—*équestre ; questeur, questure*.

### 12. **ay** (*a*) like *è-i* in :—*pays* (Littré :—*pè-yi*), *paysan*, etc. ; n. *pay-ons*, etc.

(b) like *aï* in many Proper Nouns :—*Bayard, Lafayette ; Bayeux, Mayence*, etc.

(c) like *è* in final syl. of Proper Nouns :—*Fontenay* ; so *-ey* :—*Ney*.

### 13. **oy** = *oa-i* ; *uy* = *ui-i* :—*royal ; employer, ennuyer*.

## III.—NASAL SOUNDS.

1. *an, am, en,*<sup>1</sup> *em* ; an, ange, champ, en, cent, ensemble.
2. *in, yn, im, ym* ; } fin, matin, vingt, syntaxe, impossible, Olympe.  
*ain, aim, ein, eim* ; } pain, main, daim, plein, teint, Reims.
3. *on, om* ; on, ton, bon, long, nombre, plomb.
4. *un, um, eun* ; un, chacun, parfum, humble, à jeun.

<sup>1</sup> *Observation 1.*—*en* = *in* in the endings *-éen, -ien, -yen* :—Européen, ancien, tient, citoyen ; and in a few Proper Nouns :—Rubens, Mentor, Marengo.

*Observation 2.*—*nn, mm, mn, m, or n*, followed by a vowel, and in most foreign Proper Nouns, are *not nasal* :—ennemi, sonner, lune, plume, inhumer, automne, etc. Jérusalem, Abraham, Priam, etc. So also in—amen, hymen, spécimen.

Except :—ennui, enivrer (and their derivatives), ennobler, enorgueillir.

*Observation 3.*—Final *um* = *om* :—post-scriptum (see I. 10, *Obs.* 3).

## IV.—CONSONANTS.

These are here arranged in the following order :—

b, p, f (ph), v (w) ; d, t, s, z, x ; c (k), g, h, ch, g, j ; gn, l, r ; m, n.

N.B.—Letters in **black type** are **sounded** ; letters in *italics* are *silent*.

## SOUNDED.

## SILENT.

## B.

INITIAL and MEDIAL :—in all cases.

## FINAL :

After a *vowel* :—

le club, nabab, Achab, Jacob.

also in—le rumb (*u* = *o*).

Generally after *Nasals* (*m, n*) :—

le plomb, l'aplomb, Colomb.

also in le Doubs (river).

## P.

INITIAL :—in *all* cases ; notice especially :—

le psaume, psalmiste, } and their

le psychologie ; pseudo, } derivatives.

## MEDIAL :

In most cases :— [Except in— baptiser, comp<sup>ter</sup>, dom<sup>pter</sup>, sculpter,  
 duper, adopter, apte, impromptu, etc. and derivatives.  
 septante, le Septembre, septentrion. la promptitude, le cheptel].

## FINAL (or penultimate) :

Exceptionally in :—

Alep, Gap, le cap, hanap, jalap,  
 julep, rapt.

In most cases :—

le coup, drop, cep, loup, champ, etc.  
 le temps ; prompt ; sept.

## SOUNDED.

## F (P H), V (W).

## SILENT.

FINAL and MEDIAL :—in all cases.

## FINAL :

In most cases :— [Except in— la clef (clé) ;  
 le bœuf, l'œuf, le nerf, la nef, les bœufs, les œufs, les nerfs,  
 le cerf (*or*, *cerf*), le chef, le nerf de bœuf, cerf volant, chef-  
 In neuf, f=v in liaison :— d'œuvre].  
 neuf ans = neu-van.  
 W (= V) is only used in a few words  
 of Teutonic origin.  
 wh = oui in— whig, whiskey, whist.

## D.

INITIAL and MEDIAL :—in all cases.

## FINAL (or penultimate):

Exceptionally in :— In most cases :—  
 le sud, ad hoc. le nid, pied, lard, renard, poids, etc.  
 In most Proper Names not ending in St. Bernard, Oxford, etc.  
*rd* :—  
 Alfred, Bagdad, le Cid, etc.

[Except— Madrid, St. Cloud.

d in liaison generally = t :—  
 grand homme = grantome.

## T.

INITIAL and MEDIAL :—in all cases.

## FINAL (or penultimate):

Exceptionally in :— In most cases :—  
 le déficit, aconit, accessit, fat. le mât, mets, fruit, pot, tribut, etc.  
 le granit, lut, opiat, prétérit, rit, la dent, part; *et* (also silent in liaison).  
 vermout; la dot. Obs. 1.—th always = t :—thé, zénith,  
 etc.

abrupt, brut, chut, huit, mat, (échec,  
 et mat),  
 net, soit! (*be it so!*) subit, et cetera.

In— le but, le fait, t is often heard, especially if emphatical, or at the end  
 of a sentence.

FINAL ct :<sup>1</sup>

le contact, le tact, l'intellect; circonspect, suspect, aspect.<sup>1</sup>  
 abject, correct, direct, infect, strict.

<sup>1</sup> N.B.—The pronunciation of final ct is very unsettled.

## FINAL st :

est (*east*), ouest, lest, toast (*toste*), In Jésus Christ, st is generally silent,  
 whist; Christ. but the tendency now is to sound it.

## MEDIAL -ti :

is *sibilant* (— ssi)—

(1) in the *substantival* and *adjectival* suffixes :—

-tial, -tiel, -tient, -tience, -tiaire, -tiant, -tieux, -tion, -tium :

martial, partiel, patient, patience,

[Except if—

plenipotentiaire, ambitieux, nation, Actium, etc.

(2) in most Nouns ending in :—

aristocratie, prophétie, impéritie, inertie, minutie, ineptie, Béotie, Spartiate.

also in—satiété, insatiable, gentiane.

(3) in most *Proper* Nouns in -tien :

Egyptien ; le Titien, Dioclétien, etc.

is sounded = ti (t HARD)—

(1) in *Verbal* inflexions :—

portions, sortiez, amnistier [ti=ssi in — balbutier, différentier, initier]

preceded by s or x :—

question, mixtion, etc.]

(2) in the *substantival* and *adjectival* suffixes—

-tié, -tième, -tier :—

amitié, vingtième, entier, etc.

or if not followed by another vowel :

apprenti, parti, démenti.

(3) in *Common* Nouns ending in

-tien :—

Chrétien, maintien, etc.

## S.

## INITIAL :

is sounded = ss in most cases :—

sa, sel, si, son, sur, spirituel, stance.

= z before soft consonants :—

sbire, sganarelle, svelte.

## MEDIAL :

s = ss (1) after a vowel or cons.

and before a *hard* cons. :—

espion, alpestre, substance, etc.

or (2) after any cons. and before a vowel :—

observer, catalepsie.

Notice especially s = ss in —

-asme, -isme :—

enthousiasme, prisme, etc.

[s between two vowels = ss, in most *compound* words :—cosinus, parasol, préséance, vraisemblance, etc.]

plus-que-parfait, presque, puisque, etc.

Observation.—sc = ss :—science.

s = z, between two *vowels* :—

ruse, maison, visage, etc.

or after a vowel and before a soft consonant :—

asbeste, Lisbounne ; between l and a —Alsace, etc.

also in—Israël.

Exceptionally = z, in compounds of trans :—

transaction, transitif.

s is *silent* in *Proper* Nouns of archaic spelling :—Davoust, Chasles ; Vosges, Isle de France, Desprésaux.

SOUNDED.	FINAL :	SILENT.
Exceptionally in—		In almost all cases—
(1) many Greek and Latin words :—		bas, mes, suis, nos, jus, corps, temps,
l'agnus, aloès, angelus, argus, as,		attraits, gens, mesdames, etc.
atlas, bis (encore !), le blocus,		But see V. <i>Liaison</i> (p. 118).
chorus, mars, omnibus, etc.		
all masc.	[but—	chaos].
(2) most <i>Proper Names</i> in as, ès, is,		Exceptionally in the following
os, us, ns :—		Proper Nouns :—
Arras, Gil Blas, Léonidas, Cérès, Isis,		Lucas, Nicolas, Thomas, Louis (Judas
Argos, Brutus, Fleurus, Rubens,		or Judas), Paris, Cinq-Mars.
etc. Also in—Reims, Sieyès (Siès).		
(3) in a few words fully assimilated to		
French :—Le cens, fils, laps, maïs,		
les mœurs (or mœurs), la vis, ès,		
hélas, jadis, gratis, oasis, etc.		
<i>Obs.</i> —Tous, used <i>substantively</i> : noustous.	In—tous, used <i>adjectively</i> : tous les ans.	
le sens, <i>sense</i> , <i>direction</i> ; but—	bon sens, sens commun.	
le lis, <i>lily</i> ; obus = obuze.	fleur de lis (in heraldry).	
plus, term of addition;	plus, <i>more</i> ; ne . . . plus, <i>no more</i> , <i>no</i>	
so also in— il y a plus, etc.	longer.	

## Z.

INITIAL and MEDIAL :—In all cases.

## FINAL :

Exceptionally in— gaz, Véra-Cruz.	In most cases :—
Like ss after t :—Seltz, Fritz, etc.	le nez ; chez ; vous avez, etc. ; except
also in— Cortez, Fez, Suez.	in liaison :—chez eux ; v. avez_été.

## X

has four different sounds :

SOUNDED.	INITIAL :	SOUNDED.
(1) x = ks in most cases :—	(3) x = ss in :—	
axe, luxe, Ajax. FINAL exceptionally	soixante (and derivatives) ;	
in— index, prefix, Sphinx, Styx,	Auxerre, Auxonne, Bruxelles (x also	
Félix.	= ks), Luxeuil, and a few others.	
In the prefix ex before a consonant :—	also final in six, dix, Béatrix, Cadix.	
exclure, exprès, inexpugnable (g	(4) x = z in :—deuxième, sixième,	
hard).	dixième, dix-huit, with their	
also excrécr, and its derivatives.	derivatives.	
(2) x = gz, in the prefix ex before	also in liaison : deux hommes, etc.	
a vowel or h :—	(5) x silent, if final, in most cases :—	
exact, exemple, exhorter, etc.	la paiz, voix, noir ; le flux, houx, etc.	
At the beginning of most foreign	les mauz, les chouz, je veuz, deux,	
Names :—Xanthippe, Xénophon,	etc.	
Xerxès (second x=s)		

## C (K).

## SOUNDED. INITIAL AND MEDIAL: SOUNDED.

c = k (*i.e.* hard) before a, o, u, or  
cons. (*exc. h.*)

le calcul, la cocarde, cueillir,  
le clocher, crime, l'accroc, Cnéius.

c = ss (*i.e.* sibilant) before e, i, y :—

celle, ceci, ceux, le cylindre.  
percer, durcir, etc.

Obs. 1.—The sign of *soft* c before a, o, u is ç :—je perçai, n. perçons, reçu.

The sign *hard* c before e, i, y is qu :—publique, que je vainque.

Obs. 2.—c = g, in second.

## SOUNDED.

## FINAL :

## SILENT.

c = k generally after vowels and  
consonants :—

le lac, bec, bloc, échec (*check*), suc,  
talc, parc, porc-épic, St. Marc, etc.

K (only in foreign words) :—  
kermesse, kilo, knout, alkali, etc.

c silent after n :—

franc, tronc, je vaincs, etc.

also exceptionally in—

le tabac, estomac, clerc, porc, marc.  
les échecs (*chess*), lacs (*noose*).

## Q.

q = hard c, in most cases :—

quand, la queue, quotidien, acquis,  
coq.

For qu = cou, see the letter u.

Exceptionally in—

coq d'Inde ; cinq, multiplying a noun  
beginning with a cons. :—

cinq doigts, etc.

## H.

## INITIAL :

ASPIRATE in words of *Teutonic*  
origin :—

La hâche, la hutte, la honte ; hair,  
héler, le hareng, le hêtre, etc.

also in— le hasard, le hussard, la  
Hongrie.

Exceptionally in a few Latin and  
Greek words :—hors, hormis, huis,

la herse, haut, huit, hurler, hérissier,

la hiérarchie, and their derivatives ;

le héros, but not its derivatives :—

SILENT in words of *Latin* or *Greek*  
origin :—

l'habit, l'hymen, l'hiver, l'homme,  
l'humeur, etc. ; hésiter, honorer,

humble, hier, etc.

l'héroïsme, l'héroïne, héroïque.

Observation.—Le uhlan, la ouate, le yacht (*yak*), ouïr, un (numeral), oui, le  
onze, le onzième, are treated as if they had an aspirate h.

## MEDIAL AND FINAL :

ASPIRATE, exceptionally in :—  
enhardir, enharnacher ; and in  
exclamations :—ah ! bah ! etc.

SILENT in all other cases :—  
bonheur, envahir, luth, zénith.

## SOUNDED.

## CH.

## SOUNDED.

(1) **ch** = English **sh**, generally before  
*vowels* :—

le **char**, **choc**, la **chimie**, **chute**, etc.

**charmer**, **chercher**, **choquer**, etc.

une **arche**, **biche**, **poche**, **ruche**, etc.

(2) Exceptionally in some words of  
Greek origin :—

**archevêque**, **archevêché**, **bachique**,

**archives**, **patriarche**, **architecte**,

**Achille**, **Antioche**; also in **chérubin**,

**punch** (*u* = *o*), **Auch**.

**ch** = **k**, (1) always before *consonants* :  
la **chlamyde**, **chronique**, **chrysalide**,  
le **chrétien**, etc.

(2) before *vowels* in most words  
derived from Greek, Hebrew,  
Italian, German, etc. :—

**chaos**, **chœur**, **écho**, **choléra**, **archange**,

**archiépiscopal**; **Nabuchodonosor**,

**Cham**, **Bacchus**, **bacchante**,

**Machabée**, **Michel Ange**, **Munich**,

**Rosbach**, **Utrecht**.

**Sch** = **ch** :—**schisme**.

## G.

## INITIAL AND MEDIAL :

**g** *hard* before **a**, **o**, **u**, and all *con-*  
*sonants* :—

**garde**, **goutte**, **Gustave**, **gland**, **grand**,

**aiguë**, **flegme**, **égal**, **suggérer** (first

**g** *hard*, second *soft*).

*Obs.*—The sign of

*hard g* before **e**, **i**, **y** is **gu** or **gh** :—

**longue**, **distinguer**, **Eng/hien**, etc.

**g** *soft* (= *j*) before **e**, **i**, **y** :—

**geler**, **gigot**, **gymnase**, **collège**, **agir**,  
etc.

*Obs.*—The sign of

*soft g* before **a**, **o**, **u** is **ge** :—

**je mangeais**, **n. mangeous**, **gagure**,  
etc.

**J.** = *soft g*, in all cases :—

**jardin**, **jeter**, **jouir**, **jus**, **déjà**, etc.

## FINAL :

Exceptionally like **k** in—

le **joug**, **bourg** (but *silent* in its com-  
pounds).

**SILENT**, in almost all cases :—

**sang**, **long**, **Hambourg**, **legs**, etc.

also in *gt* :—**doigt**, **vingt** (and their  
derivatives).

## THE LIQUIDS :

## GN MEDIAL :

**gn** = **nj** (*i.e.* liquid) in most cases :—

le **cygne**, **signal**, **règne**, **seigneur**,

la **ligne**, **montagne**, **Cologne**, **répugner**, etc.

Initial **gn**, *hard* in :—**Gnome**, **Gnide**.

**gn** *hard*, exceptionally in most foreign  
words not fully assimilated to  
French :—

**agnat**, **diagnostic**, **igné**, **inexpugnable**,

**magnat**, **stagnant**, **stagnation**.

*g* *silent* in—**signet**.

L (*hard*) :

## SILENT.

INITIAL and MEDIAL :—

in almost all cases.

In a few words of archaic spelling :—

La **Rochefoucauld**.

SOUNDED.

FINAL :

SILENT.

In almost all cases :— [Except in—  
bal, sel, fil, ciel, fol, calcul.

bazil, chenil, coutil, fils, fusil, gentil,  
nombril, outil, persil, souil, pouls,  
cul de sac.]

LIQUID.

IL, -ILL.

SOUNDED HARD.

MEDIAL AND FINAL :

-il, -ill (1 *mouillée*) = **ye** (= **lye** ac-  
cording to Littré) :—  
détail, soleil, œil, orgueil, fenouil,  
gentilhomme; fille, bataille, vieille,  
chenille, etc.

[Exceptionally in — mil (millet), gril  
(but *silent* in fam. language).]

Exceptionally  
those in— il, without preceding *vowel* :  
as, babil (but liquid in its deriva-  
tives), avril, cil, fil, vil, mil (1000)  
Nil, etc.

And the following in -ill :—  
la ville, le village, mille, osciller,  
vaciller, distiller, tranquille, pupille,  
and their derivatives; also in  
Achille, Lille, Tuileries.

SOUNDED.

R.

SILENT.

INITIAL and MEDIAL :—in all cases.

FINAL :

In almost all cases :—  
amer, la cuiller, l'enfer, l'éther,  
l'hiver, Jupiter, le vesper, le sieur,  
le martyr.

*Always* in words of *one* syllable :—  
le cuir, le mur, l'or, car, pour,  
le fer, la mer, fier, hier, etc.

Exceptionally in—  
all verbal and most substantival or  
adjectival *suffixes*, **er**, **ier** (**er** = **é**) :—  
parler, boucher, léger; se fier, justi-  
fier, le menuisier, le dernier, etc.]  
also in—Monsieur, Messieurs.

M and N.

For **m** and **n** nasal, see III. Nasal Sounds.

SOUNDED, BUT NOT NASAL.

SILENT.

INITIAL :—in all cases.

MEDIAL and FINAL :

If followed by a *vowel* or *silent h* :—  
image, immense, inégal, lune,  
inhumain.

In most foreign Common and Proper  
nouns in -**am**, -**em**, -**om**, -**um** :—  
décemvir, triumvirat, album, Cham,  
Jérusalem, Ibrahim, Latium.

In most foreign words in -**en** :—  
Amen; in hymen, examen, **en** is pron.  
either = **in** (*nasal*), or = **ène** (*not nasal*).

Exceptionally in—  
damner, and its derivatives,  
automne, but— automnal.

In **mm** and **nn**, **m** or **n**, the first is  
generally silent :—  
*imm*ortel, *femme*, constamment, etc.  
*ann*ée, *enn*emi (*è*nemi).  
solennel, pron. = solanel.

## V.—LIAISON (joining of words in Pronunciation).

It has been seen (p. 4) that in dividing a word into syllables, a final consonant, though etymologically belonging to the preceding syllable, is drawn over to the vowel of the next syllable; thus—*inutile* is divided into :—i-nu-ti-le.

As with syllables so with words: *i.e.* the final consonant of a word, followed by another word beginning with a vowel or silent *h*, is, in pronunciation, treated as the initial consonant of the next word.

*N.B.*—In liaison, *s* and *x* are always softened into *z*, *f* into *v*; whilst *d* is hardened into *t* (but not in *sud* and *nord*), and *g* into *k*: as,

*Ils ont admiré*, = *Il-zon-tadmiré*.      *Neuf ans*, = *neu-van*.  
*Long espoir*, = *lon-kespoir*.

Let it, however, be distinctly understood from the outset that this *liaison* only holds good in the case of words closely connected: as,

(a) *Article* and *Noun*:—les\_amis; mes\_habits; des\_arbres.

(b) *Adjective* and *Noun*:—ces\_oranges; mes\_âmes; cinq\_heures;  
 petit\_homme; cher\_enfant; grand\_avantage.

*N.B.*—Less frequently between *Noun* and *Adjective*:—  
 accent\_aigu; l'onde\_amère.

(c) *Pers. Pronoun* and *Verb*:—ils\_ont; nous\_allons; vous\_habitez;  
 viennent-ils? croit-on? je\_vous\_ai\_dit.

(d) *Auxiliary* and *Past Part.*:—Nous\_avons\_aimé.

(e) *Verb* and *Complement*:—Il\_est\_avocat. Elles\_sont\_à\_plaindre. Vous\_êtes\_habiles.

(f) *Adverb* and *Verb* or *Adjective*:—bien\_écrit; beaucoup\_à\_faire;  
 fort\_aise; rien\_oublié.

(g) *Preposition* and its *Complement*:—chez\_eux; depuis\_un\_an; avec\_elles.

(h) *Compound Words*:—arc\_en\_ciel; vingt\_huit; sud\_est.

*N.B.*—The *t* of *et* is never drawn over.

*Nasal Sounds* are materially weakened by the application of *liaison*, though not to the same extent as in the composition of words; for whilst in *uniforme*, *honneur*, for instance, the nasal sound, on account of the following vowel, altogether disappears, it still asserts itself between

(a) *Indef. Art.* and *Noun*:—un\_homme; un\_âne.

(b) *Posses. Adj.* and *Noun*:—mon\_ami; ton\_habit.

(c) *Qualif. Adj.* and *Noun*:—ancien\_élève; bon\_ordre.

(d) *bien* and *Adj.*, *Adv.*, or *Verb*:—bien\_aimable; bien\_élevé.

But no *liaison* is admissible between a *Noun* ending in a nasal sound and the next word:—  
 Le\_pain\_est\_un\_aliment.

No hard-and-fast rules can, however, be laid down for the appropriate application of *liaisons*. The whole question being essentially one of *euphony*, it need hardly be added that *liaison* must be carefully avoided whenever its application would tend to defeat its own purpose. Even in *lecture à haute voix* it must be used with great judgment; whilst in colloquial language its lavish use is considered pedantic.

## II.—PLURAL OF NOUNS.

(a) *List of Substantives NOT USED IN THE SINGULAR :—*

les aguets, m.	<i>watch,</i>	les fonts, m.	<i>fonts (baptismal),</i>
les alentours, m.	<i>neighbourhood,</i>	les frais, m.	<i>expenses,</i>
les ancêtres, m.	<i>ancestors,</i>	les gens, m.	<i>people (la gent,</i> <i>see § 97),</i>
les annales, f.	<i>annals, records,</i>		
les archives, f.	<i>archives, record-</i> <i>offices,</i>	les intestins, m.	<i>entrails,</i>
les armoiries, f.	<i>coat of arms,</i>	les mœurs, f.	<i>manners, morals,</i>
les arrhes, f.	<i>earnest money,</i>	les mouchettes, f.	<i>snuffers,</i>
les atours, m.	<i>attire,</i>	les pénates, m.	<i>household gods,</i>
les balayures, f.	<i>sweepings,</i>	les pierreries, f.	<i>jewels,</i>
les confins, m.	<i>borders,</i>	les pleurs, m.	<i>tears,</i>
les décombres, m.	<i>rubbish,</i>	les proches, m.	<i>relatives,</i>
les dépens, m.	<i>cost, expense,</i>	les ténèbres, f.	<i>darkness,</i>
les entrefaites, f.	<i>interval,</i>	les thermes, m.	<i>hot springs, baths,</i>
les environs, m.	<i>environs,</i>	les vèpres, f.	<i>vespers,</i>
		les vivres, m.	<i>provisions, victuals.</i>

And thus all Nouns ending in *-ailles* [Lat. *-alia*]: as, les entrailles, f., *entrails*; fiançailles, f., *betrothal*.

(b) *List of Nouns of FOREIGN ORIGIN which do not change in the PLURAL :—*

les accessit,\* amen, avé, confitéor, crédo, crescendo;

les déficit,\* exeat, magnificat, pater, quatuor,\* satisfécit.

*Observation 1.*—Those marked \* are also written with an s in the Plural.

*Observation 2.*—Thus also compound foreign Nouns:—les auto-da-fé, les infolio, etc.

*Observation 3.*—Carbonaro, condottiere, dilettante, lazzarone (Ital.), change the final vowel into i.

Maximum, minimum (Lat.), in technical language, change *um* into *a*.

Lady, tory, generally conform to the English—ladies, tories (also torys).

*Observation 4.*—A few have both in the Sing. and Plur., the Plural form of the language from which they are respectively derived:—

Les concetti, les lazzi (Ital.); Les duplicata, les errata (Latin).

(c) *Substantives DIFFERING IN MEANING in the SING. and the PLURAL :—*

l'aboi, m.	<i>bark, barking,</i>	les abois,	<i>last extremity,</i>
		aux abois,	<i>at bay,</i>
l'arme, f.	<i>weapon,</i>	les armes,	<i>coat of arms, bear-</i>
l'arrêt, m.	<i>stoppage, judgment,</i>	les arrêts,	<i>arrest, [ings,</i>
l'assise, f.	<i>layer, stratum,</i>	les assises,	<i>assizes,</i>
l'auspice, m.	<i>augury,</i>	les auspices,	<i>auspices,</i>
la bonne grâce,	<i>gracefulness,</i>	les bonnes grâces,	<i>good graces, favour,</i>
le ciseau,	<i>chisel,</i>	les ciseaux,	<i>the scissors,</i>
la défense,	<i>defence.</i>	les défenses,	<i>tusks.</i>

le denier,	<i>farthing,</i>	les deniers,	<i>funds,</i>
l'effet, m.	<i>effect,</i>	les effets,	<i>goods, effects,</i>
l'enfer, m.	<i>hell,</i>	les enfers,	<i>infernal regions,</i>
l'esprit, m.	<i>spirit, ghost, mind,</i>	les esprits,	<i>senses, spirits,</i>
l'état, m.	<i>state, condition,</i>	les états (généraux, etc.),	<i>the States-General.</i>
l'être, m.	<i>being,</i>	les êtres,	<i>parts of a house,</i>
<u>le faste,</u>	<i>pomp, show,</i>	<u>les fastes,</u>	<i>annals, records,</i>
le fer,	<i>iron,</i>	<u>les fers,</u>	<i>fetters, chains,</i>
le gage,	<i>pledge, pawn,</i>	les gages,	<i>wages,</i>
la harde.	<i>herd of deer, leash,</i>	les hardes,	<i>clothes,</i>
l'honneur, m.	<i>honour,</i>	les honneurs,	<i>dignities, honours,</i>
l'instance, f.	<i>instance, lawsuit,</i>	les instances,	<i>entreaties,</i>
le jour,	<i>day,</i>	les jours,	<i>life,</i>
la lettre,	<i>letter,</i>	les lettres,	<i>literature, [hell,</i>
la limbe,	<i>limb (of sun, moon),</i>	les limbes,	<i>limbo, outskirts of</i>
la lumière,	<i>sight,</i>	les lumières,	<i>intelligence, know-</i>
la lunette,	<i>telescope,</i>	les lunettes,	<i>spectacles, [ledge,</i>
le neveu,	<i>nephew,</i>	les neveux,	<i>descendants,</i>
le papier,	<i>paper,</i>	les papiers,	<i>documents, passport</i>
la poursuite,	<i>pursuit,</i>	les poursuites,	<i>proceedings (law),</i>
la pratique,	<i>practice, customer,</i>	les pratiques,	<i>intrigues, observances,</i>
la tablette,	<i>shelf, lozenge,</i>	les tablettes,	<i>writing-tablets,</i>
la troupe,	<i>band, drove,</i>	les troupes,	<i>troops, forces,</i>
la trousse,	<i>bundle, truss,</i>	les trousses,	<i>breeches (fig. heels),</i>
la vacance,	<i>vacancy,</i>	les vacances,	<i>vacations,</i>
la veille,	<i>watch, vigil, eve,</i>	les veilles,	<i>night labours.</i>

*Observation.*—Most of these are also used in the Plural with the same meaning as in the Singular.

### 95 III.—IRREGULAR FORMATION OF FEMININE OF NOUNS.

(a) *Nouns which take -sse [esse = Lat. -issa] in the FEMININE :—*

un abbé,	<i>abbott,</i>	une abbesse.	un ogre,	<i>ogre,</i>	une ogresse.
un âne	<i>ass,</i>	une ânesse.	le pair,	<i>peer,</i>	la pairesse.
le chanoine,	<i>canon,</i>	la chanoinesse.	le pauvre,*	<i>pauper,</i>	la pauvresse (fam.)
le comte,	<i>earl,</i>	la comtesse.	le prêtre,	<i>priest,</i>	la prêtresse.
le druide,	<i>druid,</i>	la druidesse.	le prince,	<i>prince,</i>	la princesse.
l'hôte,	<i>host,</i>	l'hôtesse.	le prophète,	<i>prophet,</i>	la prophétesse.
le larron,	<i>thief,</i>	la larronnesse.	le Suisse,*	<i>Swiss,</i>	la Suissesse.
le maître,	<i>master,</i>	la maîtresse.	le tigre,	<i>tiger,</i>	la tigresse.
le nègre,*	<i>negro,</i>	la négresse.	le traître,	<i>traitor,</i>	la traîtresse.

Thus also, but with alteration of the Stem :—

le dieu,	<i>god,</i>	la déesse ;	le duc,	<i>duke,</i>	la duchesse.
----------	-------------	-------------	---------	--------------	--------------

\* If used *adjectively*, those marked \* remain unchanged in the Fem.

(b) *Nouns which form their Feminine by changing their ending -eur into -eresse (i.e. ěr-esse instead of ěur-esse; the tonic accent falling on esse, the accented eur is weakened into unaccented er; cp. je viens, n. venons, etc, see § 93).*

le chasseur,	<i>hunter,</i>	la chasseresse, <i>in poetical style; otherwise</i> la chasseuse.
le děfendeur,	<i>defendant (Law),</i>	la děfenderesse.
le demandeur,	<i>plaintiff (Law),</i>	la demanderesse ( <i>demandeuse, the beggar</i> ).
l'enchanteur,	<i>enchanter,</i>	l'enchanteresse.
le pěcheur,	<i>sinner,</i>	la pěcheresse.
le pěcheur,	<i>the fisherman,</i>	la pěcheuse.
le vendeur,	<i>seller (Law),</i>	la venderesse.
		la vendeuse, <i>the seller (in general).</i>

Notice also—

le devin,	<i>soothsayer,</i>	la devineresse.
le doge,	<i>doge (of Venice),</i>	la dogaresse.
le diacre,	<i>deacon,</i>	la diaconesse, or diaconisse; ( <i>la diaconesse, Protestant sister of mercy</i> ).

(c) *Nouns which form their Feminine in -ice, -ante, -ine, -elle, -e, etc. : in most cases with alteration of the Stem :—*

Le chanteur, *singer*<sup>1</sup>, la cantatrice; *professional singer.*  
but— la chanteuse, *amateur singer.*

l'empereur,	<i>emperor,</i>	l'impěratrice;	le procureur,	<i>proctor,</i>	la procuratrice.
le gouverneur,	<i>governor,</i>	la gouvernante;	le serviteur,	<i>servant,</i>	la servante
le hěros,	<i>hero,</i>	l'hěroïne;	le czar,	<i>tzar,</i>	la czarine.
le roi,	<i>king,</i>	la reine;	le pastoureau,	<i>shepherd-boy,</i>	la pastourelle
le chameau,	<i>camel,</i>	la chamelle;	le jouvenceau,	<i>lad,</i>	la jouvenelle
le jumeau,	<i>twin,</i>	la jumelle;	le dindon,	<i>turkey,</i>	la dinde.
le compagnon,	<i>companion,</i>	la compagne;	le caneton,	<i>duckling,</i>	la canette.
le cochon,	<i>pig,</i>	la coche;	le bailli,	<i>high-bailif,</i>	la baillive.
le loup,	<i>wolf,</i>	la louve;	le daim,	<i>fallow-deer,</i>	la daine.
le mulet,	<i>mule,</i>	la mule;	le canard,	<i>duck,</i>	la cane.
le chevreuil,	<i>roe-buck,</i>	la chevrete;	le vieillard,	<i>old man,</i>	la vieille.
le cheval,	<i>horse,</i>	la cavale;	le neveu,	<i>nephew,</i>	la niěce.
le fils,	<i>son,</i>	la fille;	le nourricier,	<i>foster-father</i>	la nourrice.

(d) *Names of Persons and Animals which differ RADICALLY in the*  
MASCULINE and FEMININE :—

l'homme, <i>man;</i>	la femme, <i>woman.</i>	le garçōn, <sup>1</sup> <i>boy.</i>	la fille, <i>girl.</i>
le mari, <i>husband;</i>	la femme, <i>wife.</i>	l'oncle, <i>uncle;</i>	la tante, <i>aunt.</i>
monsieur, <i>Mr., Sir,</i>	madame, <i>Mrs.</i>	le gendre, <i>son-in-</i>	la bru, <i>daughter-</i>
etc.;		<i>law;</i>	<i>in-law.</i>
le pěre, <i>father;</i>	la měre, <i>mother.</i>	le parrain, <i>god-</i>	la marraine, <i>god-</i>
		<i>father;</i>	<i>mother.</i>
le frěre, <i>brother;</i>	la sěur, <i>sister.</i>		

<sup>1</sup> la garce is only used in a bad sense.

le béliet, <i>ram</i> ;	la brebis, <i>ewe</i> .	le lièvre, <i>hare</i> ;	la hase, <i>doe-hare</i> .
le bouc, <i>he-goat</i> ;	la chèvre, <i>she-goat</i> .	le perroquet, <i>parrot</i>	la perruche, <i>hen-parrot</i> .
le bœuf, <i>ox</i> ;	la vache, <i>cow</i> .	le sanglier, <i>wild boar</i> ;	la laie, <i>wild sow</i> .
le coq, <i>cock</i> ;	la poule, <i>hen</i> .	le singe, <i>monkey</i> ;	la guenon, <i>she-monkey</i> .
l'étalon, <i>stallion</i> ;	la jument, <i>mare</i> .	le taureau, <i>bull</i> ;	la génisse, <i>heifer</i> .
le jars, <i>gander</i> ;	l'oie, <i>goose</i> .	le verrat, <i>boar</i> ;	la truie, <i>sow</i> .

*Observation 1.*—Many names of living beings have no special forms to denote their sex, and are either masc. or fem. in *gender*, irrespective of *sex* : as.

le léopard, la panthère ; le renne, la souris, etc.

The distinction of sex is expressed by adding *mâle* or *féfelle* : as,

Un canari mâle, un canari femelle ; un démon femelle, *a she-devil*.

Thus also with names of *plants* :—un palmier mâle, un palmier femelle.

*Observation 2.*—Most names of *Professions* remain unaltered, if applied to women :—

l'amateur, le docteur, le défenseur, l'auteur, l'écrivain, etc.

Thus also—un ange, un témoin.

## 96

#### IV.—A. FEMININE AND PLURAL FORMATION OF COMPOUND ADJECTIVES.

(a) If both components are used *adjectively*, they both take the sign of the Feminine and of the Plural :—

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
aigre-doux,	aigre-douce ;	aigres-doux,	aigres-douces, <i>sourish</i> .
ivre-mort,	ivre-mort ;	ivres-morts,	ivres-mortes, <i>dead drunk</i> .
nouveau marié, <sup>1</sup>	nouvelle mariée ;	nouveaux mariés,	nouvelles mariées, { <i>newly married</i> .
sourd-muet,	sourde-muette ;	sourds-muets,	sourdes-muettes, { <i>deaf and dumb</i> .
premier venu,	première venue ;	premiers venus,	premières venues, <i>first come</i> .

<sup>1</sup> Thus—nouveau converti, nouveau venu : for the other compounds of *nouveau*, see (b).

Thus also, though the first component is *adverbial*, in—

frais-cueilli,	fraîche-cueillie ;	frais-cueillis,	fraîches-cueillies, { <i>newly gathered</i> .
----------------	--------------------	-----------------	---

(b) If one of the components is a Participle or an Adjective used *adverbially*, it remains unchanged (for Exceptions see a) :—

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
bien-aimé,	bien-aimée ;	bien-aimés,	bien-aimées, <i>well beloved</i> .
clairsemé,	clairsemée ;	clairsemés,	clairsemées, <i>thinly sown</i> .
nouveau-né,	nouveau-née ;	nouveau-nés,	nouveau-nées, <i>new born</i> .
demi-mort,	demi-morte ;	demi-morts,	demi-mortes, <i>half dead</i> .

Thus—premier-né, *first born* ; mort-né, *still born* ; dernier-né, *last born*. léger-vêtu, *lightly clad* ; demi-savant, *smatterer* ; mi-parti, *half and half*, court-jointé, *thick set* ; long-jointé, *lanky*.

*Obs.*—Tout-puissant, toute-puissante ; tout-puissants, { *all*  
toutes-puissantes, { *powerful*.

*Compound Adjectives of Colour* generally follow the same rule : as,  
Des cheveux **clair-bruns**.

But frequently they are treated as Substantives used appositively :—  
D'une couleur **gris-obscur**. Des reflets **vert-doré** (Buffon).

*Obs.*—**châtain** has no fem., and remains unchanged in the plur., if modified by another adj. : as,

Des cheveux **châtains**, but— Des cheveux **châtain clair**.

## B. ALPHABETICAL LIST

### OF ADJECTIVES (AND NOUNS USED ADJECTIVELY) WHICH FORM THEIR FEMININE IRREGULARLY.

*N.B.*—Adjectives ending in **-e** mute (unchanged in f.), in **-f** (f. **-ve**) ; in **-x** (f. **-se**), in **-c** (f. **-que**), in **-eur** (f. **-euse** or **-eure**), in **-n** (f. **-nne**), or **-el**, **-eil** (f. **-elle**, **-eille**), are not included in this list.

<i>Masculine. Feminine.</i>	<i>Masculine. Feminine.</i>	<i>Masculine. Feminine.</i>
absous, absoute.	fat, <i>no fem.</i>	négrier, <i>no fem.</i>
bas, basse.	faux, fausse.	net, nette.
beau (bel), belle.	favori, favorite.	nouveau (nouvel), nouvelle.
bellot, bellotte.	fluet, flurette.	nul, nulle.
bénin, bénigne.	fou (fol), folle.	oblong, oblongue.
bigot, bigotte.	frais, fraîche.	ort ( <i>gross</i> ), <i>no fem.</i>
blanc, blanche.	franc, franche.	
brunet, Brunette.	(langue franque.)	pêcheur, pécheresse.
châtain, <i>no fem.</i>	gentil, gentille.	profès, professe.
coi, coite.	gras, grasse.	provocateur, provocatrice
coquet, coquette.	grec, grecque.	pouf, <i>no fem.</i>
<i>no masc.</i> crasse.	gros, grosse.	
créateur, créatrice.	hébreu, <i>no fem.</i>	rosat, <i>no fem.</i>
	investigateur, investigatrice.	roux, rousse.
dispos, <i>no fem.</i>	jumeau, jumelle.	sec, sèche.
dissous, dissoute.	las, lasse.	sot, sotté.
dominateurdominatrice.	long, longue.	sujet, sujette.
doucet, doucette.	maître, maîtresse.	tiers, tierce.
douillet, douillette.	malin, maligne.	traître, traîtresse.
doux, douce.	mollet, mollette.	
<i>no masc.</i> effectrice.	mou ( <i>mol</i> ), molle.	vengeur, vengeresse.
épais, épaisse.	muet, muette.	vieux, vieille.
exprès, expresse.		vieillot, vieillotte.
extermina- extermina-		
teur, trice.		

## V.—GENDER OF NOUNS.

(a) NOUNS OF DIFFERENT GENDER IN THE *Singular* AND *Plural*:—(1) *Masculine* in the *Singular*— but *Feminine* in the *Plural*.

L'amour, m., *love*; as,  
amour divin, amour filial.

Pâques, m., *Easter*; as,  
à Pâques prochain, *next Easter*.  
but— la Pâque, *Passover*.

le délice, m., *delight*; as, C'est un  
grand délice (unusual in the Sing.).  
un orgue, m., *organ*, un bon orgue.

Les amours, f.: as, de folles amours.  
but— les amours, *cupids*, masc. in  
sing. and plur.

Pâques, f. pl., in the expressions—  
faire de bonnes Pâques, *to receive the*  
*Sacrament*;

Pâques fleuries, *Palm-Sunday*.

les délices, f.: ses plus chères délices.

des orgues, f.: des orgues portatives.

(2) *Masculine* in the *Plural*—*Feminine* in the *Singular*—

Les gens, *persons, people, folks, servants, troops*.

[In the sense of *nations* only in  
the expression :—le droit des  
gens, *international law*.]

Des gens de bien, *honest people*;  
des gens d'honneur, *honourable people*;  
des gens sans aveu, *vagabonds, etc.*

La gent, *race, tribe*, an archaic term,  
used in *familiar poetry* only :—

“la gent trotte-menu,” *mice*;

“la gent marécageuse,” *frogs*;

“la gent moutonnaire,” *sheep*.

Lafontaine.

But adjectives qualifying **gens** take—

The *masculine* form if placed *after*:—

Voilà des gens bien **fins**.

Les jeunes gens sont **imprudents**.

The *feminine* form if placed *before*:—

Ce sont de **fin**es gens.

Quelles **méchantes** gens !

Tous, however, has this peculiarity, that it keeps its masc. form *before* **gens**, as—

Tous les gens, tous les honnêtes gens, etc.

unless it be followed by another adjective that has a distinct form for the feminine; as—

Toutes les **vieilles** gens; but— Tous les **jeunes** gens.

The anomaly arises from a conflict between the original *gender* of **gens** (Lat. *gentes*), which is feminine, and the *sex* of the persons it denotes—men, folks, etc.

## (b) NOUNS OF BOTH GENDERS ACCORDING TO THEIR MEANING :—

*Masculine.*

un aigle [aquila], *eagle*,  
 un aune [alnus], *alder-tree*,  
 quelque chose, *something*, indef. pron.,  
 un couple, *couple* (male and female),  
 le crêpe [crispus], *crape*,  
 un œuvre, *work* (of an engraver or musician),

le foret (fr. the verb *forer*), *gimlet*,  
 le foudre, *thunderbolt* (fig.),  
 le foudre [Germ. *Fuder*], *wine-butt*,  
 le greffe [graphium], *registry, rolls*,  
 le livre [liber], *book*,  
 le manche [manica], *handle*,  
 le mémoire (memoria), *memorandum*,  
 le mode [modus], *mood*,  
 le moule [modulus], *model, mould, pattern*,

le mousse (Ital. *mozzo*), *cabin-boy*,  
 l'office [officium], *office, duty*,  
 le page [παῖδιον], *page (attendant)*,  
 le pendule [pendulus], *pendulum*,  
 le période [periodus], *highest pitch*,  
 personne, *no one*, indef. Pron.  
 le poêle [pensile], *stove, pall*,  
 le poste, *post, place, employment*,  
 le somme [somnia], *slumber, nap*,  
 le souris [subridere], *smile*,  
 le tour [tornus], *turn, trick*,  
 le vapeur [vapor], *steamer*,  
 le vas [vas], *vase*,  
 le voile [velum], *veil*,

*Feminine.*

une aigle, *standard (female eagle)*,  
 une aune [ulna], *ell, yard*,  
 la chose, *the thing*,  
 une couple, *brace, two of a sort*,  
 la crêpe, *pancake*,  
 une œuvre [pl. opera], *work in general*,

la forêt [med. Lat. *forestis*], *forest*,  
 la foudre [fulgurem], *lightning*,

la greffe, *graft, scion*,  
 la livre [libra], *pound, £*,  
 la manche [manicae], *sleeve*,  
 la mémoire, *memory*,  
 la mode, *fashion*,  
 la moule [musculus], *mussel*,

la mousse [Germ. *Moos*], *moss*,  
 une office, *servants' hall, pantry*,  
 la page [pagina], *page (of a book)*,  
 la pendule, *timepiece*,  
 la période, *period*,  
 la personne, *person*, subst.  
 la poêle [patella], *frying-pan*,  
 la poste [Low Lat. *posta*], *post, post*,  
 la somme [summa], *sum*, [office],  
 la souris [soricem], *mouse*,  
 la tour [turris], *tower*,  
 la vapeur, *steam, vapour*,  
 la vase (Anglo-Sax. *vase*), *mud, slime*,  
 la voile [pl. *vela*], *sail*.

It will be seen that most are also of different origin.

*Observation.*—The following are

*Masculine—*

if denoting the *agent* :—

l'aide (fr. *aider*), *assistant*,  
 le critique, *critic*,  
 l'enseigne (insignia), *ensign*,  
 le fourbe, *knave, rogue*,  
 le garde, *keeper*,  
 le manœuvre, *workman*,  
 le trompette, *trumpeter*,

*Feminine—*

if denoting the *instrument* :—

l'aide, *assistance*,  
 la critique, *criticism*,  
 une enseigne, *signboard*,  
 la fourbe, *cheat, imposture*,  
 la garde, *watch*,  
 la manœuvre, *working, manœuvre*,  
 la trompette, *trumpet, etc.*

## VI.—RULES OF GENDER.

I.—*The Gender determined by DERIVATION.*

Upwards of 90 per cent of French Nouns have the *same gender as the Latin words* from which they are derived, reckoning the *French Masculine* as the substitute for *Latin Neuter Nouns*, most of which have become Masculine in French.

*General Rules*.:—(1) *Most French Nouns derived from LATIN MASCULINE Nouns have remained MASCULINE in FRENCH* :—

le poète [poëta],	poet.
le mur [murus],	wall.
le livre [librum],	book.
l'heur [augurium],	luck (bonheur).
le pied [pedem],	foot.
un ordre [ordinem],	order.
le front [frontem].	forehead, front.
le fruit [fructus],	fruit.
le grade [gradus],	grade.

*N.B.* — *Ecorce*, *fumée*, *ramée*, are not exceptions, being derived from *Lat. excorticea*, *fumata*, *ramata*, and not from *corticem*, *fumus*, *ramus*.

[Of those derived from *Lat.* in *-or*, only *honneur*, *labeur*, *pleurs*, and *amour* (sing.) have remained masc.]

*Chief Exceptions.*

la comète [cometes].
la planète [planetæ, pl. m.]
la mousse [muscus], la rame [ramus].
la grenouille [ranunculus].
une auge [alveus].
la puce [pulicem], la poudre [pulverem].
la cendre [cinerem], la dent [dentem].
la souris [soricem], la brebis [vervecem].
la paroi [parietem], les annales [annales].
la fin [finis], une arche [arcus]; but— un arc.

*Important Exception* : Most Latin Nouns in *-or*, *-os*, have become Feminine in French :—  
la couleur, la fleur, les mœurs, etc.

(2) *Most French Nouns derived from LATIN NEUTER Nouns have become MASCULINE in FRENCH* :—

le verbe [verbum],	verb.
l'or [aurum],	gold.
le virus [virus],	virus.
le corps [corpus],	body.
le marbre [marmor],	marble.
un os [os],	bone.
le lait [lactem],	milk.
le chef [caput],	chief.
le genou [genuculum],	knee, etc.

*Chief Exceptions.*

A certain number of Nouns in *-e* (about 120), although derived from Latin **Neuter Nouns**, are **Feminine** in French. This anomaly has been attributed to their frequent occurrence in the plural, the endings *a*, *ia*, of which caused them erroneously to be assimilated to the Feminine Nouns in *a*, *ia*, of the First Latin Declension :—

une amande [amygdalum],	almond.	la date [data],	date.
une arme [pl. arma],	arms.	la dette [debita],	debt.
une armoire [armarium],	wardrobe.	l'enseigne [pl. insignia],	signboard.
la bible [pl. biblia],	Bible.	l'encre [encaustum],	ink.
la cervelle [cerebellum].	brains.	l'écritoire [scriptorium],	inkstand.
la cuillère [cochlear],	spoon.	l'építaphe [epitaphium],	epítaph.
la cymbale [cymbalum],	cymbal.	l'építète [epithetum],	epithet.

l'étable [stabulum],	<i>stables.</i>	la pêche [persicum],	<i>peach.</i>
l'étude [studium],	<i>study.</i>	la pointe [punctum],	<i>point.</i>
la feuille [pl. folia],	<i>leaf.</i>	la promesse [promissum],	<i>promise.</i>
la graine [granum],	<i>seed.</i>	la réponse [responsa],	<i>answer.</i>
l'horloge [horologium],	<i>clock.</i>	la vitre [vitrum],	<i>pane.</i>
l'huile [oleum],	<i>oil.</i>		
l'idole [idolum],	<i>idol.</i>	All those in <i>-aie</i> , fr. Lat. <i>etum</i> :—	
la joie [pl. gaudia],	<i>joy</i>	saussaie [salicetum]	<i>willow-plantation,</i>
la lèvre [labrum],	<i>lip.</i>	etc.	
la merveille [pl. mirabilia],	<i>marvel.</i>	Also, though not ending in <i>e</i> mute :—	
l'orge [hordeum],	<i>barley.</i>	la jument [pl. jumenta],	la mer [pl. maria]
		la corne [cornu],	<i>horn.</i>

### 3. Most French Nouns derived from LATIN FEMININE Nouns have remained

#### FEMININE IN FRENCH :—

la famille [familia], *family.*  
 une heure [hora], *hour.*  
 la justice [justitia], *justice.*

#### Chief Exceptions.

un épi [spica], le lézard [lacerta].  
 un ongle [ungula], le rossignol [lusciniola].  
 les thermes [thermæ].  
 un orchestre [orchestra].  
 le tilleul [tiliola]; and most names of  
*trees* (see b.)

la méthode [methodus], *method.*

le cypres [cupressus], le pin [pinus], etc.  
 un atome [atomus].  
 le paragraphe [paragraphus].  
 le dialecte [dialectus].  
 le diamètre, [diametrus].  
 le phare [pharus].

la charité [caritatem], *charity.*  
 la cherté „ *dearth.*  
 la vertu [virtutem], *virtue.*  
 la paix [pacem], *peace.*

un arbre [arborem], un art [artem].  
 un appendice [appendicem].  
 le front [frontem].  
 le poison [potionem].  
 le soupçon [suspicionem].  
 le sort [sortem], but— la sorte.  
 le vertige [vertigo], le diocèse [diocesis].  
 le jaspe [jaspis].

la main [manus], *hand.*  
 la tribu [tribus], *tribe.*

le porche, portique [porticus].

la foi [fidem], *faith.*  
 la face [faciem], *face.*

un rien (rem).

### 4. Most Nouns derived from LATIN COMMON Nouns are

#### MASCULINE IN FRENCH :—

#### Exceptions.

le bœuf [bovem].  
 le serpent [serpentem].  
 le lynx [lynx], etc.

la perdrix [perdix].

## II.—The Gender determined by MEANING :

## A. MASCULINE :—The Names of

## (1) Males :—

un homme, le père, le fils, le roi, etc.  
le lion, le bœuf, le coq, etc.  
le jardinier, le matelot, etc.

## (2) Trees and Metals :—

le pommier, le pin, un orme, le saule,  
le tilleul, le chêne, un églantier, etc.  
l'or, l'argent, le fer, le cuivre.

(3) Days, Months, Seasons,  
Winds, Cardinal points :—

le dimanche, le mercredi,  
le septembre, le brumaire,  
le printemps, l'été, l'hiver, l'automne,  
le renouveau (poet.),  
l'aquilon, le zéphir, etc.,  
l'est, l'ouest, le septentrion, le nord,  
le midi, le sud.

## (4) Mountains :—

le Vésuve, le Caucase, l'Atlas,  
l'Etna, le Jura, etc.

(5) Infinitives, Verbal terms,  
Adjectives, and Particles used  
Substantively :—

le boire et le manger, le reçu, le beau,  
le bien, le vrai ;  
le pourquoi et le parce que, etc.

(6) Compound Nouns made up  
of Phrases :—

le parapluie, le tête-à-tête.

See also §§ 16, 17.

For names of Flowers, Countries,  
Towns, Rivers *not* ending in *e* mute,  
see B.

## Chief Exceptions.

In the following instances, the Names  
of *qualities, instruments, etc.*, have  
remained *feminine*, though applied to  
persons of the male sex :—

la caution,	la sentinelle, <i>sentinel</i>
la connaissance,	la victime,
la dupe,	la flûte,
la pratique,	la clarinette,
la recrue,	la basse-taille, etc.

A few ending in *e* mute are fem. :—

une aubépine,	une hièble,
la bourdaine,	la ronce,
une épine,	la vigne,
une ébène,	la viorne.

Most *holy days* are *fem.* (la fête  
being implied) :—

la St. Jean, la chandeleur, etc.

So also names of months compounded  
with *mi* :— la mi-août, etc.

*automne* is sometimes used in the *fem.* :—  
— une automne froide et pluvieuse.

la bise, la brise, la mousson, la tramontane.

Those used in the *Plural* are *fem.* :—

les Alpes, les Andes, les Ardennes, les  
Pyrénées, les Vosges, etc.  
also— La forêt Noire.

la garde-robe, la perce-pierre, and a  
few others.

B. FEMININE :—The Names of

(1) Females :—

la femme, la nièce, la fille, etc.  
la poule, la jument, la vache, etc.  
la jardinière, la blanchisseuse, etc.

*Chief Exceptions.*

Un témoin, un ange, and most names of professions, remain masc., even if applied to women, see § 96, *d*, Obs. 2.

(2) Moral and Mental Qualities ;  
Arts and Sciences :—

la vertu, la candeur, l'hypocrisie, etc.  
la musique, la géographie, l'histoire,  
la chimie, les mathématiques, etc.

Le courage, le vice [vitium], l'égoïsme, etc., are *masc.* on account of their termination (see III.); or derivation (see I, 2).

(3) Flowers and Fruits ending in *e* mute :—

la tulipe, la giroflée, la noisette,  
la poire, la mûre, la fraise, etc.  
also— la noix.

Most of those *not ending in e* mute are *masc.* :—

le lis, l'œillet, le nénufar, le dahlia ;  
un ananas, le raisin, le citron, etc.  
also— le chèvrefeuille, le narcisse.

(4) Most Countries, Towns, and  
Rivers, ending in *e* mute :—

la Grande-Bretagne, la Suisse, etc.  
Rome, la Haye, la Mecque, etc.  
also— la Vera Cruz.  
la Seine, la Tamise, la Meuse, etc.  
also— la Bérésina, la Néva.

Most of those *not ending in e* mute are *masc.* :—

le Portugal, le Danemark, le Japon, etc.  
Paris, Berlin, le Mans, etc.  
le Nil, le Volga, le Rhin, le Po, etc

Thus also, though *ending in e* mute :—

le Bengale, le Hanovre, le Mexique,  
le Péloponnèse, le Maine ; Devonshire  
(and all in -shire), le Hâvre,  
le Danube, l'Ebre, le Rhône,  
le Gange, le Tage, le Tibre.

C. Common are the following Names of Persons, which may be either male or female :—

un (une) enfant (but *always Masculine* in the *Plural*), un (une) artiste,  
un (une) camarade, un (une) esclave, un (une) élève.

## 100

III.—*The Gender determined by the TERMINATION :—*

## A. MASCULINE :—

- (1) Nouns ending in a
- sounded vowel*
- or
- diphthong*
- :—

le tréma, le thé, le cri, le numéro,  
un écu, un essai, un étai,  
le chapeau, le jeu, le cou,  
un emploi, un ennui, etc.

- (2) Nouns ending in a
- consonant*
- :—

(b, c, d, g, h, l, p, q, z, are Masc. without exceptions.)  
le nabob, le sac, le pied, le joug,  
le luth, le sol, le coup, le coq, le nez.  
le cerf, un essaim, un examen, le cuir,  
le bas, le jet, le faix, etc.  
le jardinier, le facteur, le sécateur,  
and all in -eur denoting persons or instruments.

- (3) Nouns ending in a
- nasal sound*
- :—

le plan, le sang, un instant ;  
le temps, le chien, le serment ;  
le serin, l'instinct, le train ;  
le son, le poison, le tronc, le plomb ;  
le parfum, le thym, etc.

Also a few *concrete* Nouns in

-ion, -çon, -son :—

le scorpion, le glaçon, le papillon, etc.

- (4) Nouns ending in

-aire [-arium, -arius] ;  
-age [-aticum], -ège [-egium] ;  
-acle [-aculum] ;  
-ice [-itium, -icium], -iste [-ista] ;  
-asme [-asmus], -isme [-isma, -isnius] ;  
-ème, -ôme :—

le dictionnaire, le voyage, le cortège,  
le miracle, le supplice, le dentiste,  
l'enthousiasme, le christianisme,  
le baptême, le fantôme, etc.

*Chief Exceptions.*

*N.B.*—It will be seen that in most exceptions *derivation* has prevailed over *termination* :—

la villa [villa], la vertu [virtutem],  
la fourmi [formica], la foi [fides],  
la merci [merces], la loi [lex],  
la tribu [tribus], la paroi [paries]. \  
la glu [gluten],

*Abstract Nouns ending in té, tié, are Feminine*, see B, 4.

la clef, la nef, la soif ;  
la chair, la cour, la cuiller, la mer, la tour ;  
la dot, la forêt, la hart, la mort, la nuit, la part, la jument ;  
la brebis, une oasis, la souris, la vis, la fois ;  
la croix, la chaux, la faux, la noix, la paix, la poix, la perdrix, la toux.

*Abstract Nouns in -eur are Feminine* (see B, 5, and I. 1).

la dent [dentem], la gent [gentem],  
la main [manus], la faim [fames],  
la fin [finis],  
la jument [jumentum].

Most Nouns in -ion, -çon, -son are *Feminine* (see B, 5).

L'affaire, la chaire, la grammaire, la paire,  
Les ambages, la cage [caven], l'image [imago], la page [pagina], la rage [rabiem], la plage [plaga], are *fem.* on account of their *derivation*.

*Abstract Nouns in -ice derived from Lat. nouns in -itia and -is* [ex. le calice] are *fem.* :—

la débacle, la justice, la matrice, etc.  
la crème.

## I. FEMININE :—

(1) Nouns ending in *e* mute preceded by a vowel or diphthong :—

une année, la vie, la vue ;  
la raie, la soie, la roue, la pluie.

(2) Nouns ending in *e* mute preceded by a double consonant :—

la salle, la selle, la bataille,  
la citrouille, la flamme, la personne,  
la guerre, la terrasse, la botte, la lutte.

(3) Nouns ending in *-ance, -ence* [antia, entia] ; *-ace, -ice, [-cia, -tia, -cies, -atio], -ade* ;

*-ude [-udo], -une [-una], -ure [ure] ; -ière [-aria], oire [-oria] :—*

la constance, la présence, la défense ;  
la face, l'audace, la préface ;  
la justice, la malice, la salade ;

la mansuétude, la lune, la culture ;  
la lumière, la mémoire, une écritoire  
[though fr. Lat. scriptorium].

(4) Nouns ending in *-té [tas], -tié [-tia] :—*

la pitié, la pitié, l'amitié.

(5) Nouns terminating in the consonant-endings *-eur, [-or, -os], and ion, son, çon [-onem] :—*

la douleur, la peur, la fleur, etc. ;  
la nation, la passion ;  
la chanson, la maison ;  
la leçon ; la rançon.

*Principal Exceptions.*

Those derived from Lat. masc. neuter Nouns in *-us, -um* are *masc.*, see I. 2 :—

le génie [genius], le musée [museum],  
le trophée, un incendie [incendium],  
un amphibie [ἀμφίβιος] ; le foie  
[ficatum], le parapluie (see II. 6).

In most of the following derivation has prevailed :—

le codicille, intervalle, libelle, violoncelle,  
le beurre, lierre, leurre, tonnerre, verre,  
le cimetière, parterre,  
le carrosse, le colosse, le squelette.

le silence [silentium],

un espace [spatium].

Le calice, l'appendice, and those not derived from Latin *-itia, -ix*, are *masc.*

le grade [gradus], le stade [στάδιον] ;

le prélude, un augure [augurium],

le mercure [mercurius],

le murmure [murmur],

le parjure [perjurium].

Those from Lat. in *-erium, -orium*, are *masc.* :—le cimetière [cœmeterium],  
l'ivoire [adj. eboreus].

*Concrete Nouns in -té are masc. :—*

l'arrêté, le comité, le comté, le côté,  
un été [though from Lat. f.], le pâté,  
le traité.

un honneur, le labeur, les pleurs,  
le bonheur, le malheur, etc. [See I. 1.]  
Names of males are, of course, *masc.*—  
le défenseur, le laboureur, etc.

*Concrete Nouns in -ion are masc. :—*  
le bastion, le poisson, le scion,  
le scorpion, un oison, le tison,  
le hameçon, le poinçon, le soupçon.

## SYNTAX.

### THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

#### FIRST CHAPTER : THE PREDICATIVE RELATION.

##### (The SUBJECT and PREDICATE.)

- 101** **INTRODUCTORY** :—(a) *The Subject* of a sentence may be a *Noun*, a *Pronoun*, an *Infinitive*, any other part of speech which can be used substantively, or a whole clause : as,

Le temps s'enfuit. Végéter c'est mourir, beaucoup penser c'est vivre. Nous travaillons. Eux seuls sont coupables. L'homme qui travaille. Le vrai seul est aimable. Le plus sûr est de partir. Le mieux est l'ennemi du bien. Le pour et le contre ont été bien pesés. Vos si et vos mais m'agacent. Que vous le fassiez ou non lui est parfaitement égal.

(b) *The Predicate* of a sentence may be (1) simply a *Verb*, or (2) a *Copulative Verb* completed by an *Adjective* or *Adverb*, a *Noun* or *Pronoun*, another *Verb*, a *Phrase*, or a *Clause* : as,

Le soleil brille. Le soleil est lumineux. Le soleil est un astre. Le ruisseau devient un torrent. Etes-vous Parisien? Je le suis. Nous ne sommes que trois. Espérer c'est jouir! Elles sont à plaindre. Elle est souffrante aujourd'hui. Les blés sont en fleur. Le moment du péril est celui du courage. Je suis d'avis qu'il parte.

*Observation.* The *Copula* may be omitted: Quel dévouement que le vôtre! Bienheureux ceux qui n'ont pas de soucis! A quoi bon tous nos arts?

#### A.—AGREEMENT OF THE PREDICATE WITH ITS SUBJECT.

##### RÉSUMÉ.

**GENERAL RULE** :—Agreement in *Number* and *Person*.

**SPECIAL RULES** :—

1. Agreement with a *Simple Subject* :—

- (a) with *il* }
- (b) with *ce* }

*Grammatical subjects.*

- (c) with a *Collective Noun* or *Adverb of Quantity*.

2. Agreement with an *Enlarged* or *Composite Subject* :—

- (a) a *Collective Noun* + *Genitive Plural* ;
- (b) two or more *Nouns* joined by *et* ;
- (c) „ „ joined by *ou*, *ni* . *ui* ;

*Observation 1.*—Subj. of different pers.

*Observation 2.*—Subj. linked by *comme*, *ainsi que*, etc.

- (d) Subjects *synonymous*, *gradated*, or *recapitulated* ; Predicate-complement a *Noun*.

## GENERAL RULE.

- 102** A Verb-Predicate agrees in Number and Person with its Subject : as,

Je suis le valet, et vous êtes le maître.	<i>I am the servant, and you are the master.</i>
Le tonnerre gronde, et les éclairs sillonnent les nuages.	<i>The thunder roars, and the lightnings furrow the clouds.</i>
C'est moi qui l'ai fait.	<i>I have done it.</i>
Ce sont eux qui l'ont dit (cp. § 13).	<i>They have said it.</i>

## SPECIAL RULES OF AGREEMENT :

- 103** 1. Agreement with a *SIMPLE SUBJECT* : as,

(a) If the Neutral **ce** is the *grammatical Subject*, the Verb agrees with it and not with the *logical Subject*, unless it is in *third pers. plur.* : as,

C'est nous qui le disons.	<i>It is we who say it.</i>
C'est vous qui serez punis.	<i>It is you who will be punished.</i>
Ce furent les Phéniciens qui, les premiers, inventèrent l'écriture.	<i>It was the Phœnicians who first invented writing.</i>
Sont-ce là vos livres ?—Ce les sont.	<i>Are these your books ?—They are.</i>

*Observation.* Agreement by *attraction* occurs especially when Subject and Complement are convertible terms : as,

L'effet du commerce sont les richesses ; *The result of commerce is wealth.*  
i.e. Les richesses sont l'effet du commerce.

(b) If the *Impersonal Pron.* **il** is the grammatical subject, the Verb is always in the *Singular* : as,

Il court des bruits désavantageux sur son compte.	<i>There are damaging rumours concerning him.</i>
---	---

(c) If a *Collective Noun* or an *Adverb of quantity* is the subject, the Verb generally agrees with the *Grammatical* rather than with the *real (logical)* Number of its subject : as,

Le peuple juif est dispersé par toute la terre.	<i>The Jewish people are dispersed all over the earth.</i>
---	--

*Observation.*—Agreement by *Synesis* occurs in French, but is much less common than in English : as,

La plupart croient que le bonheur est dans la richesse.

## 104 2. Agreement with an *ENLARGED OR COMPOSITE SUBJECT*.

(a) If a *Collective Noun Singular*, qualified by a Noun in the *Genitive Plural*, is the Subject, the Verb may be put either in the *Singular or Plural*, according as one or the other carries the idea of the real subject: as,

**La multitude** des étoiles étonne    *The multitude of stars astonishes*  
notre imagination.                      *our imagination.*

Une multitude de passions divi-    *A great many passions divide*  
sent les hommes.                      *men.*

Comparing the above examples it is evident that what strikes our imagination is the *vast number* (myriads) of the stars, and that what divides men is their *many passions*. As a rule it will be found that the *Collective Noun* carries the meaning when it is preceded by the *Definite Article* or *Determinative Pronoun*.

*Observation.*—The same rule holds good with *Indefinite Numerals or Pronouns*, followed by a *Genitive Plural*: as,

Le peu d'amis qu'il a prouve son mauvais    *The scarcity of his friends is in itself a*  
caractère.    *proof of his bad character.*

Le peu d'amis qu'il a sont parvenus à le    *His few friends have succeeded in get-*  
tirer d'affaire.                                      *ting him out of the scrape.*

(b) If *two or more Noun-terms* linked by *et* (expressed or implied) form the joint Subject, the Verb is put in the *Plural*: as,

La force, la santé, la joie    *Strength, health, joy will vanish*  
s'évanouiront comme un    *like a fine spring.*  
beau printemps.

If the component parts of the Subject are of different persons, the Verb must agree with the person that has the priority: the *first* before the *second* or *third*; and the *second* before the *third*; as a rule such a *Composite Subject* will be recapitulated by **nous** or **vous**: as,

Votre frère et moi, (nous)    *Your brother and I alone miracu-*  
échappâmes seuls par mi-    *lously escaped.*  
racle.

**Vous** et ce jeune homme, (vous)    *You and this young man fancy*  
croyez tout savoir.                      *you know everything.*

(c) If *two or more terms* linked by **ou**, or **ni . . . ni**, form the Subject, the Verb may be either in the *Singular or Plural*, according as they convey the idea of an *alternative* (i.e. one necessarily excluding the other), or of *joint action*: as,

Ni l'un ni l'autre ne sera    *Neither will (only one can) be*  
nommé ambassadeur auprès de    *appointed ambassador to the*  
la Sublime Porte.                      *Sublime Porte.*

Ni l'or ni la grandeur ne nous rendent heureux.	<i>Neither gold nor greatness makes us happy (both are unable).</i>
Le bien ou le mal se moisonne, selon qu'on sème ou le mal ou le bien.	<i>Either good or evil is reaped, according as one sows good or evil.</i>
Le temps ou la mort sont nos remèdes.	<i>Time or death is our remedy.</i>

*Observation 1.* If the Subjects are of *different persons*, the use of the *Plural* becomes imperative : as,

Vous ou moi, (nous) le ferons.

*Either you or I shall do it.*

*Observation 2.*—If the second term of the Subject is linked to the first by *comme*, as ; *de même que*, just as ; *ainsi que*, aussi bien que, as well as ; the Verb agrees either with the first, or with both, according as the first or both carry the main idea of the Subject ; as,

L'éléphant, comme le castor, aime la société de ses semblables. *The elephant likes to consort with his equals, so (as) does the beaver.*

Bacchus, ainsi qu'Hercule, étaient reconnus pour demi-dieux. *Both Bacchus and Hercules were recognised as demi-gods.*

(d) If the terms of a Composite Subject are *Synonymous*, if they form a kind of *gradation*, or if they are *recapitulated* by **tout, rien, chacun, aucun, nul**, etc., the Verb agrees with the *Nearer Subject* only : as,

Son courage, son intrépidité, nous étonne. *His courage, his intrepidity, astonishes us.*

Une seule parole, un sourire gracieux, un seul regard suffit. *A single word, a graceful smile, nay, a single look suffices.*

Remords, crainte, périls, rien ne m'a retenue. *Remorse, fear, perils, nothing has been able to stop me.*

For the agreement of the Adjective used as Predicative Complement, see Synt. of Adj. § 122 ; for the Pres. Part., see § 146 ; for the Past Part., see §§ 147–150.

**105** If the *Predicate-Complement* is a *Noun*, the agreement in Gender and Number with the subject can be effected only in so far as the form of the Noun and the meaning of the whole sentence will allow : as,

La veuve fut déclarée régente du royaume.

La rime est une esclave qui ne doit qu'obéir.

but — Mlle. de Schurmann était peintre, musicienne, graveur, sculpteur, philosophe, géomètre, théologienne même ; see § 95.

Il a été la victime de la bonne foi. La sagesse est un trésor.

Les lois, les mœurs antiques sont l'appui de l'État.

Vous (Mr. Harpagon) êtes toute raison.

[Cp. Lat. Captivi militum præda fuerunt.—Liv. 21. 15.]

## B.—INVERSION OF SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

## RÉSUMÉ.

## I. Inversion in INTERROGATIVE Sentences.

## (a) The Subject a Conjunctive Pers. Pronoun :—

1. *Simple* (absolute) Interrogation ; 2. *Relative Interrogation*.

## (b) The Subject a Noun :—

1. *Simple* (absolute) Interrogation ;2. *Relative Interrogation* with an *intransit.* Verb.*Observation*.—With *reflexive* Verb.3. *Relative Interrogation* with a *transit.* Verb.

## II. Inversion in AFFIRMATIVE Sentences.

(a) The *Interrogative construction* ;(b) *Simple Inversion* of Verb and Subject—whether Noun or Pers. Pronoun ;(c) *Simple Inversion* of Verb and Noun-Subject only,after (1) *Predicative Complement* ; (2) *Impersonal Pronoun* ;(3) *Certain Adverbs* ; (4) *Relat. Pronouns and Subordinate Conjunctions*.*Observation*.—Inversion (1) after certain Verbs ; (2) in *Optative Clauses*.

106

## I.—INVERSION IN INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

(For the periphrastic construction with *est-ce que*, see § 57.)(a) *THE SUBJECT A CONJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUN* or *CE* : The Subject is placed after the Verb in(1) *SIMPLE Interrogation* : *i.e.* without *Interrogative Pron.* or *Adverb* : as,

Viendrez-vous aujourd'hui ?

Est-ce lui qui a fait cela ?

Est-il arrivé ce matin ?

Vous portez-vous bien ?

(2) *RELATIVE Interrogation* : *i.e.* with an *Interrogative Pron.* or *Adverb* : as,

Quand viendrez-vous ?

Qu'est-ce que c'est ?

Depuis quand est-il arrivé ?

Où vous êtes-vous adressé ?

'A quelle heure' se couche-t-on ?

(b) *THE SUBJECT A NOUN* :(1) *SIMPLE Interrogation* : in this case the *Subject* is placed *first*, and repeated in the form of a Pers. Pron. of the same number and gender : as,

Votre ami viendra-t-il ?

Les couleurs lui conviennent-ils ?

La France n'est-elle pas très fertile ?

Sa sœur se porte-elle bien ?

(2) *RELATIVE Interrogation* with Verbs used without Object or Complement ; in this case two constructions are possible :—*i.e.* either by *Inversion* or by the *Repetition* of the Noun-Subject in the form of a Pronoun : as,

Quand viendra **votre ami**? or Quand **votre ami** viendra-t-il?  
 À quelle heure partira **le train**? or  
 À quelle heure **le train** partira-t-il?

*Observation 1.*—Only if the Object is a *Reflexive Pron.* are both constructions admissible:  
 Quand **se décidera son sort**? or Quand **son sort** se décidera-t-il?

*Observation 2.*—With *pourquoi*, only the second construction is admissible:  
 Pourquoi **le train** ne partira-t-il pas?

(3) *Relative Interrogation* with Verbs having an Object (other than a *Reflexive Pron.*) or Complement; in this case only one construction is possible—viz. *Repetition* of the Noun in the form of a *Pers. Pron.*: as,

Quand **votre ami** finira-t-il son thème?  
 À quelle heure **le train** arrivera-t-il à Paris?

## II.—INVERSION IN AFFIRMATIVE SENTENCES.

(a) *THE INTERROGATIVE CONSTRUCTION* (see § 106); i.e.

(1) placing the *Conjunctive-Pers.-Pronoun-Subject* after the Verb; or

(2) placing the *Noun-Subject* before the Verb, and repeating it after the Verb in the form of a corresponding *Pers. Pronoun*, as a rule (but not always), is used in Sentences introduced by one of the following *Adverbial Conjunctions*:—

aussi, consequently; accordingly.	encore, even then.
aussi bien, besides; anyhow.	peut-être, perhaps; may be.
à peine, hardly; scarcely.	toujours, at any rate; anyhow.
à plus forte	tout au plus, at most.
raison, } (a fortiori).	en vain, }
au moins, at least;	vainement, } in vain; vainly.
du moins, at all events.	

(1) Peut-être viendra-t-il! Perhaps he will come.  
 À peine fut-il parti, que . . . Hardly had he started, when . . .  
 Cet homme ne travaille pas, That man does not work, consequently  
 aussi est-il dans la misère. he is in distress.

(2) Peut-être votre ami viendra-t-il!  
 À peine le roi fut-il parti, que . . .  
 Cet homme ne travaille pas, aussi sa famille est-elle pauvre.

*Observation 1.*—This inversion is optional:—

À peine nous sortions des murs de Trezène (Racine).  
 En vain on donna le signal de l'assaut (Voltaire).

*Observation 2.*—In *Conditional* and *Concessive* Clauses the Conjunction may be rendered by inversion:

Un homme vous flatte-t-il (= si un h. vous flatte), ne vous y fiez pas.

(b) *THE SIMPLE INVERSION*, i.e. placing the *Subject*—whether a *Noun* or *Conj. Pers. Pron.*—after the *VERB*, is used in *Parenthetical Clauses* inserted within or after a quotation: as,

“Si je n’étais pas Alexandre,” dit le roi, “je voudrais être Diogène.”

“Ah, Monsieur,” dit-il, “j’en suis désespéré.”

“Votre compassion,” lui répondit l’arbuste, “part d’un bon naturel.”

“Je suis à vous dans un moment,” répondit-il.

(c) *THE SIMPLE INVERSION*, i.e. placing the *Noun-Subject*—or any other part of speech except the *Conj.-Pers.-Pronoun*—after the *VERB*, occurs after

*Intransitive, Reflexive, and Passive Verbs*, in sentences introduced

(1) by an emphatic *Predicative Complement*: as,

Telle fut la fin de ce grand homme.

Bienheureux sont ceux qui ont faim et soif de la justice.

(2) by an *Impersonal Pronoun*: as,

Il lui est arrivé un grand malheur. Il lui est né un fils.

(3) by one of the following *Adverbs*:—

ici, là, *here, there.*

déjà, *already.*

aussitôt, *immediately.*

de là, *hence.*

tant, *so much.*

bientôt, *soon.*

là dessus, *thereupon.*

ainsi, *thus.*

tout-à-coup, *suddenly.*

Ainsi périt le dernier des Tarquins.

*Thus died the last of the Tarquins.*

Tout à coup s’élève une tempête furieuse.

*Suddenly there arose a furious storm.*

De là sont venues les guerres civiles.

*Hence arose the civil wars.*

Thus after *Adverbial Phrases*: as,

En Italie règne un printemps éternel.

*In Italy there prevails an everlasting spring.*

Ce soir aura lieu une brillante illumination.

*This evening there will be a brilliant illumination.*

The inversion after these *Adverbs* is optional.

(4) by a *Relative Pronoun* or a *Subordinate Conjunction*, when the *Subject*, on account of its adjuncts, is longer than the *Verb*: as,

Le temps et l’argent que coûte l’éducation sont toujours bien employés.

*Time and money spent on education are always well employed.*

Quand arriva à Paris la nouvelle de la déroute de l'armée française. *When the news of the rout of the French army arrived in Paris.*

*Observation 1.*—For the sake of linking a sentence more closely to the preceding sentence, the following verbs are frequently placed *first* :—

apparaître, to appear.	rester, to remain.	venir, to come,
entrer, to enter.	suivre, to follow.	survenir, to occur.

Also after *être* in a few idiomatic phrases, and in Enumerations: as,

Venait ensuite la noblesse en habit noir. N'est pas poète qui veut.  
Reste à savoir s'il viendra.

Thus also in *official language*, i.e. in *decrees, resolutions*, etc.: as,

Sont éligibles: tous les citoyens de vingt ans révolus.

*Observation 2.*—The Verb is likewise placed first in *optative clauses* :—

Vive la reine !	Long live the Queen !	but— Qu'elle vive !
Périssent les Troyens !	May the Trojans perish !	Qu'ils périssent !
Ira qui voudra !	Let him go who likes !	Que je meure ! etc.

## C.—MOODS AND TENSES.

### RÉSUMÉ.

SYNOPTIC TABLE of the Tenses of the Indicative.

#### I. The *Present* Indicative

(a) has but one form in French,

(b) used in French instead of the English Pres. Perf., after *il y a*, etc.

#### II. The *Past* Tenses.

GENERAL RULE :—Imperfect and Preterite compared.

SPECIAL RULES :—

(a) the *Imperfect* ;

answering to the questions—

(1) what used to be done ?

(2) what was going on along with . . ?

(3) what was already in progress ?

(b) the *Preterite* ;

answering to the questions—

(1) what occurred ?

(2) what followed ?

(3) what incident intervened ?

*Observation 1.*—Impf. after *si*. *Observation 2.*—Fr. Impf. for English Plupf.

(c) the *Imperfect* describes accessory circumstances.

(c) the *Preterite* narrates successive facts.

*Observation.*—Impf. used in *dependent Clauses* and in *quotations*.

(e) The *Past Indefinite* (Pres. Perf.) used

(1) answering to the English Pres. Perf. ;

(2) answering to the English *Pérfect*.

Extract illustrating the uses of Impf., Pret., and Pres. Perf.

(f) (1) *Plusqueparfait*, and (2) *Antérieur* compared.

*Observation.*—*Antérieur* preferred after *Conjunctions* of time.

#### III. The *Future* Tenses (Pres. and Perf.)

(a) used as in English, except after *Conjunctions* of time ;

(b) in *idiomatic phrases*, answering to the English Pres.

*Observation 1.*—Future after *si*, meaning *whether*.

*Observation 2.*—Future expressing an *Imperative*.

*Observn. 3, 4.*—Future immediate, expressed by *aller*, *devoir*.

*Observation 5.*—Future Perf., expressing probability.

#### IV. The *Conditional*

(a) in *Principal Clauses*, to express (1) *Contingency*, (2) *Deference* or *Reservation* ;

(b) in *Dependent Clauses* = Fut. Impf.

*Observation.*—*Conditional* in *Concessive Clauses*.

#### V. The Pres. and Impf. *Conjunctive* in *Principal Clauses*, if

(a) *Optative* or *Concessive* ;

(b) *Dubitative* ; (c) *Conditional*.

#### VI. The *Imperative*, used as in English.

*Observation 1.*—First pers. plur., used for *singular*.

*Observation 2.*—*Imperative* expressed by the *Indicat.* or *Infinitive*.

# A SYNOPSIS TABLE OF THE TENSES—ENGLISH, FRENCH, AND LATIN.

The Relations of the Indicative Tenses may be thus stated :—  
*Writing*, as an action, is to me—

	ENGLISH.	FRENCH.	LATIN.
I.			
(a) simply <i>Present</i> —	<i>I write,</i>	j'écris ;	scribo.
(b) now        ,,	<i>I am writing,</i>		
(c) formerly   ,,	<i>I was writing,</i>		
(d) hereafter  ,,	<i>I shall write,</i>		
II.			
(a) simply <i>Past</i> —	<i>I wrote,</i>	j'écrivis ;	} scripsi.
(b) now        ,,	<i>I have written,</i>	j'ai écrit ;	
(c) formerly   ,,	<i>I have been writing,</i>	j'avais écrit ;	} scripseram.
(d) hereafter  ,,	<i>I had written</i>	j'eus écrit ;	
	<i>I had been writing,</i>	j'aurai écrit ;	scripsero.
III.			
(a) simply <i>Future</i> —	<i>I shall write,</i>	j'écirai ;	scribam.
	<i>I shall be writing,</i>		
(b) now        ,,	<i>I am about to write,</i>	je vais écrire ;	scripturus sum
(c) formerly   ,,	<i>I was about to write,</i>	j'allais écrire ;	scripturus eram
(d) hereafter  ,,	<i>I shall be about to write.</i>	je serai en train d'écrire ;	scripturus ero.

From the above Table it will be seen that French, as compared with English, is deficient in special forms to express *continuous* action ; as, *I have (had, etc.) been writing* ; *I shall be writing*.

## I.—THE PRESENT INDICATIVE.

(a) As already noticed in the Synoptic Table of Tenses, the French language has, like Latin, but one form to express the different relations of the Present :—

Le soleil luit.

{ *The sun shines (does shine).*  
  *The sun is shining.*

Il me parle.

*He is speaking to me.*

Il parle plusieurs langues.

*He speaks several languages.*

J'apprends que vous devez partir  
ce soir.

*I hear (that) you are to leave  
this evening.*

(b) With *il y a . . . . que, voilà . . . . que, depuis que*, the French PRESENT takes the place of the English PRESENT PERFECT: as,

*Voilà deux jours que cela continue.* That has been going on now for two days.

*Il y a trois mois que (= depuis que) je suis ici.* I have been here these three months.

[Comp. Lat., *Jam pridem cupio Alexandriam visere*, with French:—*Il y a longtemps que je désire visiter A.*, and English:—*I have long been desirous to visit Alexandria.*]

Observation.—The PRESENT is also occasionally used to denote an event, which, though Past or Future, is still or already vividly present to the mind:—

Mais hier il m'aborde, et me prenant la main,  
Ah, Monsieur, m'a-t-il dit, je vous attends demain (Boileau).

110

## II.—PAST TENSES.

## GENERAL PRINCIPLES:

The IMPERFECT and PRETERITE compared.

The Imperfect causes the mind to dwell upon a *state of things* at some period in the past; The Preterite denotes the *transition* from one state to another, and carries on the recital.

The Imperfect expresses *simultaneousness*; the Preterite expresses *succession*.

The Imperfect *describes*; the Preterite *relates*.

It is not so much the duration which makes the difference, as the fact of the writer conceiving an action from two different points of view. The same fact can be represented by either tense; but the *Imperfect* displays the fact as an *extended surface*, the *Preterite* brings it into *one focus*, and records it as a *unit* in the sum of facts; for to *relate* is to *tell*—(A. Vinet).

## SPECIAL RULES:

(a) The IMPERFECT is used to *describe* a state of things or mode of existence in the past; habits, customs, *i.e.* actions usually or repeatedly done; it answers the questions:—

(1) *What used to be done at some indefinite past time?* as,

Les sciences **florissaient** en Chine à une époque fort reculée.

Les anciens Romains **brûlaient** leurs morts.

(b) The PRETERITE is used to *narrate* accomplished actions absolutely, *i.e.* irrespectively of their duration or frequency, and independently of other events present or past; it answers the questions:—

(1) *What occurred incidentally at some particular time?* as,

César **écrivit** au sénat: Je **vins**, je **vis**, je **vainquis**.

Les Romains **brûlèrent** Corinthe.

(2) *What was going on along with another action ? as,*

Pendant que Rome **conquér**ait l'univers, il y **avait** dans ses murailles une guerre cachée.

Nous **attaquâmes** l'ennemi qui se retirait.

La pluie tombait, et le tonnerre commençait à gronder.

Il me **saluait** quand il me voyait.

(2) *What followed upon, or resulted from, another action ? as,*

Il lut son discours, et les Jacobins le **couvrirent** d'applaudissements.

Nous **attaquâmes** l'ennemi qui se **retira**.

Une tuile lui tomba sur la tête et le tua.

Il me **salua** lorsqu'il me vit.

(3) *What was already in progress when another incident occurred ? as,*

Il **était** nuit quand nous **arrivâmes** à l'entrée du défilé.

Les Normands **parlaient** la langue française à l'époque où ils **débarquèrent** en Angleterre.

Cette nouvelle, que tout le monde **savait** (*knew*) déjà depuis longtemps, je ne la **sus** (*heard*) que hier soir par le télégraphe.

(3) *What incident intervened when another action or state was already in progress ? as,*

*Observation 1.*—Here may be classed the use of the IMPERFECT to describe an action or state of things in progress or intended, but not accomplished (as the term IMPERFECT implies), in contradistinction to the PRETERITE, which always denotes an accomplished fact :—

Ce poète **mourait** de faim, si on ne l'eût secouru.

Je **devais** comparaître le lendemain.

*I was to appear on the next day.*

Le poète Gilbert **mourut** à l'hôpital.

Je **dus** comparaître devant le juge.

*I had to appear before the judge.*

This is especially the case in clauses introduced by *si, when, if*; because the action is not considered as accomplished, but only supposed :—

S'il **travaillait**, il ne s'ennuierait pas.

*Observation 2.*—Just as, according to § 109 (*b*), the *Present* stands for the English *Perfect* after *il y a, que, depuis . . . que*, so the *Fr. Impf.* stands for the English *Plupf.* : as,

Un hermite qui **vivait** depuis plus de trente ans tout seul.

*A hermit who had been living more than thirty years quite alone.*

(c) The IMPERFECT is further used to describe accessory circumstances bearing upon the quality, character, nature (colour, shape, size, etc.) of persons, things, or events mentioned in the principal clause :—

(d) The PRETERITE is further used to enumerate successive facts, and, whenever the narrative of these has been interrupted by the mention of accessory circumstances, to resume and carry on the narrative of further events :—

Je **quittai** Venise le 28, et je **m'embarquai** à dix heures du soir pour me rendre en terre ferme ; le vent de sud-est **soufflait** assez

pour enfler la voile, pas assez pour troubler la mer ; à mesure que la barque s'éloignait, je **voyais** s'enfoncer sous l'horizon les lumières de Venise. Les cloches des hospices se **faisaient** entendre ; nous **approchâmes** assez d'une de ces retraites pour entrevoir des moines qui **regardaient** passer notre gondole ; ils **avaient** l'air de vieux nautonniers rentrés au port après de longues traverses. ∞

*Observation 1.*—In strict accordance with these principles, the IMPERFECT is used almost invariably in *Dependent* clauses when the Principal clause contains a verb of *thinking, feeling, saying, etc.*, and in *quotations* :—

Osmân me fit demander d'où je **venais**, où j'allais, ce que je **voulais**?—Je **répondis** que j'allais en pèlerinage à Jérusalem.

Les Mexicains, effrayés de la détonation des armes à feu, **crurent** que les Espagnols **étaient** des divinités armées du tonnerre.

*Observation 2.*—The same rule holds good with *quotations* from *letters, speeches, documents, etc.*

Je **reçus** sa lettre : il me **pria**t de lui donner de mes nouvelles.

*Observation 3.*—To resume, the *Imparfait* answers the following different forms of English :—

*He used (was wont) to say,  
He kept on saying; he would say; } = Il disait.  
He was saying.*

(e) The PAST INDEFINITE (PRESENT PERFECT) expresses, as its composition (*Present of Auxiliary Verb + Perf. Participle*) implies, a fact *now* past (Synoptic Table, II. *b*) ; it is used—

(1) like the English PRESENT PERFECT, to denote an action accomplished in a *period not yet elapsed at the time of speaking* : as,

Il **a fait** bien chaud aujourd'hui *It has been very warm to-day (this*  
(cette semaine, etc.) *week).*

Il y a longtemps que je ne **'ai vu**. *I have not seen him for a long time.*

(2) contrary to English usage, to denote an action, *the result of which, rather than the action itself, is present to the mind* ; in familiar conversation and correspondence it is almost exclusively used to express past events : as,

Je travaillais au jardin ; au *I was working in the garden ; at the*  
premier coup de marteau j'**ai** *first knock at the door I ran so*  
**couru** si vite que je **suis** *quickly that I fell down on the*  
**tombé** en chemin. *way.*

De quoi **est-il mort** ?— *What did he die of ?—*

Il **est mort** d'une fluxion de *He died of an inflammation of the*  
poitrine. *lungs.*

*Observation.*—For the English Present Perfect rendered by the French Present after *il y a*, etc., see § 189 (b).

The following extract from Volney will illustrate the contrast between IMPARFAIT, PRÉTÉRIT and INDÉFINI better than any detached sentences could do :—

## LES RUINES DE PALMYRE.

Description  
of scenery.

Le soleil **venait** de se coucher ; un bandeau rougeâtre **marquait** encore sa trace à l'horizon lointain des monts de la Syrie ; la pleine lune, à l'orient, s'**élevait** sur un fond bleuâtre ; le ciel **était** pur, l'air calme et serein ; l'éclat mourant du jour **tempérait** l'horreur des ténèbres . . . l'ombre **croissait**, et déjà mes regards ne **distinguaient** plus que les fantômes blanchâtres des colonnes et des murs . . .

Result.

Ces lieux solitaires, cette soirée paisible, cette scène majestueuse, **imprimèrent** à mon esprit un recueillement religieux. L'aspect d'une grande cité déserte, la mémoire des temps passés, la comparaison de l'état présent, tout **éleva** mon cœur à de hautes pensées.

Narrative of  
successive  
actions car-  
ried on.

Je m'**assis** sur le tronc d'une colonne, je m'**abandonnai** à une rêverie profonde. Et l'histoire des temps passés se **retraca** vivement à ma pensée, je me **rappelai** ces siècles anciens où vingt peuples anciens **existaient** dans ces contrées ; je me **peignis** l'Assyrie sur les rives du Tigre . . . Cette Syrie, me **disais-je**,\* aujourd'hui presque dépeuplée, **comptait** alors cent villes puissantes . . .

Result of  
past action  
viewed from  
the present.

Ah, que **sont devenus** ces âges d'abondance et de vie ? Que **sont devenues** tant de brillantes créations de la main de l'homme ? Les temples se **sont écroulés**, les palais **sont renversés** . . .

\* Me dis-je (Preterite) would be quite correct here ; with this difference, however, that it would imply that the thought struck him *then*, whilst the Imparfait denotes that it gradually arose *along with* the ideas mentioned before.

(f) The PLUSQUEPARFAIT and PASSÉ ANTÉRIEUR correspond to the English PLUPERFECT : both express *action past in a time itself past*, but with the same distinction between the two as already established between IMPARFAIT and PRÉTÉRIT, from which they are severally derived, *i.e.*

(1) the PLUSQUEPARFAIT denotes actions *usually done or already in progress*,

whilst (2) the PASSÉ ANTÉRIEUR denotes *single actions just accomplished* ; both at a period itself past : as,

Quand j'**avais** dîné, j'allais me promener. *Whenever I had dined, I used to go for a walk.*

Lorsque j'**eus** dîné, j'allai me promener. *When I had dined, I went for a walk.*

S'il **avait travaillé**,\* il serait riche maintenant. *If he had worked, he would be rich now.*

Dès qu'il **eut fini**,† il partit. *As soon as he had finished, he set off.*

\* A fact not accomplished (§ 110, Obs.). † Accomplished fact.

Observation.—In accordance with this distinction, the PASSÉ ANTÉRIEUR, rather than the PLUFF., is used after *Conjunctions of Time* :—

quand, lorsque, *when* ; après que, *after* ; à peine . . . que, *hardly . . . when* ; dès que, *as soon as* ; ne . . . pas plus tôt . . . que, *no sooner . . . than*.

Elle n'eut 'pas plus tôt' appris cette nouvelle, qu'elle se mit à pleurer.



## III.—THE FUTURE TENSES.

(a) The FUTURE PRESENT and FUTURE PERFECT are used as in English to express actions expected to happen or to be accomplished at some future time ; with this difference between the two languages, that after the Conjunctions of time, **quand**, **lorsque**, *when* ; **dès que**, **aussitôt que**, *as soon as* ; **tant que**, **aussi longtemps que**, *as long as*, English usage admits of the PRESENT (Simple or Perfect) being employed instead of the FUTURE (Simple or Perfect), whilst in French the latter only may be used : as,

Quand il <b>viendra</b> , faites-le monter.	<i>When he comes, show him upstairs.</i>
Dès que j' <b>aurai fini</b> , j' <b>irai</b> vous voir.	<i>As soon as I have finished, I shall call on you.</i>
Tant que je <b>vivrai</b> . . .	<i>As long as I live . . .</i>
Tu recueilleras ce que tu <b>auras semé</b> .	<i>You will reap what you have sown.</i>

[Comp. Lat.—Ut sementem **feceris**, ita metes.]

(b) Thus also in many idiomatic phrases :—

Adviene que <b>pourra</b> .	<i>Come what may.</i>
Comme il vous <b>plaira</b> .	<i>As you like it.</i>
Rira bien qui <b>rira</b> le dernier.	<i>Let him laugh who wins.</i>
Écrive qui <b>voudra</b> .	<i>Let him write who likes.</i>

Observation 1.—After **si** the Future (or Conditional) is, as a rule, only used when **si** means *whether*, but seldom when it means *if* or *when* :—

Je ne sais pas s'il <b>viendra</b> .	<i>I don't know whether he will come.</i>
Je ne savais pas s'il <b>viendrait</b> .	<i>I did not know whether he would come.</i>

But—

S'il <b>vient</b> , il sera le bien venu.	<i>If he comes he will be welcome.</i>
S'il <b>venait</b> , il serait le bien venu.	<i>If he came he would be welcome.</i>

Observation 2.—The FUTURE PRESENT is often used to express an IMPERATIVE :—

Tu <b>respecteras</b> tes parents.	<i>Thou shalt respect thy parents.</i>
Vous <b>saurez</b> que je suis un citoyen romain.	<i>You must know that I am a Roman citizen.</i>
Vous <b>voudrez</b> bien m'excuser.	<i>Please excuse me.</i>

Observation 3.—Here may be classed the IMMEDIATE FUTURE viewed from the Present or Past :—

La marée <b>va</b> monter.	<i>The tide is about to rise.</i>
La marée <b>allait</b> monter.	<i>The tide was about to rise.</i>

Observation 4.—An action to be done, whether viewed from the Present or Past, is rendered by the Present or Past of **devoir** :—

Je <b>dois</b> aller ; je <b>devais</b> aller.	<i>I am to go ; I was to go.</i>
--	----------------------------------

Observation 5.—An action supposed to have happened may be expressed by the Future Perfect :—

Je <b>me</b> serai trahi moi-même.	<i>I probably have (must have) betrayed myself.</i>
------------------------------------	---



## IV.—THE CONDITIONAL.

## RÉSUMÉ.

✱ The Conditional in—(a) Principal Clauses—

(1) dependent on a contingency, (2) for the sake of deference.

(b) Dependent Clauses—as a Future Imperfect.

Observation.—The Conditional in Concessive Clauses.

The CONDITIONAL has two main functions ; it is used—

(a) *In Principal Clauses*—

(1) to express an Action, the accomplishment of which depends on a *condition* either expressed in a subordinate clause, or understood. Observe that the Verb in the Conditional does not itself, as the term would seem to imply, express the condition : as,

Je le récompenserais, s'il travaillait. *I should reward him if he worked.*

Je l'aurais récompensé, s'il avait travaillé. *I should have rewarded him if he had worked.*

Je me plainrais	} dans votre	} <i>I should be pleased</i>	} with your
Je me serais plu			

Je n'irais certainement pas.<sup>2</sup> *I should certainly not go.*

<sup>1</sup> The Condition expressed by an *Adverbial phrase* :— si j'étais dans votre compagnie.

<sup>2</sup> The Condition *understood* :—si j'étais à votre place.

(2) to express a *Wish, Assertion, Supposition, or Doubt, etc., with deference or reservation* : as,

Je voudrais bien vous parler en particulier. *I should like to talk to you privately.*

Je parierais qu'il est innocent. *I should wager anything that he is innocent.*

Quoi, vous pourriez . . . ? *What, you presume . . . ?*

Serait-il vrai qu'il a été élu ? *Can it be true that he has been elected ?*

Je ne saurais vous le dire. *I am afraid I cannot tell you.*

Observation 1.—Here may be classed the use of the Conditional to state *indirectly* a fact for the accuracy of which the writer declines to be responsible :—

Selon un journal du soir un incendie se serait déclaré hier au Havre ; vingt maisons auraient été consumées.

Observation 2.—The SUBJ. PLUFF. is frequently used instead of the Conditional Perf. :—  
Quiconque l'eût dit, eût (aurait) passé pour un visionnaire.

This use of the Conditional is the natural outcome of the formation of that tense, which is in strict analogy with the formation of the Future : for just as the Future is formed by—

the Infinitive + *Present of Avoir* :—

aimer + -ai, -as, -a ; -(av)ons, -(av)ez, -ont ;

so the Conditional by—

the Infinitive + *Imperfect of Avoir* :—

aimer + -(av)ais, -(av)ais, -(av)ait ; -(av)ions, -(av)iez, -(av)aient.

[Compare Max Müller's *Lectures on Language*, II., Sixth Lecture.]

(b) *In Dependent Clauses* as a FUTURE IMPERFECT, *i.e.* to express a Future contingency viewed from the Past (whilst the FUTURE PRESENT denotes a Future contingency viewed from the Present), especially after Verbs of decreeing, declaring, thinking, knowing, and the like ; as,

Je savais qu'il viendrait.

*I knew that he would come.*

(Je sais qu'il viendra.)

*(I know that he will come.)*

Le duc ordonna que le jugement  
serait prononcé.

*The duke ruled that judgment  
should be pronounced.*

(Le duc ordonne que le jugement  
sera prononcé.)

*(The duke rules that judgment  
shall be pronounced.)*

Je croyais qu'il pleuvrait.

*I thought it would rain.*

(Je crois qu'il pleuvra.)

*(I think it will rain.)*

*Observation.*—Thus also in *Concessive Clauses* :—

Je ne le croirais pas, quand même je le  
verrais, or (reversing apodosts and pro-  
tasis)—

*I should not believe it even if I saw it.*

Je le verrais que je ne le croirais pas.

*Even though I were to see it, I should not  
believe it.*

## V.—THE PRESENT AND IMPERFECT CONJUNCTIVE IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

The use of the SUBJUNCTIVE in *Principal Sentences* is limited to a few expressions (mostly ready-made phrases of an interjectional character) ; they may be classified into :—

(a) *Optative and Concessive Clauses*, *i.e.* expressing a *Wish* or *Concession* : as,

Grand bien vous fasse !

*Much good may it do you !*

Ne vous (en) déplaie !

*With all due deference to you !*

A Dieu ne plaise !

*God forbid !*

Plût à Dieu ! Dieu veuille !

*God (heaven) grant . . .*

Puissiez-vous réussir !

*May you succeed !*

Écrive qui voudra !

*Let him write who has a mind for  
it !*

Vous le voulez ?—Soit !

*You wish it ?—Be it so !*

(b) *Dubitative Clauses*, *i.e.* expressing *Doubt* or *Reservation* : as,

Que je sache [Lat. quod sciam].

*As far as I know.*

Pas que je sache.

*Not that I know of.*

Je ne sache personne qui . . .

*Nobody as far as I know . . .*

[Comp. also the German :—Ich wüsste Niemand, der . . .]



## SECOND CHAPTER: THE ATTRIBUTIVE RELATION.

**114** INTRODUCTORY :—A *Noun*, whether used as *Subject*, *Object*, or *Adjunct*, may be determined by—

- (a) an *Article*, definite, partitive, or indefinite ; see §§ 115-121 ;
- (b) an *Adjective*, possessive, demonstrative, qualifying, or numeral ; see §§ 122-124 ;
- (c) another *Noun*, without or with a *Preposition*, see § 16 ;
- (d) an *Adjective Clause*, see § 163 : as,

Les noix sont des fruits. Un ami est un trésor.

Mon ami admire ces deux châteaux neufs.

L'âge d'or, pure fiction mythologique, est le sujet favori de ce poète.

L'élève qui travaille (= laborieux) sera récompensé.

### A.—THE NOUN DETERMINED BY AN ARTICLE.

#### (USE AND OMISSION OF THE ARTICLES.)

##### RÉSUMÉ.

INTRODUCTORY :—Nouns are used

- (I.) in a *general*, (II.) in a *particular*, (III.) in a *partitive*,  
(IV.) in an *indefinite*, (V.) in an *adjectival* or *adverbial*, } Sense.

SPECIAL RULES :

I. and II. The Noun taken in a *General* or *Particular* Sense :

A Noun is used with the *Definite Article*, if it is

- (a) *Collective* or *Abstract*, (b) the Name of a *Title*,
- (c) another *Part of Speech* used substantively, (d) the Name of any *Day of the week*,
- (e) the Name of a *Country*,<sup>1</sup> etc., (f) a *Cognitive accusative*.

<sup>1</sup> *Geographical Names*, used with the *Article*, if used

(1) as *Subject* or *Direct Object*,

(2) after any *Preposition*, except *en* (or if used adjectively with *de*).

III. The Noun taken in a *Partitive* Sense :

- (a) *Determinate*, (b) *Indeterminate*.

IV. The Noun taken in an *Indefinite* Sense :

- (a) used, as in *English*, with *Indefinite Article*,
- (b) used with *Indef. Art.* in *English*, but with *Def. Art.* in *French*, if it denotes  
(1) a bodily or mental *Quality*, (2) *Price*, *Measure*, etc.,
- (c) used with *Indef. Art.* in *English*, without *Art.* in *French*, if used  
(1) in *Apposition*, (2) after a *Copulative Verb*, (3) after a *Partitive Verb*.

V. A Noun used in an *Indeterminate* Sense (*without Article*), if used—

- (a) *adjectivally* or *adverbially* :

- (1) in *apposition*, (2 and 3) as *adjectival Adjunct*,
- (4) as *adverbial Phrase*, (5) as *verbal Phrase*.

- (b) in *Enumerations*, *Proverbs*, *Titles*, *Addresses*.

Special Rules concerning the use of the *Art.* before Nouns in the *Genitive* :—

- (a) *Genitive of the Possessor*, (b) *Genitive of Quality*.

**115** **INTRODUCTORY** : — The use or omission of the Article before a Noun depends on the more or less limited sense in which the Noun is taken ; it is, therefore, indispensable first of all to distinguish the different ways in which the same Noun may be used :—

(I.) in a *General* sense, implying the whole class or species if the Noun is *concrete*, or the whole idea if it is *abstract* : as,

Le fer ; l'homme ; les hommes ;	<i>Iron ; man ; men ; mankind.</i>
La musique ; la vertu.	<i>Music ; virtue.</i>

(II.) in a *Particular* or *Individual* sense, qualified (limited) by an *Adjunct*, either expressed or understood : as,

Le meilleur fer ; l'honnête homme.	<i>The best iron ; the honest man.</i>
La vertu de Socrate.	<i>The virtue of Socrates.</i>

(III.) in a *Partitive* sense, implying only a part or fraction of a whole : as,

Du fer ; des hommes.	<i>Some (any) iron ; some (any) men.</i>
----------------------	--

(IV.) in an *Indefinite* sense, implying a single individual of a class : as,

Un homme ; une femme.	<i>A man ; a woman.</i>
-----------------------	-------------------------

(V.) in an *Adjectival* or *Adverbial* sense, qualifying (limiting) another Noun or a Verb : as,

La chaîne de fer ; habits d'homme.	<i>The iron chain ; men's clothing.</i>
Un trait de vertu (= vertueux).	<i>A virtuous deed.</i>
Agir avec sagesse (= sagement).	<i>To act with wisdom (wisely).</i>

## **116 SPECIAL RULES :**



### **I. AND II.—THE NOUN TAKEN IN A GENERAL OR PARTICULAR SENSE.**

A Noun is used with the **DEFINITE ARTICLE** in French, contrary to English usage, if it is

(a) *Collective* or *Abstract*, whether taken in a *General* or *Particular* Sense :

Le fer est plus utile que l'or.	<i>Iron is more useful than gold.</i>
L'hypocrisie est un hommage que le vice rend à la vertu.	<i>Hypocrisy is a homage rendered by vice to virtue.</i>
J'aime la musique.	<i>I like music.</i>
Il entend l'anglais.	<i>He understands English.</i>

(b) the Name of a *Title, Dignity, Profession, etc.*, or a *Proper Noun* qualified by an Adjective: as,

Le roi Jean ; la reine Victoria.	<i>King John ; Queen Victoria.</i>
Le maréchal Ney ; le docteur Gray.	<i>Marshal Ney ; Dr. Gray.</i>
Monsieur le marquis.	<i>The Marquis.</i>
Madame la marquise.	<i>The Marchioness.</i>
Le petit Charles.	<i>Little Charley.</i>

(c) another *Part of Speech* used substantively: as,

Le boire et le manger.	<i>Eating and drinking.</i>
Le mieux est souvent l'ennemi du bien.	<i>Let well alone.</i>

(d) the Name of any *Day of the Week* used distributively, or of a *Holy Day*: as,

Les paquebots partent les mardis.	<i>The steamers leave every Tuesday.</i>
Il ne fait ses visites que le jeudi.	<i>He makes his calls only on Thurs- days.</i>
La St. Jean ; le mercredi des Cendres.	<i>Midsummer Day ; Ash Wednesday.</i>

(e) the Name of a *Country, Province, large Island, Mountain, Season*: as,

La Grande Bretagne, l'Angleterre, le Portugal, la Bretagne, la Sardaigne, le Mont Blanc, le printemps.

*Observation 1.*—With a Noun in the *Plur.*, the *Art.* is used in both languages:—

Les Pays Bas, *the Netherlands.*

*Observation 2.*—Only a few names of towns take, quite exceptionally, the *Definite Article*:—

Le Havre (Gen. du Havre, Dat. au Havre); le Caire; la Haye; la Mecque; la Rochelle; la Havane, etc.

(f) the *Subject* or *Object* of an *Adjective* clause introduced by a *Relat. Pron.* in the *Possessive* case:—

La reine dont le règne fut si glorieux.	<i>The queen whose reign was so glorious.</i>
--	---

*Observation 1.*—Thus also if used as a *Cognitive Accusative*, or predicatively after *faire*: as,

Sentir le brûlé.	<i>To smell of burning.</i>
Il fait le malade.	<i>He pretends to be ill.</i>

117 The DEFINITE ARTICLE, as a rule, is used in French instead of the English *Possessive Adjective*, with a Noun denoting *part of the body* or a *mental quality*, whether used as Subject or Object :—

(a) French *Definite Art.* + *Dat. of Pers. Pron.* = English *Possessive Adjective* : as,

La tête **me** tourne.

*My head swims.*

Le cœur lui fend à cette vue.

*His heart breaks at that sight.*

or—

Il lui baisa la main.

*He kissed her hand.*

Vous **me** marchez sur le pied.

*You tread on my toes.*

Il s'est coupé au doigt.

*He has cut his finger.*

Il assure que votre seule physionomie lui a gagné le cœur (Mol. *Avaro*).

*He declares that your very face has won his heart.*

(b) The French *Def. Art.* = English *Possessive Adjective* :

(1) with a Noun-Object of **avoir** corresponding to a Noun-Subject in English : as,

J'ai froid **aux** pieds.

*My feet are cold.*

J'ai les pieds froids.

*His hands are full.*

Il a les mains pleines.

Il eut la tête enlevée par un boulet.

*His head was carried away by a cannon ball.*

Elle a les yeux petits, cela est vrai, mais elle les a pleins de feu, les plus brillants, les plus perçants du monde (Mol. *Bourg. gent.*).

*Her eyes are small, it is true, but they are full of fire, the most brilliant, the most piercing in the world.*

(2) with a Noun-Object corresponding to a Noun-Object in English : as,

Fermez les yeux, et ouvrez la bouche.

*Shut your eyes and open your mouth.*

Ils levèrent la tête.\*

*They raised their heads (plur.).*

\* Notice the use of the *Singular*; thus—

Plus de mille hommes y perdirent la vie.

*More than a thousand men lost their lives there.*

*Observation 1.*—A peculiar use of the *Def. Art. plur.* is that before Proper Names of men of note : as,

Ils voulaient surpasser les Aristide en justice, les Phocion en constance, les Fabius en modération et les Caton même en vertu.

Here **les** must be taken simply as emphatic and poetical; and not as in—

'Les Virgiles sont rares : ' where **les** implies— *Such men as . . .*

*Observation 2.* **Le, la, les** retain their original demonstrative force (fr. Lat. *ille, illa, illos*) in interjectional phrases : as,

Le pauvre homme ! Dites-donc, l'ami !

*Poor man ! I say, you fellow !*

Likewise in— De la sorte. *In this manner.*

117  
(A)

## SPECIAL RULES REGARDING GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES :

*Names of Countries* (except those derived from names of Towns) take the *Definite Article* if used

(1) as Subject or Direct Object ;

(2) with any preposition, except **en** (or if used adjectively with **de**) :—

*Rule :—With the Definite Article : as,*

(1) **L'**Angleterre et **la** France se disputèrent **les** Indes.

**Le** Danemark est moins peuplé que **le** Portugal.

(2) **Les** frontières **de** **la** Turquie.

**La** découverte **de** l'Amérique.

**Les** ressources **de** **la** France.

**Les** côtes **de** l'Angleterre sont très étendues.

**L'**Asie est à l'est **de** l'Europe.

**Londres**, capitale **de** l'Angleterre.

**Dans** l'Angleterre ; **dans** **la** Russie.

**Dans** **le** (au) Danemark ; \*  
**dans** **les** (aux) Indes.\*

**Partir pour** l'Écosse.

**S'embarquer pour** l'Amérique.

*Exceptions :—Without Article : as,*

Bade et Oldenbourg sont membres de l'empire germanique.

**Des** tapis **de** Turquie.

**Quelques** villes **d'**Amérique.

**Des** vins **de** France.

**A** midi nous aperçûmes **les** côtes **d'**Angleterre.

**La** Turquie **d'**Europe (= européenne).

**Stratford**, petite ville **d'**Angleterre.

**Aller en** Angleterre, **en** Russie.

**En** Danemark.

**Demeurer en** Écosse.

**Venir d'**Amérique.

\* Those used in the *Masculine* or in the *Plural*, as well as those compounded with an *Adjective*, always take the Article :—

**Venir du** Portugal ; **des** Indes.

**De** **la** porcelaine **du** Japon.

**Le** roi **des** Pays Bas.

**Le** fleuve **du** Rhin.

**Venir de** Suisse, **d'**Espagne.

**De** **la** porcelaine **de** Saxe.

**Le** roi **de** Suède.

**La** rivière **de** Seine.

+

## III.—THE NOUN TAKEN IN A PARTITIVE SENSE.

A Noun is taken in a *partitive* sense when only *part* or a *fraction* of the thing (or things) it denotes is implied; and this partitive meaning is expressed either

(a) *determinately*, by **de**+*Def. Art.* i.e. **du, de la, de l', des**; or,

(b) *indeterminately*, by **de** alone, whenever the noun is already sufficiently determined by (1) a preceding qualifying Adjective; (2) an Adverb, or Noun of quantity, or negation, *beaucoup, peu, assez, plus, trop, tant, pas, point*\* :—

(a) *Determinate*: as,

Donnez-moi **du** lait ;

**de la** viande ; **de** l'huile ;

**des** œufs.

Voilà **de** l'eau bonne à boire.

Il a **des** amis sincères.

A-t-il **du** courage ?—

Il faudrait **de la** patience !—

Ont-ils **des** amis ?—

Voici **des** raisins.

(b) *Indeterminate*: as,

(1) **de** bon lait ;

**de** bonne viande ; **de** bonne

huile ; **de** bons œufs.

Voilà **de** bonne eau.

Ce sont **de** vrais amis.

(2) Non, il n'a **pas de** courage.

Il n'a **point de** patience.

Ils n'ont que **peu d'**amis.

Voici une **livre de** raisins.

Thus also after Verbs of *Filling, Covering, Adorning, Feeding* (see § 36, d), in answer to the questions *wherewith? whereof?* i.e. if the Noun is used as indirect Adv. Complement:—

## Compare—

Il boit **du vin** (*what?*)

Il s'abstient **de vin** (*whereof?*)

Il amasse **de la neige** (*what?*)

Les Alpes sont couvertes **de neige**

(*wherewith?*)

Il ramasse **des haillons** (*what?*)

Ils étaient couverts **de haillons**

(*wherewith?*)

*Observation 1.*—But—Du petit-lait, *why*; du vif-argent, *quicksilver*; des bons mots, *wticisms*; because the Adjective is here merely part and parcel of a Compound Noun.

*Observation 2.*—It stands to reason that if a Partitive Noun, preceded by an Adverb or Noun of quantity, is qualified by an Adjunct, it must, according to the General Principles laid down, be treated as Determinate. Compare:—

Il reste **peu du vin** mis en bouteille en 1834. Il reste **peu de vin**.

Il y a encore une livre **des raisins** que vous avez achetés en Espagne.

Il n'y a plus qu'une livre **de raisins**.

*Compare also*:—Je n'ai **pas de** l'argent pour le dépenser follement. *I have money, but not to spend foolishly.*

Je n'ai **pas (point)** d'argent. *I have no money.*

Ce n'est **pas de** l'argent que je vous demande, ce sont **des** conseils. *Money is not what I ask you for, but advice.*

Je ne vous demande **pas d'**argent. *I do not ask you for (any) money.*

\* Only bien (in the sense of *beaucoup*), *much*, *many*, and la plupart, *most*, take the Determinate form after them: **bien des gens**; la plupart **du** monde.

Observation 3. —Also *Adjectives*, *Participles*, and even *Proper Nouns*, may be used *partitively*, especially after *Pronouns* used substantively :—rien, quelque chose, quoi, tout ce qui, ceci, cela ; and after *Numerals* : as,

Je n'ai jamais rien vu de pareil.

Cela ne presage rien de bon.

Ce palais a quelque chose d'auguste.

Qu'y a-t-il de nouveau ?

Quoi de plus beau que ce coup d'œil !

L'homme a cela de commun avec les animaux que . . .

Sur six mille combattants il y en eut cinq cents de tués et huit cents de blessés.

Parmi ces poires il n'y en a pas une de gâtée.

Il y avait en lui plus du Fox et du Pitt que du Mirabeau.

*I have never seen anything like it.*

*That forbodes nothing good.*

*This palace has a somewhat august aspect.*

*What is the news? [Quid novi?]*

*What could be finer than this sight!*

*Man has this in common with animals that . . .*

*Of six thousand combatants five hundred were killed, and eight hundred wounded.*

*Among these pears there is not one spoiled.*

*There was in him more of a Fox and of a Pitt than of a Mirabeau.*

119

#### IV.—THE NOUN TAKEN IN AN INDEFINITE SENSE.

(a) A Noun is used with the INDEFINITE Article when it denotes any single (individual) person or thing used indeterminately : as,

Un ami sincère est un trésor.

*A sincere friend is a treasure.*

Observation. —Though, grammatically speaking, the Indefinite Article has no plural, yet Nouns used in an indefinite sense may be put in the plural, in which case no Article is used in English, but in French the PARTITIVE Article :—

J'ai un ami ; j'ai des amis.

Faire des excuses.

*I have a friend ; I have friends.*

*To make an apology.*

(b) A Noun used with the INDEFINITE Art. (or, without Art., if plur.) in English is used with the DEFINITE Art. in French, if it denotes—

(1) a *bodily* or *mental Quality* (used as object of the Verb avoir, cp. § 117, b) : as,

Platon avait les traits réguliers,  
les yeux pleins de douceur, le  
front ouvert, la poitrine et les  
épaules hautes.

*Plato had regular features, eyes full of sweetness, an open forehead, a broad chest, and high shoulders.*

J'ai l'œil bon, Dieu merci !

Elle a la mémoire sûre.

*I have a good eye, thank God.*

*She has a good memory.*

Observation. Thus occasionally after faire, donner dans, in the sense of to set up for, to affect (cp. § 116, f, Obs.) :—

Elle fait la belle.

Faire la sourde oreille.

*She affects the airs of a beauty.*

*To turn a deaf ear.*

(2) a *Price, Measure, Weight*, etc. : as,

Dix francs le mètre (la livre).

*Ten francs a metre (a pound).*

Mille francs les cinquante kilogrammes.

*A thousand francs a hundred-weight.*

Observation.—The Indef. Art. *a* used distributively, in the sense of each, is rendered by par :—

Deux fois par semaine ; cinq francs par leçon.

*Twice a week ; 5 francs a lesson.*

Entrée : deux schellings par tête.

*Admission : two shillings each.*

(c) A Noun used with the INDEFINITE Article in English is, as a rule, used *without any Article* in French, when it stands—

(1) in *Apposition* : as,

Sedan, petite ville de France.

*Sedan, a small town in France.*

Quel coquin d'intendant !

*What a scamp of a steward !*

(2) after a Verb denoting *Manner of Being*—être, devenir, sembler, etc., and after **en** : as,

Il est né Français, mais il est maintenant Anglais naturalisé.

*He was born a Frenchman, but he is now a naturalised Englishman.*

De simple soldat qu'il était, il devint capitaine.

*From a private soldier, he rose to the rank of captain.*

Il a péri victime de son imprudence.

*He perished a victim to his imprudence.*

Je vous parle en ami.

*I speak to you as a friend.*

Il s'est montré homme de courage.

*He showed himself a man of courage. (See § 20, b.)*

(3) as *Complement* of a *Factitive Verb*, i.e. a Verb of *Making, Appointing, Creating, Believing*, etc. (see § 77) : as,

Je le croyais homme d'honneur.

*I believed him to be a man of honour.*

Il s'est fait matelot.

*He has become a sailor.*

## 120

## V.—THE NOUN USED IN AN INDETERMINATE SENSE.

A Noun takes no Article

(a) when so intimately linked with the preceding term as to lose its independent character and to become *adjectival* or *adverbial* in its functions : thus,

(1) *Noun + Noun* : i.e. in *Apposition* : as,

Mexico, capitale du Mexique (see § 119, c).

Louis quatorze. Chapitre premier. Le 16 Floréal an IV.

Paris, fils de Priam, ravit Hélène, femme de Ménélas.

*Observation.* -But the Def. Art. must be used before a Noun in apposition, if the latter expresses a distinctive feature : as,

C'est de Sénèque, le philosophe, et non pas de Sénèque, le tragédien, qu'il s'agit.

(2) *Noun + Prep. + Noun* : i.e. *Adjectival Adjunct* : as,

C'est une table de marbre (see Special Rules, § 121).

Voilà un moulin à vent.

(3) *Adjective + Prep. + Noun* : i.e. *Adjectival Adjunct* : as,

Il est avide de gloire (= ambitieux) ; avide d'argent (= avare).

(4) *Preposition + Noun* : i.e. *Adverbial Phrase* : as,

**de nuit** = *nuitamment, by night* ; **à cœur ouvert** = *franchement, candidly* ; **avec dureté** = *durement, harshly* ; **par jour** = *journellement, per diem* ; **sans peur** = *intrépide, fearless*.

(5) *Verb + Noun* : i.e. *Verbal Phrase* : as,

**Avoir peur (de)** = *craindre, to fear* ; **avoir soin de** = *soigner, to take care* ; **faire cas de** = *estimer, to esteem* ; **faire fortune** = *s'enrichir, to get rich* ; **prendre part à** = *participer à, to take part in* ; **mettre à mort** = *tuer, to put to death* ; **porter envie à** = *envier, to bear envy* ; **parler raison** = *raisonner, to talk sense, etc.*

(b) For the sake of brevity—(1) in Enumerations, especially after **ni . . . ni** ; **soit . . . soit** ; **tant . . . que**, also after **jamais** ; (2) in Proverbial Phrases ; (3) in Titles, Headings ; (4) in addressing a person or thing : as,

(1) Tombeaux, trônes, palais, tout périr, tout s'écroule. *Tombs, thrones, palaces, everything must perish and fall to pieces.*

Les enfants n'ont ni passé, ni avenir, ils jouissent du présent. *For children there is neither Past nor Future, they enjoy the Present.*

Soit faiblesse, soit pitié, il y a consenti. *Whether from weakness or from pity, he has consented to it.*

Tous, tant hommes que femmes, furent mis à mort. *Both men and women were put to death.*

Jamais nation ne fut plus superstitieuse que celle des Egyptiens. *Never was there a nation more superstitious than the Egyptians.*

(2) Possession vaut titre. *Possession is nine points of the law.*

(3) Chapitre premier ; page deux. *First chapter ; page 2.*

(4) Charmant pays de France ! *Beautiful France !*

## 121 SPECIAL RULES CONCERNING THE USE OF THE ARTICLE BEFORE NOUNS IN THE GENITIVE.

A Noun qualifying another Noun may be used either

(a) *with the Definite Art.*,  
as a GENITIVE OF THE POSSESSOR : as,

Le chemin de la vertu.  
*The path of virtue.*

or (b) *without Article*,  
as a GENITIVE OF QUALITY : as,

Un trait de vertu.  
*A trait of virtue (= virtuous).*

La vie de l'homme est courte.  
The life of man is short.

L'eau de la mer est salée.  
The water of the sea is salt.

L'essor du génie.  
The soaring of genius.

Une vie d'homme n'y suffirait pas.  
The life of any man would not suffice for it.

Il prend des bains de mer.  
He takes sea baths.

Un homme de génie.  
A man of genius.

Observation 1.—The same distinction holds good with Nouns governed by other Prepositions :—

Le pot au lait. (See § 16, a, 3.)  
Il se battit avec le courage du désespoir.

Un pot à lait, a milk jug.  
Il se battit avec courage.

Observation 2.—Compare also the following examples, in which the use or omission of the Article altogether alters the sense :—

Entendre la raillerie.  
To know how to joke.  
Demander la raison de . . .  
To ask the reason of . . .  
L'armée de l'Italie.  
The Italian army.

Entendre raillerie.  
To know how to take a joke.  
Demander raison.  
To demand satisfaction.  
L'armée d'Italie.  
Any army (French, etc.) stationed in Italy.

121

(A)

## REPETITION OF THE ARTICLE.

As a rule the Article is—contrary to English usage—repeated in French before—

(1) two or more Nouns following each other (except when they are so closely connected as to form but one idea) ;

(2) two or more Adjectives, which, with the Noun they qualify, form as many different ideas ;

but if they qualify the *same* person or thing, or if they stand *after* the Noun, the Article is not repeated :—

### The Article repeated.

(1) Cette cause a la sympathie et l'appui de toutes les nations civilisées.

(2) Il a éprouvé la bonne et la mauvaise fortune (= la prospérité et l'adversité).

### The Article not repeated.

L'école des arts et métiers.  
Les savanes ou prairies naturelles.

Les courageux, mais vains, efforts de ce peuple oppressé.  
L'histoire sacrée et profane.

## B.—THE NOUN LIMITED BY A QUALIFYING ADJECTIVE.

### RÉSUMÉ.

I.—Agreement of Adjectives. General Rule.

Special Rules :—(a) An Adjective referring to two or more Nouns ;  
(b) Two or more Adjectives referring to the same Noun.

II.—Place of Adjectives : Introductory and General Rule.

Special Rules :—(a) Adjectives generally placed *after* the Noun, if

- (1) derived from a Proper Noun, (2) Participial, (3) originally a Noun,
  - (4) denoting Physical or Accidental quality,
  - (5) followed by a complement, or (6) much longer than the Nouns.
- (b) Exceptions to the above.  
(c and d) List of Adjectives changing their meaning *before* or *after*.

122

## I.—AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

## GENERAL RULE :

An Adjective (whether *attributive* or *predicative*) agrees in *Gender* and *Number* with the Noun or Pronoun it qualifies : as,

Cette **ancienne** église est **flan-** This ancient church is flanked with  
**quée** de **hautes** tours high square towers.  
**carrées.**

De **riches** qu'ils étaient, ils From being rich as they were, they  
devinrent **pauvres.** became poor.

*Observation.*—Agreement by *Synesis*.—Madame, vous n'êtes guère **polie**. On n'est pas toujours jeune et belle. Monsieur, vous êtes **servi**.

## SPECIAL RULES :

(a) If an Adjective refers to *two* or *more* Nouns, it is put in the *Plural* (unless they are synonymous), and if they happen to be of *different Genders*, it is put in the *masc. plur.* : as,

La langue et la littérature **latines.** The Latin language and literature.  
Il avait la tête et les pieds **nus.** He was bareheaded and barefooted.

Observe the use of the Singular, when the Nouns are *Synonymous* :—  
L'aigle fend le air avec une **vitesse**, une The eagle cleaves the air with a prodigious  
**rapidité prodigieuse.** swiftness and rapidity.

(b) When *two* or *more* Adjectives limit the *same* Noun, the following different constructions are admissible :—

La langue grecque et la langue latine.  
Les langues grecque et latine,  
La langue grecque et (la) latine.

*Observation 1.*—The Adjectives **demi**, **nu**, and **franc de port** are—

(a) *variable*, if standing after the Noun :— (b) *invariable*, if standing before the Noun :—

Les "blue-coat boys" marchent tête nue. Ce gamin est toujours **nu-tête** et **nu-pieds**.  
Il est une heure et demie. Dans une demi-heure.

Thus also the Participles **ci-inclus**, **ci-joint**, *enclosed*, agree or do not agree, according as they are used as Adjectives or Adverbs :—

Vous trouverez **ci-jointe** la copie. Vous trouverez **ci-joint** copie ; or,  
La lettre **ci-incluse.** **Ci-joint** vous trouverez la copie.

Notice also—

La **feue** reine ; *but*, **Feu** la reine. The late queen.

*Observation 2.*—Cette femme a l'air bon. This woman has a good-natured look (see § 119, b 1).

Cette **proposition** n'a pas l'air (= ne paraît pas) **sérieuse.** This proposal does not seem to be serious.



## II.—PLACE OF ADJECTIVES.

*Introductory, and General Rule.*—It is a characteristic feature of the French language to place the qualifying (limiting) term *after* the term qualified, as—  
la plume **d'acier**, the *steel pen* ; la salle **à manger**, the *dining room*, etc.

Thus also French Adjectives are generally placed *after* the Noun they qualify ; only a few are invariably placed *before* ; nearly all, however, admit of being placed either *before* or *after*, according as *meaning, emphasis, diction*, or *euphony* may direct ; in other words—the very same Adjective which in the language of *reason, judgment, or experience*, is regularly placed *after* the Noun, will, in the diction of *poetry, imagination, or emotion*, take its place *before* the Noun.

Accordingly an Adjective is put—

(a) *after the Noun*, if used as an *Attribute necessary* for limiting the meaning of a Noun in the particular instance in question, and denoting an *accidental* or *accessory* quality which does not pertain to the whole class of beings expressed by the Noun ;

(b) *before the Noun*, if used as an *ornamental Epithet*, intended for picturesque effect, and denoting a quality naturally associated or cognate with the whole class of persons or things spoken of. Compare :—

La couleur **verte**.

Un chemin **étroit**.

Un homme **cruel**.

Une couleur **sombre**.

Une action **criminelle**.

Sous la **verte** feuillée.

Une **étroite** liaison (*alliance*).

Le **cruel** tyran.

Le **sombre** désespoir.

Ce **criminel** attentat.

Thus again, when we say—the *virtuous* man, the *retired* captain, the Adjectives *virtuous, retired*, limit the Nouns *man, captain*, to *distinguish* them from those to which that attribute does not belong, hence—l'homme **vertueux** ; le capitaine **réformé**. But in—*Virtuous* Aristides, the *gallant* captain, the Adjectives are not used to distinguish Aristides or captain from other men of that name, but simply to *characterise* the men, hence—

le **vertueux** Aristide ; le **vallant** capitaine.

Compare also—L'Arabie **heureuse** (as distinguished from l'Arabie **pétrée**, or **déserte**), with—**Heureuse** enfance ! (not to distinguish it from any other childhood—for childhood is *the* happy age—but expressing as it does an essential quality originating in the very nature of that age). On that principle we may correctly render—

Un ami **fidèle**, by—*a friend that is faithful*.

Un **fidèle** ami, by—*a trusty friend, indeed !*

The Adjective in the latter case denoting a quality ascribed from a *subjective* point of view, *i.e.* as the expression of our *personal emotion, love, admiration*.

*Observation.*—Compare also—J'ai reçu une nouvelle **affligeante**, with—La ville de Carracas a été détruite par un tremblement de terre ; l'**affligeante** nouvelle se répandit bientôt dans tout le pays ; in the latter case the Adjective, on account of the already well-known intelligence, becomes a mere ornamental epithet.

124 SPECIAL RULES.—Subject to the general laws laid down above, an Adjective in French is placed—

(a) as a Rule, *after* the Noun :— (b) *exceptionally, before* the Noun :—

(1) if derived from a *Proper Noun* : as, (1) in *poetic diction* :—

La langue **grecque**.  
Le monde **parisien**.  
Le parti **bonapartiste**.  
L'église **anglicane**, etc.

Témoin nous que punit la  
**romaine** avarice.  
La **grecque** beauté (Lafontaine).

(2) if *Participial* : as,

Une nouvelle **alarmante**.  
Une raison **concluante**.  
L'ordre **accoutumé**.  
Le pont **suspendu**.  
Un refuge **assuré**.

Adieu **charmant** pays de  
France !  
Son **prétendu** droit.  
C'est un **rusé** compère.  
Un **assuré** (fig. impudent) menteur.

(3) if originally a *Substantive* : as,

Un poète **philosophe**.  
Les hirondelles sont des oiseaux  
**voyageurs**.

Here notice the use of a Noun used  
adjectively with a Genit. in apposi-  
tion :—

Quel **chien de** commerce !  
Notre grand **flandrin de** vicomte.

(4) if denoting *Physical* or  
*Accidental* qualities, *i.e.* *Colour*,  
*Shape*, *Taste*, etc. : as,

Des cheveux **blonds**.  
Une boîte **carrée**.  
Une table **ronde**.  
De l'encre **noire**.  
Des amandes **amères**.  
Un fruit **mûr**.  
Une poire **molle**.

(4) if used *figuratively*, or for  
picturesque effect :—

Et nous baisions ses **blonds**  
cheveux . . . (Chateaubriand).  
Une **verte** réprimande.  
De **noirs** pressentiments.  
D'**amères** regrets.  
De **mûres** réflexions.  
Une **molle** indulgence.

(5) if followed by a *Complement* : as,

Une proposition **digne de con-**  
**sidération**.  
De l'eau **bonne à boire**.

(5) if qualified by a *short*  
*Adverb* : as,

Un **si beau** spectacle.  
(or—un spectacle **si beau**).  
Cette viande a un **très bon** goût.

(6) if much longer than the Noun, especially if ending in -able, -ible, -ique, -esque; -al, -el, -ic, -if, -eur; \* generally also two or more adjectives joined by **et** or **ou**: as,

Humeur incompatible.  
Crieur public. Ballon captif.  
Système continental.  
Figure allégorique.  
Commerce extérieur.  
Mouvement perpétuel.  
Un cœur droit et loyal, etc.

*N.B.*—The following Adjectives of one or two syllables generally *precede* the Noun:—

bon, beau, grand, petit,  
gros, long, court, haut,  
sot, vieux, jeune, joli,  
mauvais, moindre: as,

Un bon point; un bel homme;  
les hautes (belles) montagnes;  
un grand pays; le vieux celi-  
bataire; quel joli (beau) chien;  
un mauvais quart d'heure;  
le moindre bruit; le gros fil;  
un sot orgueil; le jeune homme.

*Observation.*—The laws of *euphony* very often overrule all other considerations in determining the place of an Adjective; thus — *astres brillants*, but — *brillante lumière*.

(c) LIST OF ADJECTIVES WHICH, in accordance with the General Rule (§ 123), CHANGE THEIR MEANING ACCORDING AS THEY ARE PLACED *before* or *after* THE NOUN:—

Une preuve certaine, <i>a certain (positive) proof.</i>	Une certaine quantité, <i>a certain (given) quantity.</i>
Une étoffe chère, <i>an expensive stuff.</i>	Mon cher ami, <i>my dear friend.</i>
Des moyens différents, <i>diverse means.</i>	Différents moyens, <i>several (sundry) means.</i>
Une clef fausse, <i>a wrong key.</i>	Une fausse clef, <i>a skeleton key.</i>
Un homme franc, <i>a candid man.</i>	Un franc coquin, <i>a downright scamp.</i>
Un homme galant, <i>a ladies' man.</i>	Un galant homme, <i>a gentleman.</i>
Un homme honnête, <i>a civil man.</i>	Un honnête homme, <i>an honest man.</i>
Un homme malhonnête, <i>a rude man.</i>	Un malhonnête homme, <i>a dishonest man.</i>
Un auteur pauvre, <i>an indigent author.</i>	Un pauvre auteur, <i>an indifferent author.</i>
Un conte plaisant, <i>an amusing tale.</i>	Un plaisant conte, <i>an absurd tale.</i>
Une chemise propre, <i>a clean shirt.</i>	Une propre chemise, <i>a shirt of one's own.</i>
Un mot seul, <i>a word alone.</i>	Un seul mot, <i>a single word (only).</i>
Un conte vrai (véritable), <i>a true tale.</i>	Un vrai conte, <i>a regular story.</i>

\* Most Adjectives ending thus being *technical* terms, must on that account alone stand after the Noun. (See § 123.)

(d) LIST OF ADJECTIVES THAT CHANGE THEIR MEANING *before* OR *after* certain NOUNS ONLY :—

Un homme brave, *a brave man.*

Un homme grand, *a tall man.*

Une dame grande, *a tall lady.*

L'air mauvais, *vicious look.*

Un homme petit, *a mean man.*

Une voix commune, *a common (vulgar) voice.*

Des vers méchants, *wicked verses.*

L'année dernière, *last year.*

La semaine dernière, *last week.*

Un habit nouveau, *a new-fashioned coat.*

Un habit neuf, *a newly-made coat.*

Un brave homme, *a worthy man.*

Un grand homme, *a man of genius.*

Une grande dame, *a lady of rank.*

Le mauvais air, *vulgar appearance.*

Un petit homme, *a short man.*

D'une commune voix, *unanimously.*

De méchants vers, *wretched verses.*

La dernière année, *the last year.*

La dernière semaine de l'an, *the last week of the year.*

Un nouvel habit, *another coat.*

For the Noun qualified by another Noun, see § 16.

For the Noun qualified by an Adjective Clause, see § 158 and § 163.

### THIRD CHAPTER: THE ADVERBIAL RELATION.

*N.B.*—Under *Adverbial Relation* is comprised everything which in any way—whether as *Object* (Direct and Indirect) or as *Adverbial Complement*—depends on, or modifies, *the Verb*.

**125** *INTRODUCTORY*:—An *Adverbial Adjunct*, *i.e.* a term which completes a *Verb*, *Adjective*, *Adverb*, or *Phrase*, may be, as in English:—

- (A) a *Noun-Object* or *Pronoun-Object*, either (1) Direct, (2) Indirect, or (3) Secondary: as,  
Il chasse **le renard**. Il **le** chasse.  
Il donne le pain **au mendiant**. Il **le** lui donne.  
On se souvient **de la guerre**. On **s'en** souvient.
- (B) a *Noun-Complement*, or *Pronoun-Complement*, either (1) Direct, (2) Indirect, or (3) Secondary: as,  
Nous arrivâmes **le matin**. Il partit **de bonne heure**.  
J'arrivai **à midi**. Je suis retourné **chez lui**.  
Il a agi **avec prudence**. Je le défendrai **envers et contre tous**.
- (C) a *Verbal Noun*, *i.e.* a verb in the *Infinitive* (see §§ 40-4): as,  
J'espère **réussir**. Il vint **à passer**.  
Il est lent **à se fâcher**. Elle vient **d'arriver**.
- (D) a *Present Participle* proper (see §§ 145-6): as,  
L'appétit vient **en mangeant**. Le mal **va empirant**.  
or a *Participle* (expressed or understood) used *absolutely*: as,  
Il fondit sur l'ennemi, \* l'épée **à la main** (\* **ayant**, understood).
- (E) a *Perfect Participle* (see §§ 147-150): as,  
Il est resté **mort** sur le champ de bataille.
- (F) an *Adverb* or *Adverbial Pronoun* (see §§ 152-6): as,  
Il a agi **prudemment**. Il est arrivé **aujourd'hui**.  
J'**en** reviens. J'**y** vais.
- (G) a *Substantive Clause* (see §§ 161-2): as,  
Nous désirons **que cela se fasse**.
- (H) an *Adverbial Clause* (see §§ 161-165): as,  
Il mit à la voile **dès que le vent tomba**.

*N.B.*—In order not to break up the Syntax of Cases, the uses of Nouns and Pronouns, either

- (A) as *Objects* depending on the Government of Verbs and Adjectives; or
- (B) as *Complements* (Phrases) independent of the Government of Verbs and Adjectives,

will be treated together under the following heads:—

- I. The Noun or Pronoun used without Preposition (Accusative).
- II. The Noun or Pronoun with *à* (Dative).
- III. The Noun or Pronoun with *de* (Genitive).

(A) As *Object*.  
 (B) As *Complement*.

# 126 I.—THE NOUN-OBJECT OR NOUN-COMPLEMENT USED WITHOUT PREPOSITION (ACCUSATIVE CASE).

## RÉSUMÉ.

### A. The Direct Object:—

- (a) After Transitive Verbs ; (b) after Factitive Verbs ;
- (c) after Verbs of Teaching, etc. ;
- (d) Acc. and Infinit. after Verbs of Thinking, Saying, etc.

### B. The Direct Complement:—

Adverbial Phrases answering the questions *how long? how far? etc.*

## A.—THE DIRECT OBJECT.\*

[\* If a *Conjunct Pers. Pron.* :—*me, te (moi, toi), le, la ; nous, vous, les.*  
See §§ 26-30 ; if a *Relative Pronoun* :—*que, le quel, laquelle, etc.* See § 35.]

(a) The *Accusative* is used after all kinds of *Transitive Verbs* :

as,	
La pluie arrose la terre.	<i>The rain moistens the earth.</i>
Joseph eut un songe.	<i>Joseph had a dream.</i>
Les richesses, que l'avare croit posséder, le possèdent.	<i>Wealth, which the miser fancies he possesses, possesses him.</i>
J'ai passé l'été à la campagne.	<i>I have spent the summer in the country.</i>

*Observation 1.*—Many originally *intransitive* Verbs may be used *transitively*, and—vice versa—originally *transitive* Verbs are used *intransitively* :—

Sonner ses domestiques.	<i>To ring for one's servants.</i>
Tel fiancé qui n'épouse pas (Prov.)	<i>There is many a slip 'twixt cup and lip.</i>

Some also may—in strict analogy with Latin—become *transitive* by taking a prefix : as, Parcourir un champ, endormir un enfant, encourir une amende. [Hannibal Alpes cum exercitu transiit].

*Observation 2.*—A few *Intransitive Verbs*—as, aller, courir, causer, sentir, jouer, take a *Cognate Accusative* (see, however, also § 136, Cogn. Gen.) :—

Jouer grand jeu [Ludere lusum].	<i>To play high.</i>
Cela sent l'huile [Olet unguentum].	<i>That smells of oil.</i>
Il put (archaic for—pue) son ancienneté.	<i>It smacks of antiquity.</i>
[Redolet antiquitatem]—(Mol. Femmes Sav.)	

*Observation 3.*—Some Verbs take a *Direct Object* in French which in English require a Preposition : as,

Que cherchez-vous ?	<i>What are you looking for ?</i>
A-t-on résolu la paix ou la guerre ?	<i>Have they resolved upon peace or war ?</i>

The principal of these are :—

admettre, to admit of ;	désirer, to wish for ;
approuver, to approve of ;	envoyer chercher, to send for ;
attendre, to wait for ;	regarder, to look at (upon) ;
chercher, to look for ;	rencontrer, to meet with.

*Observation 4.*—In the Prepositions *voici, voilà*, the Verb *voir* retains its *transitive force* : as,

Me voici ; te voilà.	<i>Here I am ; there you are.</i>
L'homme que voilà.	<i>That man there.</i>

(b) Verbs which indicate *Making, Believing, Naming, Appointing*, and the like (*i.e. Factitive Verbs*), may take an *Object* and a *Complement (Predicate)* of that *Object*: as,

L'égoïste se fait le centre de tout.	<i>The egotist makes himself the centre-point of everything.</i>
Le roi le créa colonel sur le champ de bataille.	<i>The king made him colonel on the battlefield.</i>
Je vous crois honnête homme.	<i>I believe you to be an honest man.</i>

*Observation.*—*Adjectives and Participles* are frequently thus used as *Predicate-Complements*:—

Il eut la jambe emportée par un boulet de canon.  
Je tiens ces deux opinions également soutenables.

Notice the use of the *Singular* of a *Noun-Object* denoting a *part of the body* or a *mental quality*:—

Plus de mille hommes y perdirent la vie . . . *their lives.*

(c) But Verbs of *Teaching* and *Asking* do not, as they do in *Latin* and *English*, take *two Direct Objects*; the *Person* taught or asked must stand as an *INDIRECT Object*: as,

J'enseigne la grammaire à mes élèves.	<i>I teach my pupils grammar.</i>
Je la leur enseigne.	<i>I teach it them.</i>
Je lui demandai une question.	<i>I asked him a question.</i>
Je la lui ai demandée.	<i>I asked it him.</i>

*Observation.*—As a *double Accusative* is contrary to the spirit of *French construction*, the *Person-Object* must be put in the *Dative* whenever the following *Infinitive* has an *Object of the Thing* (see § 131): as,

Alexandre laissa prendre haleine à ses troupes.	<i>Alexander allowed his troops to take breath.</i>
Il leur laissa prendre haleine.	<i>He allowed them to take breath.</i>

127 An *Accusative + Infinitive Construction* is used after Verbs of *Thinking, Perceiving, and Saying*, but only if the *Acc.* is a *Relative Pronoun*: as,

Je suivais un sentier que je supposais devoir conduire à la mer.	<i>I followed a footpath which I thought must lead to the sea.</i>
Le phénix est un oiseau que l'on dit renaître de sa cendre.	<i>The Phoenix is a bird which is said to rise again from its ashes.</i>

*Caution.*—The *Acc. + Infinit. Constr.* must be carefully avoided in *French* after any class of Verbs or kind of Objects other than those instanced above:—

*I wish him to go* (*not*— Je le désire aller); *but*— Je désire qu'il aille.  
*We know them to be rich*; Nous savons qu'ils sont riches; or,  
N. les savons riches (*not*— N. les savons être riches).

128

## B.—THE DIRECT ADVERBIAL COMPLEMENT.

*Adverbial Phrases* answering the questions *when? how long? how far? how much?* etc., being generally used without prepositions, may be classed here as Accusatives of *Time, Place, Measure*: as,

La nuit tous chats sont gris. \*

*All cats are gray in the dark.*

Il vint me voir le lendemain.

*He called upon me on the next day.*

La cygale ayant chanté,

*The grasshopper having sung all the*

tout l'été, . . .

*live-long summer . . .*

Ce cheval a été vendu deux mille francs.

*This horse has been sold for 2000 francs.*

Je continuai mon chemin l'espace de six milles.

*I walked on for a distance of six miles.*

*Observation 1.*—Corresponding to the Latin Ablative Absolute, there is in French what might be termed a Nominative or Accusative Absolute; as,

Quant à nous, le fusil sur l'épaule, nous montâmes toute la nuit.

Les Juifs mangeaient l'agneau pascal, debout, les reins ceints et un bâton à la main.

# 129 II.—THE NOUN-OBJECT OR NOUN-COMPLEMENT GOVERNED BY à : DATIVE CASE).

## RÉSUMÉ.

## INTRODUCTORY:—

## A.—The Indirect Object—

- (a) after Verbs of *Giving, Telling, etc.*; (b) after Verbs of *Perceiving, Attributing, etc.*; (c) after Verbs of *Taking, Asking, etc.*; (d) after an *Infinitive* depending on *faire, laisser, etc.*; (e) after *Intransitive* Verbs and Adjectives or Adverbs denoting *fitness, tendency, etc.*; (f) after *être*, in answer to the questions (1) *whose?* (2) *for whom?* etc.;

## B.—The Indirect Complement, denoting—

- (1) *Manner, Instrument*, (2) *Time when*, (3) *Place where*.

INTRODUCTORY:—The Preposition *à* has a much wider range of functions than the English *to*, or the Latin *ad* and *ab* (from which it is derived); it corresponds to the Prepositions *at, for, from, with, in, by, on*, in English; and to the *Dative, Ablative*, and various Prepositions in Latin. To understand this multiplicity of functions devolving upon *à*, it must be borne in mind that already in the classical period of Latin, the Preposition *ad* was doing duty for the *Dative* case, and that in Mediæval Latin it assumed the meanings of *cum* and *apud*. (See Brachet's *Etymological Dictionary*, under *à*.)

## 130 A.—THE INDIRECT OBJECT depending on a Verb or Adjective:

[The *Conj. Pers. Pron.-Obj.*:—*me, te, lui; nous, vous, leur; y* (§ 26-30).

The *Disj. Pers. Pron.-Obj.*:—*à moi, à toi*, etc. (see § 22).

The *Relat. Pron.-Obj.*:—*à qui, auquel*, etc., *où* (see § 35).]

✱ The *Dative Case* is used—

(a) as in English, after Verbs of *Giving, Adding, Telling, Showing*, and the like : as,

Il donne son bien <b>aux</b> pauvres.	<i>He gives his property to the poor.</i>
Il leur donne son bien.	<i>He gives them his property.</i>
Elle lui <b>a dévoué</b> sa vie.	<i>She has devoted her life to him.</i>
J'y <b>contribuerai</b> pour ma part.	<i>I shall contribute to it for my share.</i>
L'ambition seule leur <b>inspira</b> ces crimes.	<i>Ambition alone suggested these crimes to them.</i>
Faites- <b>moi</b> voir vos tableaux.	<i>Show me your pictures.</i>
Je lui <b>apprendrai</b> bien son devoir.	<i>I shall teach him his duty.</i>

(b) after Verbs of *Perceiving, Believing, Attributing*, etc., to denote the *Possessor* : as,

Jamais je ne <b>vous vis</b> un teint si frais et si gaillard.	<i>I never saw you with such a ruddy complexion.</i>
Je <b>trouve à</b> votre sœur l'air un peu triste.	<i>It strikes me your sister looks rather sad (lit. I perceive in your sister).</i>
Je lui <b>crois</b> de grands moyens.	<i>I give him credit for great abilities.</i>
On ne lui <b>connaît</b> que peu d'ennemis.	<i>He is known to have but few enemies.</i>

Thus also with Verbs having for their object a Noun denoting a *part of the body* or a *mental quality* : as,

Je serrai <b>la main à</b> votre frère.	<i>I shook hands with your brother.</i>
Je lui serrai <b>la</b> main.	<i>I shook hands with him.</i>
Elles <b>se</b> meurtrissaient <b>le</b> sein.	<i>They mangled their bosoms.</i>

[Cp. also Synt. of Personal and Possess. Pron. § 167.]

(c) contrary to English usage, after Verbs of *Taking, Removing, Borrowing, Wanting, Asking, Expecting, Refusing*, etc. : as,

On <b>a ôté</b> le pain <b>à</b> cette famille.	<i>They have taken the bread from this family.</i>
Je lui ai <b>acheté</b> un volume qu'il m'a fait payer cher.	<i>I bought of him a volume for which he charged me a high price.</i>
Puise de l'eau <b>à</b> une fontaine.	<i>To draw water from a well.</i>
L'homme opulent se couche, lorsque l'autre <b>s'arrache au</b> sommeil.	<i>The opulent man betakes himself to rest, when other people arouse themselves from sleep.</i>
Il leur <b>faut</b> de l'argent.	<i>They want money.</i>
On lui <b>demanda</b> ce qu'il (elle) voulait.	<i>They asked him (her) what he (she) wanted.</i>
Que <b>me</b> voulez-vous ?	<i>What do you expect from me ?</i>
Cette grande roideur . . . <b>veut aux mortels</b> trop de perfection.	<i>This unbending rigidity of yours expects too great perfection on the part of mortals.</i>

(Molière, *Misanthr.* 155.)

131 (d) as a *Person-Object*, after **faire, laisser, voir, entendre, ouïr**, complemented by an Infinitive with another object in the *Accusative*. In other words—**faire (laisser, etc.) + Infinitive** take either

(1) an *Acc.* of the Person, if the Infinitive has *no direct object*; or

(2) a *Dat.* of the Person, if the Infinitive has a *direct object*.

Compare—

Je **le** fais travailler (see § 140). *I make him work.*  
with—Je **lui** fais réciter **sa leçon**. *I make him recite his lesson.*

Laissez-**le** faire. *Let him alone.*

with—Laissez-**lui la bride** sur *Let him have his way.*  
le cou.

Nous **les** avons entendus chanter. *We have heard them sing.*

with—Nous **leur** avons entendu *We have heard them say that.*  
dire **cela**.

On **le** fit renoncer à la cou- *They made him renounce the crown.*  
ronne (Indir. Obj.)

with—On **lui** fit abandonner son *They made him give up his post.*  
poste.

*Observation 1.*—Thus also when the Direct Object is a whole clause:—  
Je leur ai fait comprendre que cela n'était *I made them understand that it was not becoming.*  
pas de mise.—(Molière.)

*Observation 2.*—The so-called *ethic Dative* is of frequent use in French:—  
On lui lia les pieds, on vous le suspendit.—(Lafontaine.)  
Qu'on me l'égorge, qu'on me lui fasse griller les pieds, qu'on me le mette dans l'eau bouillante.—(Mol. *Avare*.)

[Cp. Lat.: Quid mihi Celsus agit? Germ.: Wir waren dir sehr vergnügt.]

132 (e) After any kind of INTRANSITIVE VERBS, and after ADJECTIVES and ADVERBS implying *fitness, tendency, inclination, adaptation, utility, obedience, assistance, superiority, pleasing, and their contraries*, the name of the person or thing for whom, or in respect of whom, the action is done, is put in the DATIVE case: as,

(1) Ce chien **obéit à** la voix de *This dog obeys the call of his*  
son maître. *master.*

Louis XIV. **survécut à** ses *Louis the Fourteenth survived his*  
enfants. *children.*

Ce fils **ressemble à** son père. *This son resembles his father.*

Il **a répondu à** toutes les *He has answered all questions put*  
questions qu'on lui a faites. *to him.*

Cela ne **sert à** rien. *That is good for nothing.*

Pardonner **aux méchants** *To spare the wicked is to injure the*  
c'est nuire **aux bons**. *good.*

Il **lui** prit envie de se coucher. *The fancy took him to go to bed.*



Many verbs of this class require *no Preposition* in English : as,

commander à,	obéir à,	renoncer à,	se fier à,
conseiller à,	ordonner à,	répondre à,	subvenir à,
convenir à,	parvenir à,	résigner à,	succéder à,
demander à,	plaire (déplaire) à,	résister à,	survivre à,
nuire à,	remédier à,	ressembler à,	toucher à, etc.

(2) Un vœu **conforme** (contraire) à A vow *conformable* (contrary) to la nature.

**Conformément aux** ordres donnés. *Conformably to the orders given.*

Ils se rendirent **formidables** à leurs voisins. *They made themselves formidable to their neighbours.*

Il est bien **amer** à un père de voir ses enfants ne pas répondre à ses soins. *It is very painful for a father to see that his children do not return his affection.*

Il m'est fort **indifférent** que vous y alliez ou non. *It is all the same to me whether you go or not.*

La patrie lui est **chère**. *His native land is dear to him.*

### 133 (f) After the Verb **être**, the Complement is put in the DATIVE :

(1) in answer to the question *whose?* i.e. to denote the Possessor : as,

A qui est cela ?—A vous ou à votre ami ? *Whose is that?—Yours or your friend's?*

. . . Le moulin est à moi, tout aussi bien, du moins, que la Prusse est au roi. *The mill is mine, as much so, at any rate, as Prussia is the king's.*

C'est au maître de parler, et à l'élève d'écouter. *It is for the master to speak, and for the pupil to listen.*

On n'est point à soi, quand on prend beaucoup d'engagements.

Thus also redundantly after the Verb **avoir** : as,

Il n'a rien à lui ; tout est à ses amis. *He has nothing of his own; everything is his friends'.*

(2) in answer to the question *for whom? in whom? on whose part?* i.e. to denote the logical Subject of an impersonal phrase : as,

C'est folie à eux de croire cela. *It is foolish for them } to believe*  
i.e. They are foolish } that.

C'est très bien fait à vous. *Well done! i.e. You have acted very well.*

For the use of *Disjunctive* instead of *Conjunctive* Pers. Pron., see §§ 32 (7), and 134 (c), Obs.

## B.—THE INDIRECT ADVERBIAL COMPLEMENT.

The Preposition *à* is used in conjunction with a NOUN to form ADVERBIAL COMPLEMENTS, denoting—

(a) the *Manner* in which, or the *Instrument* with which, an action is done; answering the questions *how? wherewith? by what means?* as,

J'irai *à pied*, mais lui, il ira *à cheval*. *I shall walk (go on foot), but he will ride (go on horseback).*

Ils lui parlèrent *à haute voix*. *They spoke to him in a loud voice.*

Un ouvrage *frappé au coin* du génie. *A work bearing the stamp of genius.*

Robinson Crusoe *gagna le rivage à la nage*. *Robinson Crusoe swam to the shore.*

Je l'ai reconnu *à sa démarche*. *I recognised him by his gait.*

Elle s'habilla *à la française*. *She dressed in the French fashion.*

Jouer *aux* cartes, *aux* échecs, *To play at cards, chess* (but see § 136, c).

*Observation.*—Here may be classed adverbial complements answering the question *at what rate? according to what?* as,

Le sucre se vend *au poids*.

*Sugar is sold by the pound.*

Nous prendrons ce fiacre *à l'heure*.

*We shall hire this cab by the hour.*

J'en ferai *à ma guise*.

*I'll do as I like.*

(b) the *Time when*, or the *attendant Circumstances* under which, an action is done; answering the questions *when? until when? on what occasion?* as,

Autrefois on dînait *à midi*. *In times of old one used to dine at mid-day.*

Je l'attends *à tout moment*. *I expect him immediately.*

Le monarque, *à ces mots*, se mit à rire. *The monarch, at these words, began to laugh.*

Je m'éveillai *au bruit* de la tempête. *I awoke in the midst of the roar of the storm.*

(c) the *Place where* an action is done, or the *Direction towards which* a motion is tending; answering the questions *where? where to? whither? how far?* as,

## REST.

Un homme *est à* la mer !

Le soldat *n'était pas à* son poste.

Il *est toujours à* cheval.

Avoir mal *aux dents, à la tête, aux yeux*, etc.

Prendre l'occasion *aux cheveux*.

## MOTION.

Les fleuves *vont à* la mer.

Le soldat *se rendit à* son poste.

Nous *remontâmes à* cheval.

*To have the toothache, headache, sore eyes, etc.*

*To take time by the forelock.*

Observation 1.—Before names of countries *à* is only used in the case of those in the *Plur.* or *Masc. Sing.*—

Aller **aux** Indes, **au** Brésil.  
but—Aller **en** France, **en** Irlande.

[In the 17th century *à* was used for *dans* to a far wider extent than now :—

La sincérité souffre un peu **au** métier que je fais.—Mol. *Ar. I. 1.*]

Observation 2.—If the complement is a *Personal Pronoun*, the *Disjunctive* form §§ 32, 7) must be used : compare—

DISJUNCTIVE.

Elle accourut **à** moi. *She ran to me.*

Je m'adresse **à** eux. *I apply to them.*

Il vint **à** lui. *He came to him.*

CONJUNCTIVE.

Elle **me** donna le livre. *She gave the book to me.*

Je leur écris. *I am writing to them.*

Il **lui** vint une idée. *An idea occurred to him (§ 32, 7).*

The reason is that in the sentences of the second column, *to* denotes the *Remoter Object*—the genuine Latin Dative Case—whilst in those of the first column, *to* indicates an *Adverbial Relation of place* (Lat. *ad*), a relation in which the *Conjunctive* form cannot be used.

See also— for various English equivalents to *à*—§ 88 (Accidence);  
for *à* comp. with *dans*, § 89.

Observation 3.—Under this head may be classed the *elliptical* use of the Dative in numerous phrases, mostly of an interjectional character : as,

A moi ! au secours ! *Help ! help ! to the rescue !* *à la guerre comme à la guerre !* *We must take things as they come.*

au feu ! *Fire ! fire !*

au revoir ! *Till I see you again !*

Au voleur, au voleur ! à l'assassin, au meurtrier !—(Mol. *Avare*.)

*à la vie, à la mort !* *In life and death !*

For the use of *à* in Compound Nouns, see § 16, 3.

### III.—THE NOUN-OBJECT OR NOUN-COMPLEMENT GOVERNED BY *de* (GENITIVE CASE).

#### RÉSUMÉ.

#### INTRODUCTORY :—

#### A. Secondary Object governed by *de*, denoting—

- (a) Starting Point, Origin, etc., in answer to (1) whence? (2) since when? where?
- (b) Separation, Difference, etc., (c) Instrument, Agent, etc.;
- (d) Material, Contents, etc., (e) Matter concerned (Respect);
- (f) Cause, Motive, etc., (g) Affection of the mind;
- (h) Accusation, Praise, etc., (i) Measure, Comparison;
- (j) Property, Duty, Office, etc.

#### B. Adverbial Complement, governed by *de*, answering to the questions—

- (a) when? (b) how? (c) whence? where? whither?

**135** **INTRODUCTORY:**—The various meanings in which *de* is used may all be traced back to the fundamental notions of *separation* and *origin* (Lat. *de*, *down from*). The idea of *separation* naturally leads to that of *privation*, *want*, *protection from*, etc., whilst the notion of *origin* is closely related to that of *cause*, both moral and physical. Now *cause* in a physical sense suggests the *instrument* and *material* with which—and these again the *manner* in which—an action is done; whilst *cause*, in a moral sense, is akin to *motive*, i.e. *cause* arising from the affections of the mind; as, *joy*, *grief*, *fear*, *anger*, *shame*, *pride*, *gratitude*, *repentance*, etc.\* Hence *de* not only corresponds to the Latin *de*, and to the *Genitive*, but, denoting *manner*, *instrument*, *agent*, *motive*, it also does duty for the Latin *Ablative* and for *ex* and *a* (*ab*, *abs*).

As compared with English, it answers to the *Possessive* case, and to the prepositions *of*, *from*, *with*, *by*, *at* (occasionally also to *against*, *on*, *for*, and others, see § 87).

\* "In many examples it is not easy to say whether the Ablative ought to be referred to cause, instrument, matter, or manner."—Kennedy's *Latin Grammar*, § 143.

N.B.—For the Genitive depending on Nouns, see § 16.

136 *d* A.—THE NOUN OR PRONOUN-OBJECT governed by **de**  
depending on a *Verb* or *Adjective*.

(*Conj.* Pers.-Pron.-Compl. of the 3d pers. :—**en**, see §§ 28 and 30 ;

*Disj.* Pers.-Pron.-Compl. :—**de moi, de toi, de lui**, etc., see § 32 ;

*Relat.* Pron.-Compl. :—**dont, de qui, duquel**, etc., see § 35.)

The *Genitive* is used to denote—

(a) the *Starting-point, Origin, Extraction, Dependence*, and the like :—

(1) in answer to the question *whence?* i.e. with regard to *place* : as,

Il descendit **de** la montagne.

*He came down from the mountain.*

Il descend **d'une** famille royale.

*He is descended from a royal family.*

Le français **dérive** du latin.

*French is derived from Latin.*

Ces vers **sont d'**Homère.

*Those verses are Homer's.*

Viens-tu **de** Paris ?—J'**en** viens.

*Are you coming from Paris?—*

*I am.*

La famille **dont** il est issu, est  
très ancienne.

*The family from which he comes is  
very old.*

D'où vient-il ?—**De** chez lui.

*Where does he come from?—From  
home.*

Cela ne **dépend** pas **de** moi.

*That does not depend on me.*

Ce langage **part** du cœur.

*These words come from the heart.*

Les Francs étaient **originaires**  
**de** Germanie.

*The Franks were natives of Ger-  
many.*

*Observation.*—As the prefixes **de-**, **des-**, and **dis-** convey the meaning of *separation, difference*, etc., it follows as a matter of course that Verbs compounded with those prefixes govern the *Genitive* case.

(2) in answer to the questions *since when? when? how long since?* i.e. with regard to *time* : as,

Il y a **de** cela trois semaines.

*It is now three weeks ago.*

Elle partira **de** lundi en huit.

*She will start next Monday week.*

(b) *Separation, Difference, Privation, Want, Defending from*, and the like ; in answer to the questions *where from? from what?* as,

Ne vous **écarter** pas **du** chemin.

*Do not wander from the road.*

C'est la raison qui **distingue**  
l'homme **des** (d'avec les)  
animaux.

*It is reason that distinguishes man  
from beast. \**

Elle ne **manque** **de** rien.

*She lacks nothing.*

Le pauvre orphelin fut **dépouillé**  
**de** son patrimoine.

*The poor orphan was despoiled of  
his patrimony.*

Dieu me <b>garde de</b> tels amis.	<i>God save me from such friends.</i>
Les stores <b>garantissent du</b> soleil.	<i>The blinds screen from the sun.</i>
Il <b>s'abstient de</b> vin ; quant à moi, je ne saurais m' <b>en passer</b> .	<i>He abstains from wine ; as for me, I cannot do without it.</i>
Il <b>s'en est défait</b> .	<i>He has got rid of it.</i>

[Cp. Lat.—Nulla re caret. Nudare aliquem praesidiis.]

Thus with *Adjectives* :—

Ce récit est bien **éloigné de** la vérité. Il est **absent de** la maison. Nul n'est **exempt de** la mort.

*Observation 1.*—Under this head may be classed Verbs of *Receiving, Taking, Asking, Expecting* (see, however, § 130, c), in answer to the question from whom? as,

Les agréments qu'il a **reçus de** la nature. **Qu'exigez-vous de** moi ?  
Il **hérita de** son oncle.

*Observation 2.*—A few Verbs and Adjectives denoting the contrary of the above take **de** ; as, (s') **approcher de**, **rapprocher de**, **voisin de**, **proche de** : as,

**Approchez-vous de** moi. *Come near me.*  
Ce jardin est trop **voisin du** grand chemin. *This garden is too near the highway.*

*Observation 3.*—Here notice also the genitive of *Difference* after Comparatives, in answer to the question by how much? in any relation : as,

Nous n'étions pas **moins de** cent personnes. Nous y avons passé **plus de** trois ans.

(c) The *Instrument, Means, Agent*, and the like ; in answer to questions by what means? wherewith? whereby? as,

Elle nous <b>faisait signe de</b> la main.	<i>She was beckoning to us.</i>
Ils m'ont <b>importuné de</b> leurs demandes.	<i>They have wearied me with their requests.</i>
Il le <b>frappa de</b> son poignard.	<i>He struck him with his dagger.</i>
Ce prince est toujours <b>accompagné d'une</b> suite nombreuse.	<i>This prince is always attended by a numerous retinue.</i>
Le berger l' <b>atteignit d'un</b> coup de pierre.	<i>The shepherd struck (hit) him with a stone.</i>
<b>Jouer du</b> piano, <b>de</b> la guitare (see § 134, a).	<i>To play the piano (guitar).</i>
Le passé ne <b>s'efface pas d'un</b> trait de plume.	<i>The past cannot be undone by a stroke of the pen.</i>

*Observation 1.*—After a Verb in the *Passive Voice*, **de** or **par** may be used to denote the agent, with this broad distinction—

with Verbs implying a *feeling or disposition* **de**, whilst  
with those denoting a *physical or mental operation* **par**, is preferred : as,

Il est **aimé et honoré de** ses concitoyens. Je ne suis pas **connu de** vous.  
L'Amérique fut **découverte par** Christophe Colomb.

Thus :—blâmé, loué, honoré, aimé, haï, etc., take **de** ;  
whilst battu, trouvé, cherché, fabriqué, etc., take **par**.

Suivi, précédé, accompagné, and the like, though denoting *physical actions*, exceptionally take **de** :—Suivi **d'une** nombreuse escorte.

[Cp. Lat. Abl. Cornibus tauri, apri dentibus, morsu leones se tutantur.—Cicero.]

*Observation 2.*—The use of **de** to denote the *instrument* is limited to a certain number of idiomatic Adverbial Phrases. The following examples will best show its special use as compared with **à** (§ 134, *a*) and **avec** :—

{ Cela est écrit <b>de</b> sa main.	<i>That is in his handwriting.</i>
{ Cela est écrit <b>au</b> crayon.	<i>That is pencil writing.</i>
{ Cela est écrit <b>avec</b> un crayon.	<i>That was written with a pencil.</i>
{ Être <b>de</b> sang-froid.	<i>To be in cold blood.</i>
{ Il lui a parlé <b>avec</b> son sang-froid ordinaire.	<i>He spoke to him with his usual coolness.</i>
{ Mesurer <b>des</b> yeux.	<i>To scan : to eye from head to foot.</i>
{ Mesurer <b>à</b> l'aune, au mètre.	<i>To measure by the ell, by the yard.</i>

It is impossible to draw a hard-and-fast line between the uses of **de**, **à**, and **avec**, denoting the *instrument*; the few examples given above will, however, tend to show that (1) **de** rather denotes the *agent* very often a part of the body; (2) **à** the technical *process*, according to which any handiwork is performed; whilst (3) **avec** indicates the *instrument* itself with which it is done.

(*d*) The *Material, Contents*, after Verbs of *Making, Filling, Covering, Adorning, Providing, Feeding*, and the like, in answer to the question *wherewith?* as,

Cette ville est bâtie <b>de</b> bois.	<i>This town is built of wood.</i>
Il nous combla <b>de</b> bontés.	<i>He overwhelmed us with kindnesses.</i>
Cette nouvelle me remplit <b>de</b> joie.	<i>This news filled me with joy.</i>
Le ciel se couvre <b>de</b> nuages.	<i>The sky is getting overcast.</i>
Le roi était vêtu <b>de</b> ses habits royaux.	<i>The king was clothed in his regal attire.</i>
Les talents dont la nature l'a si libéralement doué.	<i>The talents with which nature has so largely endowed him.</i>
On le ceignit <b>d'une</b> épée.	<i>They girded him with a sword.</i>
L'écureuil se nourrit <b>de</b> noix.	<i>The squirrel feeds on wood-nuts.</i>
Je me munis <b>d'argent</b> pour mon voyage.	<i>I provided myself with money for the journey.</i>
Il déjeuna <b>d'un</b> poulet.	<i>He breakfasted off a chicken.</i>
Les Alpes sont couvertes <b>de</b> neige éternelle.	<i>The Alps are covered with everlasting snow.</i>
Avare <b>de</b> son temps, prodigue de son or.	<i>Sparing of his time, lavish of his gold.</i>
Ses yeux sont pleins <b>de</b> douceur.	<i>Her eyes are full of tenderness.</i>

[Cp. Lat. Abl.—Sol. cuncta suâ luce illustrat et complet. Circumdare urbem muro. Implere dolium vino. Vescor pane.]

(*e*) The *Matter concerned*—

(1) in answering to the question <i>in respect of what?</i> as,	
Il s'agit <b>du</b> salut de l'Etat [Lat. <i>The safety of the State is at stake.</i> <i>agitur</i> ].	
Il en est <b>de</b> ceci comme de tant d'autres choses.	<i>It is with this as with so many other concerns.</i>
Il est bien fait <b>de</b> sa personne.	<i>He is well shaped.</i>
Il en est <b>de</b> même de nous.	<i>It is so with us.</i>
C'en est fait <b>de</b> nous [Actum est de . . .]	<i>It is all over with us.</i>

Il s'est <b>trompé de chemin.</b>	<i>He has mistaken his way.</i>
Ces deux peuples <b>rivalisent de gloire.</b>	<i>These two nations vie with each other in glory.</i>
<b>Large d'épaules et haut de stature.</b>	<i>Broad-shouldered and tall of stature.</i>
<b>Sain d'esprit et de corps.</b>	<i>Healthy in mind and body.</i>
[Cp. Lat.— <i>Virtute et doctrina excellere.</i> ]	
Il en est <b>de même de nous.</b>	<i>It is so with us.</i>

Thus in the expressions—

**Changer d'avis, d'opinion, de climat, d'habit, etc.**  
**Redoubler d'efforts, de soins, d'attention, etc.**

<i>Observation 1.</i> —Here may be classed the Gen. of <i>price, valuation, etc.</i> : as,	
Vous me <b>payez de tout le mal que j'ai souffert.</b>	<i>You compensate me for all the wrong I have suffered.</i>
Il m' <b>offrit mille écus de mon cheval.</b>	<i>He offered me a thousand crowns for my horse.</i>
Son parrain lui a <b>servi de père.</b>	<i>His godfather has stood instead of a father to him.</i>
Cet homme ne m'est <b>de rien.</b>	<i>That man is nothing to me.</i>
On le <b>traita de fou.</b>	<i>They called him a madman.</i>

*Observation 2.*—Under this head comes what may be called a *cognate Genitive* :—

Il s'**endormit d'un profond sommeil.**      Il **rit, mais d'un rire amer.**

(2) in answer to the question *about (of, at) what?* after verbs of *Perceiving, Recollecting, Informing, Speaking, Employing*, and the like (this last class is largely made up of Reflexive Verbs); as,

Je m' <b>aperçois de mon erreur.</b>	<i>I perceive my mistake.</i>
<b>Souviens-toi de tes promesses.</b>	<i>Remember your promises.—I shall remember them.</i>
—Je m' <b>en souviendrai.</b>	
Il ne <b>se doutait de rien.</b>	<i>He suspected nothing.</i>
L'affaire <b>dont nous parlons</b> est très sérieuse.	<i>The affair of which we are speaking is very serious.</i>

[Cp. Lat. Gen.—*Vivorum memini, nec possum oblivisci mortuorum.*]

Nous <b>en causerons</b> demain.	<i>We will talk about it to-morrow.</i>
Ce livre <b>traite des métaux.</b>	<i>This book treats of metals.</i>
Il est <u><b>convenu</b></u> lui-même <b>de sa méprise.</b>	<i>He himself owned his mistake.</i>
Dans un pays où l'opinion publique <b>décide de tout, les journaux sont une arme mortelle.</b>	<i>In a country where public opinion decides on everything, the press is a mortal weapon.</i>

(f) *Cause, Motive*, in answer to the questions *because of what? in consequence of what? from what?* as,

Le Camoëns <b>mourut de chagrin et de misère.</b>	<i>Camoens died of grief and distress.</i>
Elle <b>pleura de joie.</b>	<i>She wept for joy.</i>
La France <b>tombera de fatigue</b> aux mains d'un dictateur.	<i>France will fall through weariness into the hands of a dictator.</i>
Il <b>rougit de colère.</b>	<i>He blushed (reddened) with anger.</i>
Il demeura <b>muet d'étonnement.</b>	<i>He was struck dumb with astonishment.</i>

(g) *Affection*, and the like, in answer to the question at (*with*, *for*) *what*? after Verbs and Adjectives implying *Mental Emotion*—*Joy, Grief, Fear, Pride, Scorn, Shame, Anger, Surprise*, and the like: as,

L'homme de bien se réjouit du bonheur d'autrui.	<i>The righteous man rejoices at other people's happiness.</i>
Il s'afflige d'une chose dont il devrait se féliciter.	<i>He grieves at that on which he ought to congratulate himself.</i>
Il s'offense de rien.	<i>He takes offence at anything.</i>
Je me repens de ma faute.	<i>I repent of my fault.</i>
Il se piquait de noblesse.	<i>He prided himself on being of noble birth.</i>
Il ne se soucie de personne.	<i>He cares for nobody.</i>
Les nations s'indignent de ce joug honteux.	<i>The nations felt wroth at this shameful yoke.</i>
Je m'étonne de vos procédés.	<i>I am astonished at your proceedings.</i>
Il devrait avoir honte de sa conduite; pour moi, j'en suis tout confus.	<i>He ought to be ashamed of his conduct; as for me, I am quite abashed at it.</i>
Je suis heureux de votre bonheur.	<i>I rejoice at your happiness.</i>
Il est content (satisfait) de son sort.	<i>He is satisfied with his fate.</i>
Elle n'en est pas fâchée.	<i>She is not sorry for it.</i>

*Observation.*—It will be noticed that, for obvious reasons, most Verbs of this class are *reflexive*.

[Cp. the Lat. Abl. of *cause*—*Vir bonus gaudet felicitate aliena. Fruor otio. Gloriarī victoria sua.*

So also the *Gen.*—*Me pœnitēt culpæ meæ. Miserere pauperum.*]

(h) *Accusation, Retribution, Blame, Praise, Recognition*, and the like, in answer to the questions *for what? on account of what?* as,

On l'accusa d'un crime honteux.	<i>They accused him with a disgraceful crime.</i>
Pour se punir de ses crimes involontaires, Œdipe s'était condamné lui même à perdre la lumière.	<i>To punish himself for his involuntary crimes, O. had doomed himself to the loss of his eyesight.</i>
Je vous remercie de votre bonté.	<i>I thank you for your kindness.</i>
Comment se pourrait-il excuser d'une telle faute?	<i>How could he exculpate himself of such an offence?</i>
Permettez-moi de vous féliciter de votre grand succès.	<i>Allow me to congratulate you on your great success.</i>

Rien ne peut <b>dédommager de</b>	<i>Nothing can make up for the loss</i>
la perte d'un tel ami.	<i>of such a friend.</i>
Je lui suis <b>redevable de</b> cette	<i>I am indebted to him for this situ-</i>
place.	<i>ation.</i>
Son sort est <b>digne d'envie.</b>	<i>His fate is enviable.</i>
[Cp. Lat. Gen.— <i>Insimulare aliquem furti.</i> ]	

(i) *Measure, Comparison, etc.*, in answer to the question *how much? how long? etc.*; *by how much? as*,

Il était armé d'un bâton <b>long de</b>	<i>He was armed with a stick six feet</i>
six pieds.	<i>long.</i>
L'armée était <b>forte de</b> cent mille	<i>The army was a hundred thousand</i>
hommes.	<i>strong.</i>
La rivière a <b>baissé d'un pied.</b>	<i>The river has fallen one foot.</i>
L'horloge <b>retarde de</b> quinze	<i>The clock loses a quarter of an hour.</i>
minutes.	
Il s'en faut ( <b>de*</b> ) beaucoup.	} <i>It wants a great deal, or, it is far</i>
* Also used without <b>de</b> :— <b>Beaucoup</b>	
( <b>peu</b> ) s'en faut que . . .	<i>from being . . .</i>

(j) *Duty, Office, Mark, Property, characteristic Feature, after être*: *as*,

Il <b>est de</b> mon devoir d'obéir.	<i>It is my duty to obey.</i>
C'est d'un bon cœur.	<i>That comes from a kind heart.</i>
Ce mot <b>est du</b> style poétique.	<i>This word is in poetic style.</i>
Cette affaire <b>est du</b> ressort de la	<i>That affair is cognisable in the</i>
cour royale.	<i>King's Bench.</i>

[Cp. Lat. Gen.—*Militum est duci parere.*]

137 B. — THE INDIRECT ADVERBIAL COMPLEMENT (*time, place, and manner*) governed by **de**, independently of the government of a Verb, Noun, or Adjective:—

(a) answering to the question *when?* \

Il se lève <b>de</b> bonne heure.	Le coq chante <b>de</b> grand matin
Elle vient nous voir <b>de</b> temps en	<i>(early).</i>
temps ( <b>de</b> temps à autre).	<i>(from time to time).</i>
Vous ne verrez pas cela <b>de</b> votre	<b>De</b> jour, <b>de</b> nuit [ <i>de</i> die; <i>de</i>
<b>vivant</b> ( <i>in your lifetime</i> ).	<i>nocte</i> ].

(b) answering to the questions *how? in what manner?* *as*,

Je le ferai <b>de</b> tout mon cœur	Il l'a fait <b>de</b> gaité de cœur
( <i>with all my heart</i> ).	( <i>wantonly</i> ).
Vous ne réussirez pas <b>de</b> cette	Il l'a dit <b>de</b> bonne foi.
manière.	

*Observation.*—Here may be classed the genitive of *quality*: as,

Cette plaisanterie est de mauvais goût.

*This joke is in bad taste.*

Cela n'est pas de saison.

*That is out of season.*

L'étiquette est de rigueur ici.

*Etiquette is strictly required here.*

(c) answering to the question *whence? where? whither?*

Il est venu de ce côté-ci.

*He has come this way.*

Il est allé de ce côté-là.

*He has gone that way.*

Il est de l'autre côté.

*He is on the other side.*

Ils arrivent de toutes parts.

*They arrive from all sides (everywhere).*

Il fut convenu de part et d'autre.

*It was agreed on both sides.*

### 138 IV.—THE NOUN IN ADVERBIAL RELATION GOVERNED BY OTHER PREPOSITIONS.

The various meanings of Prepositions having been treated at full length in the *Accidence* (see §§ 87-90), it remains now to classify them with regard to their *functions*, according as they are used to form *Adverbial Adjuncts* of—

(a) *Place*, (b) *Time*, (c) *Manner*, *Instrument*, *Material*, *Agent*, and (d) *Cause*, *Motive*, *Purpose*, *Respect*.

(a) *Adverbial Adjuncts of PLACE*:

(1) in answer to the questions *where? whither?*

Il demeure à Berlin.	Il est retourné à Berlin.	<i>at, in, to.</i>
Elle se jeta à l'eau.		<i>into.</i>
Ils sont dans la prison.	Il fut jeté dans la Bastille.	<i>in, into.</i>
Ils sont en prison.	Elle est allée en France.	<i>in, to; into.</i>
Il reste chez lui.	Il est rentré chez lui.	<i>home, at.</i>
C'était la coutume chez les Romains.		<i>among; with.</i>
Il reste avec nous.		<i>with.</i>
Il est assis derrière nous.		<i>behind.</i>
Après (derrière) le parterre est un bowlingrin.		<i>behind.</i>
Il soupire après cette place.		<i>after, for.</i>
L'arbre est devant l'église.	Regarder devant soi.	<i>before.</i>
Il s'assit sur le banc.	Il tomba sur l'ennemi.	<i>on, upon.</i>
Se tenir sous un arbre.		<i>under, below.</i>
Cela s'est passé sous mes yeux.		<i>beneath, before.</i>
Il travaille près de la porte	A Passy, près Paris.	<i>near, nigh.</i>
Il reste (revient) auprès de moi.		<i>near.</i>
Il est logé hors la barrière.	Hors d'ici.	<i>outside, out of.</i>
Elle se tourna vers lui.		<i>towards.</i>
Appuyé contre le mur.	Marcher contre l'ennemi.	<i>against.</i>
Se trouver (se jeter) entre deux feux.		<i>between.</i>
Il se trouva (mêla) parmi eux.		<i>among, amongst.</i>

Être couché (jeter, tomber) **par** terre.

Le pays qui s'étend depuis la Loire jusqu'à la Seine.

Aller **à travers** le bois.

Il se fit jour **au travers** des ennemis.

*on, to (lit. by).  
as far as, up to.  
through, across.  
through.*

Under this head may be classed a few compound Prepositions—**au dessus-de**, **au dessous-de**, **au delà de**, **en deçà**, **au dehors de**, **au devant de**, **vis-a-vis (de)**, **le long de**, etc. See § 90.

(2) answering to the question *whence?*

D'où venez-vous?—Je viens de chez moi (see § 136, a, 1). *from.*

Il est natif **de** Rouen. *of.*

Il vient **de derrière** la maison. *from behind.*

Nos voisins **d'outre** Manche. *from beyond.*

Otez la poussière **de-dessus** ces livres. *from.*

Qui est celui **d'entre** vous? *from amongst.*

Séparer l'or **d'avec** l'argent. *from.*

La France s'étend **de** l'Est à l'Ouest, *from.*

**depuis** les Voges et le Jura jusqu'à l'Océan. *from.*

Il suivit le fleuve **dès** sa source. *from.*

(b) *Adverbial Adjuncts of TIME:*

in answer to the questions *when? how long? since when? until when?*

Je dîne **à** midi (see § 134, b). *at.*

**De** mémoire d'homme on n'a vu un tel dégât (see § 136). *within.*

Il arrivera **dans** huit jours. **Dans** l'an 1789 (see § 89). *within, in.*

Il le fera **en** huit jours. **En** 1789 la révolution éclata. *within, in.*

Je le sais **depuis** longtemps. *Since, for.*

Je suis votre ami **pour** la vie (referring to Fut. time only). *for.*

**Dès** aujourd'hui le train partira à midi. *on and from.*

Il arriva **avant** nous. *before.*

Je partirai **après** lui. *after.*

**Avec** le temps tout se sait. *in course of.*

Trois fois **par** jour. *a, each, per.*

Cela est arrivé **sous** tel consul. *under.*

**Vers** (sur) les dix heures. *towards.*

**Entre** onze heures et midi. *between.*

Il fut malheureux **durant** toute sa vie (sa vie **durant**). *during.*

Cela arriva **pendant** la nuit. *during.*

(c) *Adverbial Adjuncts of MANNER, MATERIAL, INSTRUMENT, AGENT:*

in answer to the questions *how? wherewith? whereon? whereby? by what means? etc.*

Elle a parlé **à** haute voix (see § 134, a). *in.*

Cela est dessiné **au** fuseau. *with.*

C'est très bien fait **à** vous (see § 133, 2). *in.*

J'ai entendu dire cela à votre frère.	<i>by.</i>
Je le ferai <b>de</b> cette manière (see § 90).	<i>in.</i>
Il fut atteint d'une balle.	<i>by.</i>
Il vit <b>de</b> légumes.	<i>on.</i>
Il travaille <b>avec</b> ardeur. Avec de la patience } on vient à bout de tout. Il s'est battu <b>avec</b> lui. }	<i>with.</i>
Que pouvais-je faire <b>sans</b> argent ?	<i>without.</i>
S'épuiser <b>en</b> efforts inutiles.	<i>in.</i>
Le nuage se résout <b>en</b> pluie.	<i>into.</i>
Il fait les glaces <b>dans</b> la perfection.	<i>to.</i>
L'entreprise fut conduite <b>par</b> un homme habile.	<i>by.</i>
Il l'a obtenu <b>par</b> force. Je vois <b>par</b> ce que tu m'écris.	<i>by, from.</i>
Il travaille <b>sur</b> l'or.	<i>in.</i>
J'en viendrai à bout <b>moyennant</b> la grâce de Dieu.	<i>by.</i>

(d) *Adverbial Adjuncts of CAUSE, MOTIVE, PURPOSE, RESPECT, ACCORDANCE :*

in answer to the questions *why? out of what? for what? in respect of what? according to what?*

Je l'ai dit à votre <b>intention</b> .	}	<i>for the sake of.</i>
Il est venu à <b>cause</b> de vous.		
Il frémit <b>de</b> rage. Il mourut <b>de</b> douleur.		<i>with, out of, of.</i>
Il est bien aise <b>de</b> votre succès.		<i>at.</i>
Ils l'ont fait <b>par</b> crainte.		<i>out of.</i>
On l'a puni <b>pour</b> de bonnes raisons.		<i>for.</i>
Je ne suis pas fait <b>pour</b> ce métier.		<i>for.</i>
<b>Sous</b> ce rapport je suis de votre avis.		<i>in.</i>
Il a agi <b>en</b> brave homme.		<i>like.</i>
Il faut juger <b>suivant</b> les lois.	}	<i>according to.</i>
Chacun sera récompensé <b>selon</b> ses œuvres.		
Ce portrait est fait <b>d'après</b> nature.		<i>after.</i>
Il m'a entretenu <b>concernant</b> (touchant) vos affaires.		<i>concerning.</i>
Elles sont sorties <b>malgré</b> la pluie.		<i>in spite of.</i>

For lists of Verbs with different constructions, see Appendix to Syntax.

## THE INFINITIVE.

### RÉSUMÉ.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES:—The Infinitive a Verbal Noun. The Verbal Forms it corresponds to in English and Latin.

SPECIAL RULES:—

#### I. The Pure Infinitive (without Preposition):—

(a) as Noun Subject; (b) as Noun Predicative Complement; (c) as Complement of Verbs of Motion; (d) as Direct Object of Transitive Verbs; (e) as Complement of the Object (= Accusative with Infinitive) after *faire* and *laisser*; (f) as Compl. of an implied Object.

#### II. The Infinitive with *de*:—

(a) as logical Subject of Impersonal Verbs; (b) as Direct Object of Transitive Verbs; (c) as Attribute of Nouns, or Complement of Intransitive Verbs and Adjectives.

III. The Infinitive with *à* :—

(a) as Direct Object of a few Transitive Verbs; (b) as Attributive of Nouns or Complement of Verbs, Verbal Phrases, and Adjectives.

IV. Verbs, Nouns, and Adjectives taking the Infinitive both with *de* and *à*.

## V. The Infinitive with other Prepositions.

## VI. The Infinitive used instead of the Finite Verb.

## 139 INTRODUCTORY :—The Infinitive is a VERBAL NOUN :—

(1) As a VERB it is used both in the ACTIVE and PASSIVE Voices, in the PRESENT and PAST—but not Future—Tenses, irrespective of Number and Person :—

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
<i>Pres.</i> —Mordre.	Être mordu.
<i>Past.</i> —Avoir mordu.	Avoir été mordu.

Like other Verbs it has the power of governing cases :—

<i>Acc.</i> Avouer <b>sa</b> faute.
<i>Gen.</i> Parler <b>de</b> sa faute.
<i>Dat.</i> Se complaire <b>à</b> sa faute.

(2) As a NOUN it may be said to be Neutral in Gender. In the few instances, however, in which it is used with the Definite Article, as—**le boire et le manger**, it is treated as Masculine Singular.

Like other Nouns it may be used as the *Subject*, *Object*, or *Complement* (§ 101) of a sentence, also as the *Attributive* or *Appositive* to a Noun :—

- (a) as *Subject*: **Mentir** est honteux = Le mensonge est honteux.  
 (b) as *Attribute*: Le vice **de mentir** = Le vice du mensonge.  
 (c) as *Direct Object*: Il osa **mentir** = Il osa dire un mensonge.  
 (d) *Indir. Object*: Il s'obstine **à mentir** = Il s'obstine au mensonge.  
 (e) as *Predicative Complement*: Calomnier c'est **mentir** = La calomnie est un mensonge.  
 (f) as *Adverbial Adjunct*: Il travaille **pour vivre** = Il travaille pour sa vie.

(g) as *Appositive*: Il n'eut qu'une seule pensée: **s'arracher** au danger.

Observation 1.—The Infinitive answers to both English Verbal Nouns; *i.e.*

(a) the INFINITIVE :—	<i>to lie,</i>	mentir.
(b) the GERUND in <i>-ing</i> :—	<i>lying,</i>	mentir.

Observation 2.—As compared with Latin, it answers to—

(a) the INFINITIVE :—Turpe est mentiri.	{ Mentir est honteux. Il est honteux de mentir.
(b) the GERUND :—Aqua utilis est bibendo.	L'eau est bonne à boire.
(c) the GERUNDIVE :—Ars educandorum puerorum.	L'art d'élever les garçons.
(d) the SUPINE in <i>um</i> :—Cubitum ire.	Aller se coucher.
(e) the SUPINE in <i>u</i> :—Mirabile dictu.	Merveilleux à raconter.

140 I. The PURE INFINITIVE, *i.e.* without Preposition, is used—

(a) as the SUBJECT of the Verb **être** : as,

Promettre et tenir sont deux.	<i>It is one thing to make a promise, and another to keep it.</i>
Haïr est un tourment.	<i>To hate is a torment.</i>
Mentir est honteux.	<i>To lie (lying) is shameful.</i>
Vouloir c'est pouvoir.	<i>Where there is a will there is a way.</i>

*Observation.*—Thus also with *Impersonal Verbs* as the *real* (logical) Subject :—

Il fait cher vivre dans ce pays, *being virtually* = **Vivre** est cher, etc.  
*It is expensive to live in this country,* „ *Living is expensive, etc.*

(b) as the PREDICATE - COMPLEMENT to Verbs of *Being*, *Seeming*, and the like :—**être**, **se trouver**, **sembler**, **paraître**, **être censé** (*supposé*, *jugé*, *réputé*), etc. : as,

Espérer c'est jouir.	<i>To hope is to enjoy.</i>
Ils paraissent hésiter.	<i>They seem to hesitate.</i>
Vous êtes censé l'avoir fait.	<i>You are credited with having done it.</i>

*Observation.*—Notice in— '*Il vaudrait mieux rester que de partir si tard*'—the use of **de** before an Infinitive standing as the *second member of a comparison*.

(c) as a COMPLEMENT (Extension) to Verbs of *Motion* and to so-called *Auxiliary Verbs of Mood* :—**vouloir**, **pouvoir**, **devoir**, **falloir**, also of **savoir**, **oser**, **laisser**, and **faire** (*Prolate Infinit.*) : as,

Allons nous promener.	<i>Let us go for a walk.</i>
Elle descendit ouvrir la porte.	<i>She went down stairs to open the door.</i>
Venez vous asseoir auprès de moi.	<i>Come and sit beside me.</i>
Envoyez chercher le médecin.	<i>Send for the physician.</i>
On allait se mettre à table.	<i>They were just about to sit down to table.</i>
Pouvez-(savez-)vous faire cela ?	<i>Can you do that ?</i>
Il vous faut vaincre ou mourir.	<i>You must conquer or die.</i>
Un homme d'honneur doit tenir sa parole.	<i>A man of honour must keep his word.</i>
Il sait se faire valoir.	<i>He knows how to make the most of himself.</i>
J'aurais voulu pouvoir lui expliquer la chose.	<i>I would fain have explained the matter to him.</i>

[Comp. the Lat. Supine : Cubitum ire—Aller se coucher.]

(d) As the DIRECT OBJECT of Verbs of *Thinking, Knowing, Declaring, Wishing, and Perceiving* :—

answering (1) to the *Infinitive*, (2) to the *Gerund* in *-ing*, and (3) to a *Substantive Clause*, in English : as,

Nous désirons vous être utile.	<i>We wish to serve you.</i>
Daignez m'honorer d'un mot de réponse.	<i>Deign to honour me with a word in reply.</i>
J'espère vous revoir demain.	<i>I hope to see you again to-morrow.</i>
Je ne me rappelle pas y avoir été.	<i>I do not remember having been there.</i>
Cet individu déclare l'avoir entendu.	<i>This fellow declares he has heard it.</i>
J'aime mieux tout vous dire.	<i>I prefer telling you everything.</i>
Je crois entendre le son des cloches.	<i>I think I can hear the bells ringing.</i>
Elle a cru bien faire.	<i>She thought she was doing well.</i>
Il prétend y avoir été forcé.	<i>He asserts he has been compelled to do it.</i>

(e) As the COMPLEMENT of the OBJECT (this Object being virtually the *Subject* of the *Infinitive*), answering to the Latin and English *Accusative + Infinitive* construction :—

after Verbs of *Perceiving* and *Causing*, as— **voir, regarder, entendre, ouïr ; faire and laisser ; envoyer, mener, mettre ;** in which case the Subject of the *Infinitive* may be a *Noun* (or another part of speech used as such), a *Conjunct. Pers.* *Pron.*, or a *Relat. Pronoun* (see § 127) : as,

Je vois venir votre frère.	<i>I see your brother coming.</i>
Voici venir le printemps.	<i>Now the spring is approaching.</i>
On entend bourdonner les abeilles.	<i>One hears the bees humming.</i>
Je sentais battre mon cœur.	<i>I felt my heart beating.</i>
Faites entrer ces messieurs.	<i>Show these gentlemen in.</i>
Laissez jouer ces enfants.	<i>Let these children play.</i>
Je le vois venir.	<i>I see him coming.</i>
La voici venir.	<i>Here she comes.</i>
Je l'ai envoyé allumer mon feu.	<i>I have sent him to make my fire.</i>
Je l'en ferai souvenir.	<i>I will make him remember it.</i>
Je le lui ai entendu dire à elle-même (see § 131).	<i>I have heard her say so herself.</i>

L'orage **que** je vois approcher.

*The thunderstorm that I see approaching.*

Les enfants **que** je fais jouer.

*The children whom I set to play.*

*Observation 1.*—In *Adjective Clauses*, the Accusative (of the Relat. Pron.) with Infinitive may stand not only after Verbs of *Perceiving* but also of *Thinking, Knowing, and Saying*:—  
Le phénix est un oiseau **que** l'on dit re-  
naître de sa cendre. *The phoenix is a bird which is said to revive from its ashes.*

The Reflexive Pron. may be left out in the Acc. + Infinit. construction: as,

Je l'en ferai souvenir.

*I shall remind him of it.*

*Observation 2.*—In accordance with § 31, the Obj.-Pron. must always stand after a Verb in the *Imperative-Affirmative*: as,

Voyez-le venir.

*Laissez-la faire.*

but after the *Imperative-Negative* the general rule holds good: as,

Ne la laissez pas partir.

After a second Imperat., it also occurs before (especially in the 16th and 17th cent.):—

Laissons la raillerie et me dis . . .

(f) As the *Complement of an Object not expressed* (this implied object being virtually the Subject of the Infinitive), after **faire, laisser, voir, entendre**, in this case corresponding to the English *Passive Infinitive*: as,

Avez-vous fait relier vos livres?

*Have you had your books bound?*

Je les ai fait relier.

*I have got them bound.*

Elle s'est fait peindre.

*She has had her likeness taken.*

Savez-vous vous faire comprendre?

*Can you make yourself understood?*

Il se laissa tromper.

*He suffered himself to be imposed upon.*

Je leur ai vu offrir des présents.

*I have witnessed presents being offered to them.*

(See § 131).

[but—Je les ai vus offrir des présents.

*I have seen them offering presents.]*

J'ai entendu siffler ces acteurs.

*I have heard these actors hissed.*

[but—Je les ai entendus siffler les acteurs.

*I have heard them hissing the actors.]*

This distinction between expressed or implied Object is important for the agreement of the Part. Perf. of the above Verbs. See 150 (a).

*Observation 1.*—The logical Subj. of the Infinitive may be supplied by a complement governed by a preposition: as,

Ces qualités le faisaient aimer et respecter des soldats.

*These qualities made him beloved and respected by the soldiers.*

*Observation 2.*—The Infinitive may be used elliptically after **que, de quoi, pourquoi, plutôt**, especially in exclamations and questions:—

Il n'a pas de quoi vivre.

*He has not enough to live upon.*

Il ne sait que faire de son temps.

*He does not know how to employ his time.*

Plûtôt souffrir que mourir!

*Rather suffer than die.*

Pourquoi vous arroger ce droit?

*Why (should you) claim this right?*

## THE INFINITIVE GOVERNED BY PREPOSITIONS.

**141** INTRODUCTORY :—All prepositions which admit of a Verb as their Complement, *i.e.* **de, à, pour, après, sans, par,** require that Verb in the *Infinitive*; except **en**, which is the only Preposition that takes the *Participle Perfect*.

II. The INFINITIVE governed by **de** is used—

(a) as the LOGICAL SUBJECT, with Impersonal Verbs and Phrases, introduced by the Grammatical Subj. **il** or **ce** : as,  
 Il est beau de mourir pour la patrie! *It is glorious to die for one's country!*  
 C'est déraisonner **que\*de** parler *It is nonsense to talk thus.*  
 ainsi.

\* When, for the sake of stress, the Complement is placed before the Subject, the latter is generally emphasised by **que**. See § 176 (c).

(b) as the DIRECT OBJECT of most Transitive Verbs (see § 127), especially those denoting *Command, Advice, Entreaty, Cause, Emotion (Joy, Fear, Sorrow, etc.)* : as,

Je vous <b>demande de</b> m'écouter.	<i>Pray, listen to me.</i>
<b>Cessez de</b> faire du tapage.	<i>Stop that noise.</i>
Je vous <b>promets de</b> suivre vos conseils.	<i>I promise you to follow your advice.</i>
Il <b>regrette d'avoir</b> négligé ses devoirs.	<i>He is sorry he has neglected his duties.</i>
Je me <b>propose de</b> lui écrire.	<i>I intend writing to him.</i>
Elle ne vous <b>pardonnera jamais de</b> lui avoir joué ce tour.	<i>She will never forgive you for having served her this bad turn.</i>
On lui <b>reproche de</b> servir deux maîtres à la fois.	<i>He is reproached with serving two masters at the same time.</i>

Observe that the very same Verbs which take their NOUN-OBJECT *without Preposition*, may require their INFINITIVE-OBJECT *with de*, and sometimes *with à* : as,

Promettre une visite,	<i>but—</i>	promettre <b>de</b> visiter.
Permettre un achat,	„	permettre <b>d'</b> acheter.
Défendre le vin,	„	défendre <b>de</b> boire.
Craindre la mort,	„	craindre <b>de</b> mourir.
Aimer le jeu,	„	aimer <b>à</b> jouer, etc.

(c) as the ATTRIBUTE of Nouns, or the COMPLEMENT of Verbs and Adjectives, which, according to § 126, require their Noun-Complement preceded by **de** ('On l'accuse **de ce** crime,' = On l'accuse **d'avoir commis** ce crime) : as,

L'art <b>d'écrire</b> .	<i>The art of writing.</i>
Le plaisir <b>de</b> vous voir.	<i>The pleasure of seeing you.</i>
L'occasion <b>de</b> lui être utile.	<i>The opportunity of serving him.</i>

L'ennemi menace de nous attaquer.	<i>The enemy threatens to attack us.</i>
Nous nous réjouissons de vous revoir.	<i>We are glad to see you again.</i>
Je me souviens de l'avoir vu quelque part.	<i>I remember having seen him some- where.</i>
L'œil ne se lasse pas de voir cette vallée riante.	<i>The eye never tires of seeing this smiling valley.</i>
Je viens de rencontrer le cortège.	<i>I have just met the procession.</i>
Vous êtes libre d'accepter ou de refuser.	<i>You are free to accept or to refuse.</i>
Il n'est pas digne de vivre.	<i>He is not worthy of life.</i>
Il est plus ambitieux de servir son prince que de lui plaire.	<i>He is more ambitious to serve his sovereign than to please him.</i>
Je suis charmé de vous ren- contrer.	<i>I am delighted to meet you.</i>
Il est loin de penser ainsi.	<i>He is far from thinking thus.</i>

*Observation.*—An historical Infinitive with *de* frequently stands absolutely instead of a Finite Verb :—

Aussitôt les ennemis de s'enfuir et de jeter leurs armes.

## 142 III. The INFINITIVE with *à* is used—

(a) as the DIRECT OBJECT after a few Transitive Verbs, especially those of *Teaching, Showing, and Learning* :—*enseigner, instruire, montrer, apprendre, entendre* ; also—*aimer, avoir (il y a), chercher, donner, trouver, essayer, commencer, continuer, préparer, etc.* (The same Verb which takes a *Noun-Object without Preposition* may require the *Infinitive-Object* with *à* :—‘ Il aime le jeu ; ’ but—‘ Il aime à jouer ’) : as,

L'habitude apprend à sup- porter la fatigue.	<i>Habit teaches us how to bear fatigue.</i>
Montrez-nous à déchiffrer ce grimoire.	<i>Show us how to decipher this scrawl.</i>
Les cieux instruisent la terre à révéler leur auteur.	<i>The heavens teach the earth to wor- ship their creator.</i>
J'ai à travailler ce matin.	<i>I have to work this morning.</i>
Qu'a-t-on à me reprocher ?	<i>What have they to reproach me with ?</i>
J'aime beaucoup à flâner.	<i>I am very fond of lounging.</i>
Il trouve à redire à tout ce qu'on dit.	<i>He finds fault with everything we say.</i>

(b) as the *ATTRIBUTE* of a *Noun*, or as a *COMPLEMENT* of *Verbs*, *Adjectives*, and *Verbal Phrases*, which, according to §§ 130-2, require their *Noun-Complement* preceded by *à* :—

(1) after *Nouns*, to denote their *Destination*, *Fitness*, or *Characteristic Quality*—both with *Active* and *Passive* force : as,

Du bois <b>à brûler</b> .	<i>Firewood.</i>
Une machine <b>à coudre</b> .	<i>A sewing-machine.</i>
Une maison <b>à louer</b> ou <b>à vendre</b> .	<i>A house to let or sell.</i>
Un ouvrage <b>à recommencer</b> .	<i>A work to be done again.</i>
Une occasion <b>à ne pas laisser échapper</b> .	<i>An opportunity not to be missed.</i>
Paris est une ville <b>à voir</b> .	<i>Paris is a city worth seeing.</i>
Il n'est pas homme <b>à se rebuter</b> .	<i>He is not easily put out.</i>
C'est un homme <b>à pendre</b> .	<i>He is a man deserving the halter.</i>

(2) after *Verbs* and *Adjectives* denoting *Tendency*, *Purpose*, *Aim*, *Occupation*, *Consent*, *Exhortation*, and the like, answering the questions—*in what? to do what? in or by doing what?* as,

Cela n' <b>aboutira</b> qu' <b>à</b> le perdre.	<i>That will only end in ruining him.</i>
La chimie a <b>contribué à</b> perfectionner l'agriculture.	<i>Chemistry has contributed to improve agriculture.</i>
Vous m'avez <b>autorisé à</b> faire des démarches.	<i>You have authorised me to take steps.</i>
Dans les combats de mer, tout <b>conspire à</b> augmenter les périls.	<i>In naval fights everything combines to increase the perils.</i>
Je vous <b>engage à</b> lire cela.	<i>I advise you to read that.</i>
Il s'est <b>mis</b> tout de bon <b>à</b> étudier.	<i>He set himself in right earnest to study.</i>
Il est <b>prompt à</b> servir ses amis.	<i>He is ever ready to serve his friends.</i>
L'homme juste est <b>lent à</b> punir.	<i>The righteous man is slow to punish.</i>
Nous sommes <b>prêts à</b> vaincre ou <b>à</b> mourir.	<i>We are ready to conquer or to die.</i>
Il est <b>enclin à</b> médire.	<i>He is given (prone) to slander.</i>
Il a été le <b>premier à</b> remarquer ce phénomène.	<i>He was the first to observe this phenomenon.</i>
Cela est <b>facile à</b> dire.	<i>That is easily said.</i>
Il est <b>difficile à</b> contenter.	<i>He is hard to satisfy.</i>
Ces crevettes sont <b>bonnes à</b> manger.	<i>These shrimps are good to eat.</i>
Ce serait trop <b>long à</b> expliquer.	<i>That would be too long to explain.</i>

[Comp. Lat.—Puer paratus est ad scribendum. Incredibile dictu.]

4 *Observation.*—Verbs which take *dans*, *en*, *sur*, if complemented by a *Noun*, require à if complemented by an *Infinitive*; compare—  
 Il persiste **dans** sa désobéissance. Il persiste **à** désobéir.  
 Elle persévère **dans** sa résolution. Elle persévère **à** soutenir ce qu'elle a dit.  
 Il a réussi **dans** cette entreprise. J'ai réussi **à** le faire nommer.  
 N'insistez pas **sur** cette prétention. Il insiste **à** demander cette place.  
 En quoi faites-vous **consister** la raison? La libéralité **consiste** moins **à** donner beaucoup qu'**à** donner avec à propos.

(3) after *Verbal Phrases*, in answer to the questions—in or by doing what? as,

Prendre plaisir (goût, soin, etc.) **à** étudier;

Passer son temps (ses loisirs, ses jours, sa vie, etc.) **à** ne rien faire;

Avoir de la peine (facilité, grâce, etc.) **à** s'exprimer;

Mettre son honneur (son ambition, etc.) **à** ne point céder.

See also § 143 (b) 2.

*Observation.*—Here may be classed the Infinitive used *adverbially* and answering the questions—how? in what manner or degree? by doing what? as,

A raconter ses maux, souvent on les soulage. By relating our sufferings we often relieve them.

On dirait, à vous entendre, que vous êtes bien à plaindre. To hear you, one would think you are much to be pitied.

A dire vrai (la vérité) . . . To tell the truth . . .

A tout prendre . . . All in all . . .

Elle est laide à faire peur. She is ugly enough to frighten one.

Il ressemble à son père à s'y méprendre. He is like her father to a T.

Chanter à ravir. To sing delightfully.

Also *Predicatively* with the Verb être :—

Il est à présumer. It is to be presumed.

## 143 IV. THE INFINITIVE IS USED EITHER WITH *de* or *à*,

(a) after the following *Verbs*, according to their different meaning :—

Demander **de**, to ask some one to do a thing.

Demander **à**, to ask leave to do a thing.

Manquer **de**, to be deficient in; to fail in . . .

Manquer **à**, to neglect; not to fulfil a duty.

S'occuper **de**, to see after; S'occuper **à**, to be engaged in.

Tarder **de**, (impers.) to long to . . .

Tarder **à**, to be long (late) in . . .

Venir **de**, to have just . . .; Venir **à**, to happen to . . . \*

Je vous demande **de** m'écouter. Pray listen to me!

Je ne demande qu'**à** m'amuser. All I ask for is to amuse myself.

*Observation.*—Résoudre, décider, déterminer, offrir, refuser, take the Infinitive with *de* if used *Intransitively*, with *à* if used *Transitively* or *Reflectively* :—

Il refuse **de** travailler. Il se refuse **à** travailler.

\* The arbitrary distinctions in the meaning of *commencer*, *contraindre*, *forcer*, etc., according as they are followed by *de* or *à*, to be found in most Grammars, have once for all been disposed of by Littré; cf. his Dictionary under the head of *commencer*, *continuer*, etc.

X

(b) after *Substantives*, according as they are used either—(1) with the *Definite or Indefinite Article* :—(2) with the *Partitive Art.*, without *Art.*, or as a part of a *Verbal Phrase* :—C'est **un plaisir de** vous voir si bien portant.*It is quite a treat to see you so hale and hearty.*Il a pris **la peine de** venir me voir.*He has taken the trouble to call on me.*J'aurai **la facilité de** vous voir tous les jours.*I shall have the opportunity of seeing you every day.*L'**honneur d'**achever cette entreprise vous était réservée.*The honour of carrying out this undertaking was reserved for you.*Cela **fait** (donne du) plaisir à voir.*That is gratifying to see.*Je n'ai pas **de peine à** vous croire.*I have no difficulty in believing you.*Il a **beaucoup de facilité à** s'exprimer.*He has great fluency in expressing himself.*Il **met son honneur à** ne point céder.*He makes it a point of honour not to yield. (See also III. b, 3.)*(c) after *Adjectives*, according as they are used—(1) with **il** (*impersonal*) :—Il est **difficile de** le faire.*It is difficult to do it.*Il est **impossible de** l'entendre.*It is impossible to understand it.*(2) with **ce** (*demonstrative*):—C'est **difficile à** faire.*That is difficult to do.*C'est **impossible à** croire.*It is impossible to believe that.*

144 V. The INFINITIVE stands after **par, pour, sans, après**, and after *Prepositional Conjunctions* :—**afin de, avant de, de manière (façon) à, de peur de, à moins de ; i.e.**

(a) With **par**, generally only after **commencer** and **finir** : as,Il **commença par** me flatter et **finit par** me dire des injures.*He began by flattering me and ended by insulting me.*(b) With the following, if the Subject of the *Dependent Clause* is the same as the Subject of the *Principal Sentence*—**Après, after,** instead of**après que**, with Indicative.**Pour, in order to,**

„

{ **parce que,** „  
{ **pour que,** with Subjunctive.

d

Sans, without,	instead of	sans que,	with Subjunctive.
Afin de, in order to,	"	afin que,	"
Avant de, before,	"	avant que,	"
A moins de, unless	"	à moins que . . . ne,	"
De peur de, lest,	"	de peur que . . . ne,	"
A condition de, on condition of,		à condition que,	"
De manière à,	{ so as to, "	de manière que,	{ with Indic.
De façon à,		de façon que,	{ or Subj., so that: as,
Il travaille pour s'enrichir,	{ instead of—	{ Il travaille pour qu'il s'en- richisse.	

But, the subject of the dependent Clause not being the same:—

Je le dis afin que vous le sachiez.	I say it in order that you may know it.
Il parla de manière à convaincre les juges de son innocence.	He spoke so as to convince his judges of his innocence.
Il a été chassé pour avoir trop parlé.	He was turned out for having (because he had) spoken indiscreetly.
Il est bien grand pour être si jeune.	He is very tall for one so young.
Il a reçu cette somme à condition de partir demain.	He has received this sum on condition of leaving to-morrow.

VI. Thus the INFINITIVE (pure, or with **de**) is also used instead of the INDICATIVE, CONDITIONAL, or SUBJUNCTIVE, in Substantive Clauses, whenever the Subject-Pronoun of the latter stands for the same person as the Subject or Object of the Principal Sentence; consequently in French—

*We generally say:—*

Je crois devoir vous informer.  
*I think it my duty to inform you.*

Tu espères réussir.  
*You hope to succeed.*

Il avoue avoir tort.  
*He owns to being wrong.*

Nous voudrions pouvoir lui parler.  
*We should like to be able to speak to him.*

Votre père vous permet de sortir.  
*Your father allows you to go out.*

*instead of:—*

Je crois que je dois vous informer.  
*I think I ought to inform you.*

Tu espères que tu réussiras.  
*You hope that you will succeed.*

Il avoue qu'il a tort.  
*He confesses he is wrong.*

Nous voudrions que nous pussions lui parler.  
*We wish we could speak to him.*

Votre père (vous) permet que vous sortiez.  
*Your father allows that you go out.*

## THE PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

## RÉSUMÉ.

INTRODUCTORY :—Three Verbal forms in **-ant** :  
Compared with English and Latin.

## SPECIAL RULES :—

- I. The *Verbal Adjective*, used—  
(a) attributively, (b) predicatively.
- II. The *Present Participle proper*, used—  
(a) with an Object, (b) qualified by an Adverb, (c) for an Adverbial Clause,  
(d) for an Adjective Clause, (e) absolutely.
- III. The *Gerundival Participle with en*, used—  
(a) with an Object, (b) qualified by an Adverb, (c) for an Adverbial Clause.

145 INTRODUCTORY :—There are three Verbal forms in **-ant** :—

- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| (I.) The VERBAL ADJECTIVE :—          | Une ressemblance <b>frappante</b> .           |
| (II.) The PRES. PART. proper :—       | Les marteaux <b>frappant</b> l'enclume.       |
| (III.) The GÉRONDIF with <b>en</b> :— | Elles dansaient <b>en frappant</b> des mains. |

In comparing the French Verbal form in **-ant** with the English Verbal form in **-ing**, it must first of all be borne in mind that the latter does duty for—

- (1) the *Old Infinitive* in **-an** ;
- (2) the *Old Imperfect Participle* in **-end, -ende, -and, -ande** ; and
- (3) a *Verbal Noun* in **-ing**. Hence arises great confusion. (Abbott's *Shakspearian Grammar*, § 372.)

As only the *second* of these English forms in **-ing** really corresponds to the French form in **-ant**, great care must be taken in rendering the *first* and *third* in accordance with their primitive meaning, viz. either by an *Infinitive* (see §§ 139-143), or by a *Substantive*: as,

- |  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| (1) <i>He succeeded in convincing him.</i> | Il réussit à le convaincre.    |
| (2) <i>Being ill, he could not come.</i>   | Étant malade, il ne put venir. |
| <i>The singing birds.</i>                  | Les oiseaux chantants.         |
| (3) <i>The singing of birds.</i>           | Le chant des oiseaux.          |
| <i>Lying is shameful.</i>                  | { Mentir est honteux.          |
| <i>The art of building.</i>                | { Il est honteux de mentir.    |
|  | L'art de bâtir.                |

As compared with Latin, the Verbal form in **-ant** represents

- (1) the *Participial forms* in **-ans, -ens, (Acc. -antem, -entem)** : as,  
Gallus, escam **quærens**, margaritam Un coq, **cherchant** de la nourriture,  
reperit. trouva une perle.
- (2) the *Gerunds* in **-ando, -endo** : as,  
Discit **legendo**. Il s'instruit **en lisant**.

## 146 SPECIAL RULES :

d I. THE VERBAL ADJECTIVE, which is used to express a *Permanent State, Quality, or Manner of Being*, agrees in *Gender and Number* with the Noun it qualifies. It may stand—

(a) as an *Attribute*, generally placed *after* the Noun it qualifies (see § 124, a, 2): as,

L'homme est la seule créature *Man is the only speaking creature.*  
parlante.

Une carrière **brillante**. *A brilliant career.*

Quels **brillants** exploits ! *What brilliant exploits !*

Une personne bien **pensante**. *A well-meaning person.*

(but— Une personne **pensant** bien ; see below 2 (b).

(b) as a *Predicative Complement* :—

Sa figure était **rayonnante** de *His face was beaming with delight.*  
joie.

Elle paraît **souffrante**. *She looks poorly.*

Elles sont trop **exigeantes**. *They are too exacting.*

*Observation.*—Like other qualifying Adjectives, the Verbal Adjective in *-ant* may, as *for* as usage admits, be used *substantively* :—

Les combattants, vivants, étudiants, mendiants, passants, protestants, etc.

Les calmants, dissolvants ; le couchant, le levant, le montant, etc.

II. THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE PROPER, which denotes a *Transitory Action*, remains *unchanged*.

As such, it may be distinguished from the Verbal Adjective by the following characteristic features :—

(a) the *Pres. Part.* may govern an *Object* : as,

Les ennemis se retiraient en bon *The enemies were retreating in good*  
ordre, **brûlant** leurs bagages *order, burning their baggage and*  
et **ravageant** le pays. *devastating the country.*

(b) the *Pres. Part.* may be qualified by an *Adverb* following,\* or by a *Negation* : as,

Une personne **pensant** bien. *A person of sound judgment.*

Une ambition ne **tremblant** *An ambition shrinking before no*  
devant aucun péril. *peril.*

\* The seemingly arbitrary Rule that the Verbal form in *-ant* agrees or not, according as it is preceded or followed by an Adverb, is founded on the fact that Adverbs generally stand before Adjectives, but after Verbs.

(c) the *Pres. Part.* may stand instead of an *Adverbial Clause* introduced by **comme, si, puisque, quoique**, etc., to denote a *Cause, Motive, Condition, or Concession*: as,

- Vivant** (= comme ils vivent) *Living temperately, as they do* (= as they live temperately), they have fewer wants.  
 sobrement, ils ont moins de besoins.  
 Il y a bien des pièces qui, **étant** *There are many plays which, if*  
 (= si elles étaient) **corrigées**, *corrected, might go down to*  
 pourraient aller à la postérité. *posterity.*  
 D'où vient que **connaissant** *How is it that knowing thoroughly*  
 (= quoique vous connaissiez) *these wicked men, you keep them*  
 à fond ces méchants hommes, *near you?*  
 vous les gardiez encore auprès de vous?

(d) the *Pres. Part.* may stand instead of an *Adjective Clause* introduced by **qui**: as,

- Fabius, n'écoutant** (= qui *Fabius, listening to his prudence*  
 n'écoutait) *only, checked the courage of his*  
 que sa prudence, *soldiers.*  
 contient le courage de ses soldats.

(e) the *Pres. Part.* may stand absolutely: as,

- Il n'entrera pas ici, **moi vivant.** *He shall not enter here, if I live.*  
**Chemin faisant. Dieu aidant.** *On the way. With the help of God.*

*Observation.*—From the above Rules it follows that Present Participles of *Reflexive* and *Auxiliary Verbs* remain always unchanged.

III. THE GERUNDIVAL PARTICIPLE (GÉRONDIF), preceded by **en**, always remains unchanged.

Like the *Pres. Part.* without **en**, it may be used—

(a) with an *Object*: as,

- En disant** ces mots, les larmes *As he said this, his eyes filled with*  
 lui vinrent aux yeux. *tears.*

(b) qualified by an *Adverb*: as,

- En agissant** ainsi, vous avez *By acting thus you have disarmed*  
 désarmé son ressentiment. *his resentment.*

(c) instead of an *Adverbial Clause*: as,

- En forgeant** on devient forgeron. *By dint of forging one becomes a*  
 (Proverb.) *master-smith (i.e. practice makes perfect).*

On apprend bien des choses **en voyageant**. *One learns many things while travelling.*

Tout **en riant**, il lui dit ses vérités. *Though laughing he told him his mind.*

But, unlike the *Pres. Part.*, it may not stand for an *Adj. Clause*, nor can it be used *absolutely*. Compare II., *c* and *d*.

*Observation 1.*—The *Gérondif* with **en** expresses a manner, condition, or instrument, rather than *cause* or *motive*; the latter are better expressed by the Present Participle without **en**. Compare—

Mangeant peu, je n'ai jamais d'indigestions. *Eating moderately as I do, I never suffer from indigestion.*

L'appétit vient **en mangeant** (Prov.) *The appetite grows with what it feeds on.*

*Observation 2.*—The *Gérondif* with **en** expresses more emphatically than the Participle without **en** that an action extends over a longer space of time than the action expressed by the Principal Clause; whilst the Participle without **en** is used without reference to the duration of the action: as,

En disant ces mots, Mentor prit une lyre. *Whilst he thus spake, Mentor took a lyre.*  
Disant ces mots, il se mit à rire. *At these words he burst out laughing.*

*Observation 3.*—With *aller*, the Verbal form in *-ant* may be used with or without **en** to express the progress of an action:—

Cette rue **va (en) se rétrécissant**. *This street becomes narrower and narrower.*  
Le mal **va (en) empirant**. *The evil is getting worse and worse.*

## THE PARTICIPLE PERFECT.

### RÉSUMÉ.

#### INTRODUCTORY:—

Agreement with (I.) Subject; (II.) Object.

#### GENERAL RULES:

- I. Part. Perf. agreeing with the *Subject*:
  - (a) Part. Perf. conjugated with *être*.
  - (b) Past Part. used without Auxiliary.
- II. Part. Perf. agreeing with the *Object*:
  - (a) Part. Perf. conjugated with *avoir*, and Part. Perf. of Reflexive Verbs.
  - (b) Part. Perf. agreeing with Direct Object and never with Indirect Object.

#### SPECIAL RULES:

- (a) Participle Perf. followed by an Infinitive.
- (b) Participle Perf. of *faire*, followed by an Infinitive.
- (c) Participle Perf. followed by a Substantive Clause.
- (d) Participle Perf. of Impersonal Verbs.
- (e) Participle Perf. followed by a complement denoting *time*, *how long?* or *at what price?*

#### INTRODUCTORY:—

147

### I. AGREEMENT WITH THE SUBJECT.

(a) The Part. Perf. conjugated with *être*\* agrees in Gender and Number with its *Subject*: as,

Les maisons de Paris sont bien bâties. *Ils ont bien bâti leurs maisons.*

Les villes de l'Asie Mineure sont tombées en ruine. *Elles ont bien étudié.*

Arrivés dans la ville, nous fûmes reçus à bras ouverts. *Les habitants du pays ont bien reçu les ambassadeurs.*

\* Reflective Verbs excepted, see § 149.

† Its *Auxiliary* alone agrees in *Person* and *Number* with the Subject.

## II. AGREEMENT WITH THE OBJECT.

The Part. Perf. of a Verb conjugated with **avoir**—

(a) *agrees* in Gender and Number with its PRECEDING *Direct Object*: as, (b) *never agrees* with its FOLLOWING *Object*: as,

Quelles **maisons** a-t-il **bâties**?—

Il a **bâti** les **maisons** du faubourg.

Quand les a-t-il **bâties**?—

Il y a longtemps qu'il a **bâti** ces **maisons**.

In order to account for these seemingly arbitrary Rules, it must be borne in mind that the Part. Perf. of any Transitive Verb may be considered from two different points of view:—

(a) as expressing, in conjunction with its copula, *an action done by the Subject*, and so far the Part. Perf. will retain its full Verbal force and form; for if in the course of a sentence we use the Part. Perf. before the Object occurs, we necessarily have its *Active* meaning foremost in our mind; hence—

Il a **bâti** les maisons du faubourg;

a **bâti**, being simply a compound form for— Il **bâtit**, etc.

(β) as expressing an *action suffered by an Object*, i.e. a permanent state or quality; now, if the Object that suffers the action occurs before the Part. Perf., it will of course impress our mind with the *Passive* force of the latter; hence—

Que de **maisons** il a **bâties**! i.e. que de **maisons bâties** par lui!

## GENERAL RULES:

## 148 I. THE PART. PERF. AGREEING WITH ITS SUBJECT.

(a) The Part. Perf. of a Verb conjugated with **être**\* (Reflexive Verbs excepted) is treated as an Adjective, and accordingly agrees in Gender and Number with its Subject: as,

Ce **jardin** est bien **cultivé**.

Ces **jardins** sont bien **cultivés**.

Cette **terre** est bien **cultivée**.

Ces **terres** sont bien **cultivées**.

Vos **amis** sont-ils **sortis**?—

Non, ils sont **restés** chez eux.

Vos **sœurs** sont-elles **sorties**?—

Non, elles sont **restées** chez elles.

*Observation.*—According to § 107, a Subject may stand after its Verb:—

Qu'est devenue votre amie?—Elle est morte.

C'est de là que sont **venus** tous nos **malheurs**.

(b) A Part. Perf. used *without* any *Auxiliary Verb* agrees, like an Adjective, in Gender and Number with the *Noun* it qualifies (which is its *Subject*): as,

La glace est de l'eau **cristallisée**, i.e. qui est **cristallisée**.

A peine **écloses**, les **fleurs** se fanent.

\* N.B.—A Verb is conjugated with **être**—

(1) in the *Passive Voice* throughout;

(2) in the *Compound Tenses* of a few *Intransitive Verbs of motion*. For Reflective Verbs, see § 149.

*Observation 1.*—The same rule applies to the Part. Perf. used with all Verbs denoting manner of being: as, *devenir, rester, sembler, paraître* :—

Les troupes assiégeantes devinrent **assiégées**.  
 Les méchants ne **restent** guère **unis**.  
 Elle **paraissait** **affligée**. Elles se **sentent** **accablées**.  
 Effrayés par cette tempête, ils se **crurent** **perdus**.

*Observation 2.*—The Part. Perf.—*attendu, whereas; compris, inclusive; excepté, except; supposé, supposed; passé, past; vu, seeing*; being considered as *Particles* when they precede the Noun they qualify, only agree when they stand *after* it (see also § 122): as,

Ils ont tous péri, **excepté** cinq ou six personnes.  
 Ils ont tous péri, cinq ou six personnes **exceptées**.

*Observation 3.*—A Part. Perf. may be used *absolutely* :—

Le **père mort**, les filles vous retournent le champ.  
 Aussitôt votre **lettre reçue**, j'ai fait votre commission.

## 149 II. THE PART. PERF. AGREEING WITH ITS OBJECT.

(a) The Part. Perf. of *Transitive* Verbs conjugated with **avoir**, and of all *Reflexive* Verbs, agrees in Gender and Number with its *preceding Direct Object*.\*

### *Agreement.*

Part. Perf. after its Object :—

(a)

Voici le livre ; l'avez-vous **lu** ?  
 Voici la lettre ; l'avez-vous **lue** ?  
 Voici les livres ; **les** as-tu **lus** ?  
 Voici les lettres ; **les** as-tu **lues** ?  
 Elles **se sont lavées** (*repenties*).

(β)

Voici le livre **que j'ai lu**.  
 Voici la lettre **que j'ai lue**.  
 Voici les livres **que j'ai lus**.  
 Voici les lettres **que j'ai lues**.

(γ)

Quelles **lettres** a-t-il **reçues** ?  
 Combien de **lettres** a-t-il **reçues** ?  
 Que de **lettres** il a **reçues** !

### *No Agreement.*

Part. Perf. before its Object :—

Non, je n'ai pas **lu** le livre.  
 Je n'ai pas encore **lu** la lettre.  
 Je crois avoir **lu** les livres.  
 Oui, ce matin j'ai **lu** les lettres.

Le filles qui ont **lu** les livres.  
 Les amies qui ont **lu** les lettres,  
 etc.

Il a **reçu** les lettres de son ami.  
 Il a **reçu** trois lettres.  
 Il a **reçu** beaucoup de lettres.

See also § 122 (a) :—Pourrais-je jamais oublier **la confiance** et **l'amitié** **que** vous m'avez **témoignées** ?

\* An Object may precede the Verb in the following cases only :—

(a) as a Conjunctive Personal or a Reflexive Pronoun :—*me, te, le, la; nous, vous, les; lui, leur; en, y; se*.

(β) as a Relative or Interrogative Pronoun :—*que, lequel, laquelle, qui?* etc.

(γ) as a Noun qualified by—*quel, combien de, que de*.

(b) The Part. Perf. agrees with its **Direct Object** only ; it *never* agrees with an **Indirect (Remoter) Object** :—

**Direct Object** :—*Agreement* :

Elles **nous** (vous, les) ont suivis.

Elles **se** sont dévouées.

Elles **se** sont montrées généreuses.

J'abandonne toutes les espérances que j'avais conçues.

**Indirect Object** :—*No Agreement* :

Elles nous (vous, lui, leur) ont répondu.

Elles se sont procuré un billet.

Elles se sont arrogé ce droit.

Il a élevé plus de monuments que d'autres n'en ont détruit.

*Observation 1.* There are a few Verbs which may govern either a *Direct* or *Indirect Object* :—aider, applaudir, commander, fuir, manquer, servir, etc. :—

Cet homme les a bien servis.

Les Romains s'étaient faits à la discipline.

Cette précaution leur a bien servi.

Tous les peuples du monde se sont fait des dieux corporels.

*Observation 2.*—In sentences like the following, the Past Participle really agrees with **combien**, **autant**, and not with **en** :—

De tous les plaideurs qu'il a défendus, **combien** n'en a-t-il pas ruinés !

## 150 SPECIAL RULES :

The above Rules admit of no exception ; the seeming anomalies only arise from peculiarly constructed sentences in which the real Object is not easily discernible :—

(a) A Past Participle followed by an Infinitive—

(a) *agrees* if the preceding Object is really the Object of the *Past Participle*, and not of the *Infinitive* : as,

Je les ai **vus** frapper le fer.

*I saw them striking the iron.*

Les acteurs que j'ai **entendus** chanter.

*The actors I heard sing.*

Je les (*i.e.* les enfants) ai **laissés** manger.

*I have allowed them to eat.*

Les hommes n'ont jamais plus admiré les singes que quand ils les ont **vus** imiter les actions humaines.

(β) *does not agree* with the preceding Object if this latter is the Object of the *Infinitive* or of the *Infinitive and Part. Perf. combined* : as,

Je les ai **vu** frapper. (See § 140, f.)

*I saw them struck, i.e. I saw (some one) strike them.*

Les airs que j'ai **entendu** chanter.

Les acteurs que j'ai **entendus** siffler.

*The actors whom I heard hiss.*

Je les (*i.e.* les pommes) ai **laissé** manger.

*I have allowed them to be eaten (i.e. allowed some one to eat them).*

J'approuve les changements que vous avez **jugé à propos de** faire.

Compare also—

Les lettres <b>que j'ai commen-</b> <b>cées.</b>	Les lettres que j'ai <b>commencé</b> <b>à lire.</b>
Les questions <b>que j'ai résolues.</b>	Les questions que j'ai <b>résolu de</b> <b>lui adresser.</b>

(b) The **Part. Perf.** of '**faire**,' followed by an **Infinitive**, never agrees; because a *Part. Perf.* + *Infinitive* = a *Verbal Phrase*, on which *Phrase*, and not on the *Part. Perf.*, the *Object* depends; thus, **faire** + **entrer** = *to show in*; and as in—

'On **les fait entrer**,' **les** is not really the *obj.* of **fait**, but of **fait entrer**, there can be no agreement: as,

Je <b>les ai fait descendre.</b>	<i>I have made (caused) what?—</i> <i>Their coming down.</i>
Les livres <b>que j'ai fait relier.</b>	<i>I have caused (ordered) what?—</i> <i>The binding of books.</i>
Louis XIV. a protégé les arts <b>que François I<sup>er</sup> avait fait</b> <b>naître.</b>	<i>Louis XIV. patronised the arts</i> <i>which Francis I. had introduced.</i>

(c) A **Part. Perf.** followed by a **Substantive Clause** remains unchanged, because this *Clause* is its real *Object*: as,

La lettre <b>que j'ai présumé que</b> <b>vous recevriez</b> est enfin <b>arrivée.</b>	<i>I have surmised what?—That you</i> <i>would receive a letter, i.e. the</i> <i>Subst. Clause is Obj. of 'pré-</i> <i>sumer.'</i>
---	---

It follows that a **Part. Perf.** preceded and followed by **que**, *never* agrees.

*Observation 1 to (d) and (e).*—An *Infinitive* or a *Substantive Clause* (understood) may be the implied *object* of a *Verb* (especially of **dû**, **vu**, **voulu**, **pu**, **su**), in which case no agreement of the *Part. Perf.* can take place:—

Nous ne vous avons pas rendu tous les bons offices que nous aurions **voulu**,\* mais seulement ceux que nous avons **pu** (\***rendre** understood).

*Observation 2.*—Thus also a **Part. Perf.** preceded by the *Neutral Relative Pronoun* **le**, referring to the *Verb*, *Adjective*, or to a whole *Clause*, remains unchanged: as,

L'armée se battit mieux que le czar ne l'avait **espéré** (**le** = qu'elle ne se battrait).  
La famine arriva comme Joseph l'avait **prédit** (**le** = cela).  
Cette contrée est plus riche en produits que je ne l'avais **imaginé**.

(d) The **Part. Perf.** of **Impersonal Verbs** remains unchanged, because they are really *Intransitive*, and their *Noun-Complement* is logically their *Subject* and not their *Object*: as,

La grande sécheresse qu'il a <b>fait</b> .*	<i>The great drought that has prevailed.</i>
Que de travaux il a <b>fallu</b> pour endiguer ce fleuve!	<i>What work it has required to embank</i> <i>this river!</i>

\* **Faire** is here used idiomatically, as an equivalent of **y avoir**.

(e) The **Part. Perf. of a Verb, the Complement of which answers the questions *how long? how much?* etc., and is virtually an Adverbial Phrase, remains unchanged**: as,

Les trois années que j'ai **vécu** à Paris. *The three years I have spent in Paris.*

Les efforts que ce travail lui a **coûté**. *The efforts that this work has cost him.*

*Observation.*—According to § 104 (a), the agreement with a Noun qualified by **le peu de** depends on the meaning:—

Le **peu** d'affection que vous m'avez **témoigné**. *The want of affection that you have shown me.*

Le **peu** d'affection que vous m'avez **témoignée**. *What little affection you have shown me!*

## 151 THE ADVERBIAL RELATION EXPRESSED BY AN ADVERB.

The classification and chief use of *Adverbs* having been treated in the Accidence (§§ 82-85), it remains to deal with the peculiarities in the use of Negations and of Affirmative Adverbs.

### RÉSUMÉ.

#### INTRODUCTORY:—

(a) **DISJUNCTIVE** or (b) **CONJUNCTIVE**:—(1) Strictly Adverbial; (2) Substantival or Adjectival.

The Negation expressed in French, but not in English:—

(a) after Verbs, etc. denoting (1) Fear, etc., (2) Prevention, (3) Doubt.

(b) with Verbs depending on Comparatives.

When **Pas** and **Point** *must be omitted*; when **Pas** and **Point** *may be omitted*.

To strengthen the expression of our judgments, we are wont to join an illustration or comparison to them (thus we say 'as poor as Job,' 'as strong as a lion,' etc.), or an expression of value (as, 'not worth a farthing'). So did the Latins: they would say a thing was not worth an as, a feather, a speck in a bean, **hilum**. Hence **ne-hilum**, and **nihil**.

'Nil igitur mors est, ad nos **neque** pertinet **hilum**' (LUCR. iii. 483).

"There are six similar adverbial phrases to express a negative in French:—

"1. **Pas**, Lat. **passus**: 'ne faire un **pas**.'

"2. **Point**, Lat. **punctum**: 'je ne vois **point**.'

"3. **Mie**, Lat. **mica** (which signifies a speck or grain): 'vous ne l'aurez **mie**.'

"4. **Goutte**, Lat. **gutta**: also used negatively in Latin, as in Plautus:—

'Quoi **neque** parata **gutta** certi consilii.'

"This phrase, which formerly was in general use (so, 'ne craindre **goutte**,' 'n'aimer **goutte**, etc.), has been restricted since the seventeenth century to the two verbs **voir** and **entendre**: 'n'y voir **goutte**,' 'n'y entendre **goutte**.'

"5. **Personne**, Lat. **persona**, with **ne**, takes the sense of 'no one.'

"6. **Rien**, Lat. **rem**, was a Substantive in Old French, with its original signification of 'thing'; so 'la **riens** que j'ai vu est fort belle,' and 'une très-belle **riens**.' Joined with a negative, it signifies 'no-thing,' just as **ne . . . personne** signifies 'no one.' 'Je **ne** fais **rien**,' 'I am doing nothing.' This usage of **rien** is very proper, and it only abandoned its natural sense of 'thing' to take that of 'nothing' (as in the phrase, On n'a donné cela pour **rien**'), after having been long used with **ne** to form a negative expression. This history of the word **rien** explains that passage in Molière in which it is both negative and affirmative (*Ecole des Femmes*, ii. 2):

'Dans le siècle où nous sommes  
On ne donne **rien** pour **rien**.'

"Finally, we may observe generally that these adverbial phrases, **pas**, **mie**, **goutte**, **point**, etc., were used in a substantival sense, i.e. they were always used in comparison, and had a proper value of their own: 'Je **ne** marche **pas**,' 'I do not move a *step*;' 'Je **ne** vois **point**,' 'I do not see a *bit*;' 'Je **ne** mange **mie**,' 'I do not eat a *bit*;' 'Je **ne** bois **goutte**,' 'I do not drink a *drop*,' etc. etc.—BRACHET.

## 152 NEGATIONS AND AFFIRMATIONS are either—

(a) DISJUNCTIVE, *i.e.* used independently of a Verb: as,

Y consentez-vous ?— <b>Non, non,</b>	<i>Do you consent to it?—No, decidedly</i>
mille fois <b>non</b> !	<i>not.</i>
Viendra-t-il ?—	<i>Will he come?—</i>
Je crois <b>que oui.</b>	<i>I think he will.</i>
Et nous croyons <b>que non.</b>	<i>And we believe he will not.</i>
Et moi, je vous dis <b>que si.*</b>	<i>And I tell you he will.</i>
Je le payerai, mais <b>non pas</b> tout	<i>I shall pay him, but not all at once.</i>
à la fois.	
Etes-vous fâché ?—	<i>Are you angry?—</i>
<b>Point (Point du tout).</b>	<i>No (not at all).</i>

\* Si, instead of oui, in answer to a negative sentence.

(b) CONJUNCTIVE, *i.e.* used in immediate connection with a Verb expressed or understood:—(1) Strictly *Adverbial*: as,

Je <b>ne</b> viendrai <b>pas.</b>	<i>I shall not come.</i>
Ni lui <b>non plus.</b>	<i>Nor he either.</i>
Elles <b>ne</b> viendront <b>pas non</b>	<i>They will not come either.</i>
<b>plus.</b>	
Cela <b>ne</b> sera <b>jamais.</b>	<i>That shall never be.</i>
Si <b>jamais</b> je le rencontre.	<i>If ever I meet him.</i>
Je <b>ne</b> m'en soucie <b>guère.</b>	<i>I hardly care for it.</i>
Nous <b>n'</b> aimons <b>que</b> ceux <b>que</b>	<i>We only love those we esteem.</i>
nous estimions.	
Il <b>n'y</b> est <b>plus.</b>	<i>He is no longer there.</i>

(2) *Substantival or Adjectival*: as,

<i>Subj.</i>	<b>Personne</b> n'est venu.	<i>No one (nobody) has come.</i>
<i>Obj.</i>	Il <b>n'y</b> a <b>personne</b> ici.	<i>There is nobody here.</i>
<i>Subj.</i>	<b>Rien</b> <b>ne</b> va <b>plus.</b>	<i>It is no go.</i>
<i>Obj.</i>	Je <b>n'y</b> suis pour <b>rien.</b>	<i>I am not concerned in it.</i>
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <b>Nul</b> (homme) <b>n'</b> est exempt	<i>No one (man) is exempt from</i>
<i>only.</i>		
	de mourir.	<i>dying.</i>
	Il <b>ne</b> prend <b>aucun</b> soin	<i>He does not attend to his affairs.</i>
	de ses affaires. ( <i>Adj.</i> )	
	Je <b>ne</b> connais <b>aucun</b> de	<i>I know none of his friends.</i>
	ses amis. ( <i>Subst.</i> )	
	<b>Pas</b> un <b>n'</b> est ici.	<i>Not one is here present.</i>

153

Ne USED IN FRENCH—CONTRARY TO ENGLISH USAGE—

(a) after Verbs, Conjunctions, and Phrases denoting—

(1) *Fear, Apprehension*, lest something should occur;

(2) *Prevention, Avoidance*; (3) *Doubt, Denial, Despair*, etc.: as,

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| (1) Je <b>crains</b> qu'il <b>ne</b> pleuve.  | <i>I fear it will rain.</i>                 |
| Dépêchez vous, <b>de crainte</b>              | <i>Make haste, lest he be beforehand</i>    |
| qu'il <b>ne</b> vous prévienne.               | <i>with you.</i>                            |
| (2) <b>Evitez</b> qu'il <b>ne</b> vous parle. | <i>Avoid his speaking to you.</i>           |
| <b>Empêchez</b> qu'il <b>ne</b> vienne.       | <i>Prevent him from coming.</i>             |
| (3) Je <b>ne doute pas</b> qu'il <b>ne</b>    | <i>I do not doubt that he will come</i>     |
| vienne bientôt.                               | <i>soon.</i>                                |
| <b>Ce n'est pas</b> qu'il <b>n'ait</b> des    | <i>He is not wanting in abilities.</i>      |
| moyens.                                       |   |
| <b>Il y a quinze jours que je ne</b>          | <i>It is a fortnight since I last spoke</i> |
| lui ai parlé.                                 | <i>to him, i.e. I have not spoken to</i>    |
|   | <i>him for a fortnight.</i>                 |

*Observation.*—The following examples will illustrate the use or omission of the negation after Verbs of *fearing*:—

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| { Je crains qu'il <b>ne</b> pleuve.                                  | <i>I am afraid it will rain, i.e. I hope it will not.</i> |
| { Je crains qu'il <b>ne</b> pleuve <b>pas</b> .                      | <i>I am afraid it will not rain.</i>                      |
| { Je <b>ne</b> crains <b>pas</b> qu'il pleuve.                       | <i>I am not afraid it will rain.</i>                      |
| { Je <b>ne</b> crains <b>pas</b> qu'il <b>ne</b> pleuve <b>pas</b> . | <i>I have no fear it will not rain.</i>                   |

Ne craignez-vous pas qu'il **ne** pleuve? *i.e.* Vous craignez qu'il **ne** pleuve, n'est-ce pas?  
In the latter instance, however, the omission of **ne** is not unusual.

Observe that *but* = *who not* (= Lat. *quin*) = Fr. **qui ne**: as,  
Il n'y a **personne qui ne** le sache. *There is nobody but knows it.*

(b) with Verbs depending on *Comparatives used affirmatively* (the Negation being implied in the inequality between the terms of Comparison): as,

La distance est **moindre que** vous **ne** dites; *i.e.* vous **ne** la dites **pas** si petite qu'elle est.

Il a bien d'autres vues **que** vous **ne** croyez; *i.e.* vous **ne** croyez **pas** ses vues telles qu'elles sont.

*Observation.*—As **ne . . . point** is more absolute than **ne . . . pas**,\* the latter must be used with *Adverbs of Quantity and Numerals*; for the sense of these excludes the idea of an Absolute Negation: as,

Il n'a **pas** (not point) beaucoup d'amis. Il n'y a **pas** assez de sel dans ce mets. Elle n'a **pas** quinze ans.

\* " 'Le point' étant plus près de la nullité absolue que 'le pas,' point est plus exclusif que pas. Aussi, bien que ces particules se prennent facilement l'une pour l'autre, il est des cas où pas convient mieux que point; ainsi il vaut mieux dire:—Le facteur n'est pas encore venu, que— n'est point encore venu."—LITTRÉ.

### 154 Pas and Point *must* be omitted :—

When the Negative Complement of **ne** is already supplied by **rien, personne, nul, aucun, jamais, guère, ni, que, plus**, or any other emphatic term : as,

Rien <b>ne</b> me plaît davantage.	<i>Nothing pleases me better.</i>
Je n'ai jamais rien refusé à personne.	<i>I never refused anything to anybody.</i>
Cet enfant <b>ne</b> mange guère.	<i>This child hardly eats anything.</i>
Il n'y voit plus !—Ni moi non plus.	<i>He cannot see any longer !—Nor I either.</i>
Je <b>ne</b> l'aime <b>ni ne</b> l'estime.	<i>I neither love nor esteem him.</i>
Nous <b>ne</b> demandions <b>que</b> la paix.	<i>We asked for nothing but peace.</i>
Je n'ai parlé à âme qui vive.	<i>I have not spoken to a living soul.</i>
Nous n'avons trouvé qui que ce soit.	<i>We did not find anybody whatever.</i>
Elle <b>ne</b> lui pardonnera de sa vie.	<i>She will never forgive him.</i>

*Observation.*—No negative expletive is used with the following idiomatic expressions :

N'avoir que faire de, <i>to have no occasion for ;</i>	ne faire que, <i>to do nothing but ;</i>
Ne savoir que faire, <i>not to know what to do ;</i>	(ne faire que de, <i>to have but just ;</i>
N'avoir garde de, <i>to take care not to ;</i>	n'était (que), <i>were it not (that) ; but for ;</i>
N'en déplaise à, <i>with all due deference to ; with</i>	... permission ;
À Dieu ne plaise, <i>God forbid !</i>	n'importe, <i>no matter ; never mind ;</i>
Qu'à cela ne tienne, <i>let not that be any objection ; if that be all.</i>	

Nor after **si ne** in the sense of *unless, except* :—

*Si ce n'est toi, c'est donc ton frère.*

### 155 Pas and Point *may* be omitted :—

After the Verbs **cesser, oser, bouger, pouvoir**, also **savoir** (unless it means—*to have learnt*), especially when followed by an *Infinitive* : as,

Ils <b>ne</b> cessaient de crier.	<i>They never ceased (kept on) crying.</i>
Je n'oserais le faire.	<i>I should not venture to do it.</i>
Nous <b>ne</b> saurions vous le dire.	<i>We cannot tell you.</i>
but—Il <b>ne</b> sait pas sa leçon.	<i>He does not know his lesson.</i>

*Observation 1.*—**Ne** can only be used with *Verbs* ; in elliptical phrases without Verbs the Negative expletives **pas, point, rien, jamais, plus**, etc., alone must be used : as,

Point d'argent, point de Suisse.	Pas de fumée sans feu.
Qui est venu ?—Personne.	Y consentirez-vous ?—Jamais.
Pas moi, ni lui non plus.	Plus d'espoir dans ce monde !

*Observation 2.*—These Negative Complements occasionally retain their original affirmative meaning :—

Y a-t-il rien de plus beau !	Personne oserait-il nier ?
Il leur défendit d'y plus songer.	C'est ce qu'on peut jamais dire de plus fort.

For Adverbial Complement expressed by a Dependent Clause, see §§ 158-165.

## THE COMPLEX SENTENCE.

### 156 FOURTH CHAPTER : CO-ORDINATE SENTENCES, *i.e.* Sentences grammatically independent of one another, either—

(a) stand in simple *juxtaposition* (asyndeton) : as,

Je vins, je vis, je vainquis. J'y suis, j'y reste !  
On avait détruit les moulins, enlevé les vivres.

or (b) are linked by a *Co-ordinate Conjunction*, which may be—

(1) *Copulative*, *i.e.* a Conjunction which connects both the sentences and their meaning : as,

Il a fait cette sottise, **et** il en fera bien d'autres.

**Et** voilà que tout d'un coup . . . etc.

Les censeurs qui contrarient nos penchants, **et** qui nous avertissent de nos erreurs.

J'avoue, **et** hautement, que je ne partage pas votre avis . . . *and that*.

Honneurs **ni** richesses ne font le bonheur.

**Et** . . . **et**, *both* . . . *and*; **ni** . . . **ni**, *neither* . . . *nor*, are used *correlatively*, especially in contracted or elliptical Clauses : as,

**Et** le riche **et** le pauvre, **et** le faible **et** le fort,

Vont tous également des douleurs à la mort.

**Ni** vous **ni** moi **ne** le pouvons. Il ne pouvait **ni** fuir **ni** combattre.

Je ne veux point y aller ; **aussi bien** } *anyhow ; besides*.  
est-il trop tard . . . }

Il ne boit **ni** ne mange. } *He neither eats nor drinks*.

Je ne crois pas qu'il vienne, **ni même** } . . . *nor even*.  
qu'il pense à venir. }

Ils agissent sans songer à suivre aucune règle, **ni** à prendre aucun conseil.

Il s'en est emparé **sans** que mon frère **et** (ou) moi nous nous en soyons aperçus.

*N.B.*—For **et** used *adversatively*, see (3).

or (2) *Alternative*, *i.e.* a Conjunction which, though connecting sentences, disconnects their meaning : as,

Parle, **ou** c'est fait de toi. Il payera, **ou** il ira en prison.

Allez-y, **ou bien** j'irai moi-même.

Tais-toi, **ou** plutôt ne réponds que quand tu m'auras entendu.

Ou . . . ou, *either . . . or*; soit . . . soit; soit . . . ou, *whether . . . or*, are used *correlatively*: as,

De deux choses l'une: ou vous le voulez, ou vous ne le voulez pas.

Ou je me trompe fort, ou c'est lui qui l'a fait.

Messieurs, ou la maladie vous tuera, ou bien ce sera la médecine.

Soit qu'il le fasse, soit (ou) qu'il ne le fasse pas.

or (3) *Adversative*, i.e. a Conjunction which, while connecting sentences, contrasts or compares their meaning: as,

Il est fort honnête homme, mais il est un peu brutal. . . . *but*.

Mais revenons à notre propos!

Le flambeau de la critique ne doit pas brûler, mais éclairer.

*Observation 1.*—The original (intensive) meaning of *mais* (fr. Lat. *magis*) transpires in such expressions as—

Cet enfant est joli, mais très joli. *This child is pretty—nay (more), very pretty indeed.*

See also below, *mais* used *correlatively*.

Notice likewise the interjectional force of *mais* in—

Qu'y a-t-il de nouveau? Mais, rien du tout! . . . *Why! nothing at all.*

Mais, dites-moi, quand est-ce que vous me payerez? . . . *By-the-bye, when . . .*

Le roi règne et (*but*) ne gouverne pas.

Il n'est rien que les hommes aiment mieux, et qu'ils ménagent moins que leur propre vie.

*Asyndeton*:—La justice cherche le coupable; l'équité cherche l'innocent.

Il a bon visage, cependant (*pour-tant*) il est malade. . . . , *yet for all that*.

Toujours l'espérance nous trompe, toutefois nous la croyons toujours. . . . , *and for all that*.

Il l'avait promis, néanmoins il ne l'a pas fait. . . . , *and nevertheless*.

*Observation 2.*—In *cependant*, its original force of an adverb of time still asserts itself:—  
Nous nous amusons, et *cependant* la nuit vient. . . . , *meanwhile*.

*Mais* is used as a correlative to *non seulement*, or *ne pas seulement*, and in that case is generally strengthened by *aussi*, *encore*, *même*, etc.:—

Non seulement il est riche, mais aussi il est généreux. *Not only is he rich, but he is also generous.*

Non seulement je l'ai payé, mais encore je lui ai fait un présent. *I have not only paid him, but made him a present besides.*

Un chrétien doit aimer non seulement ses amis, mais même ses ennemis. *It is a Christian's duty not only to love his friends, but even his enemies.*

(4) *Causal*; i.e. a Conjunction adducing the cause: as,

Tu ne le trouveras pas à la maison, car il vient de partir . . . , *for*.

*Asyndeton*:—Prenez garde, on vous observe.

(5) *Consecutive* ; i.e. a Conjunction expressing an inference drawn :—

Je pense, **donc** je suis.

*I think, therefore I exist.*

Vous voilà prévenue, **ainsi** soyez . . . *consequently, therefore*.  
discrète.

Vienne encore un procès, **et** je suis *One more lawsuit, and I am a ruined*  
achevé. *man!*

Tous les hommes sont mortels ; **or**, *All men are mortal ; now Caius is a*  
Caius est un homme ; **donc** Caius *man ; therefore C. is mortal.*  
est mortel.

**Or** ça, revenons à nos moutons ! *Now then, let us resume our subject.*

Le soleil est levé, **par conséquent** }  
il fait jour. } *consequently.*  
Il n'avait plus de fortune, **partant** }  
plus d'amis. }

(6) *Distributive* : as,

Tantôt la forme de ces édifices est } *sometimes . . . sometimes ; now*  
ronde, tantôt elle est carrée. } *. . . now.*  
} *at one time . . . at another time.*

*Observation.*—Thus also in *contrasted Sentences* :—

Il a fait cela **partie** pour l'amour de vous, }  
partie pour son propre intérêt. } *Partly . . . partly ; half . . . half.*  
Moitié désir de repos, moitié scrupules, il }  
ne voulait embrasser aucun parti. }

## 157

## FIFTH CHAPTER : DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

INTRODUCTORY :—Dependent Clauses are classified, according as they do duty  
for (1) *Substantives*, (2) *Adjectives*, or (3) *Adverbs*, into

(1) *Substantive Clauses* : as,

Je désire qu'il me réponde (= une réponse).

(2) *Adjective Clauses* : as,

L'homme qui vit content (= content) est heureux.

(3) *Adverbial Clauses* : as,

Nous partîmes quand le soleil se leva (= au lever du soleil).

## A.—USE OF MOODS IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

*General Rule.*—Either the *Indicative*, the *Conditional*, or the *Subjunctive* may be used in Dependent Clauses : as,

Il est certain qu'il le <b>sait</b> .	Je sais qu'il <b>viendra</b> .
Quand même il le <b>saurait</b> , il ne le dirait pas.	Je savais qu'il <b>viendrait</b> .
Il importe qu'il le <b>sache</b> .	Je doute qu'il <b>vienne</b> .

The use of one or the other depends entirely on the *meaning either expressed or latent in the Principal Sentence*: thus we put the Verb of the dependent Clause—

(I.) in the *Indicative*, if the Principal Sentence implies (*indicates*) that the statement expressed in the dependent Clause is considered as a *matter of fact*. The fact itself may be true or not, but anyhow it is stated as true.

(II.) in the *Subjunctive*, if the Principal Sentence implies that the action expressed in the dependent Clause is considered as *conceived in the mind* of the speaker.\*

As the term *Subjunctive* implies, the action is represented as being *subjoined to* (under the yoke of) some leading thought contained in the Principal Sentence—be it a *wish*, an *emotion*, a *doubt*, or any *notion* as distinguished from *fact*. Thus in the sentence—

Je sais qu'il **viendra**,      *I know that he will come,*

the fact of his coming is indicated absolutely and without any mental reservation, hence the use of the *Indicative* form of Conjugation for the Verb *indicating* that fact. But in the sentence—

Son père **veut** qu'il **vienne**,      *His father wishes that he should come,*

the contingency (eventual fact) of his coming is *in the speaker's mind*, subjoined to the *will* of another (his father).

*N.B.*—The so-called *Conditional Mood* occupies a sort of intermediate position between the *Indicative* and the *Subjunctive*; doing duty in the province either—  
of the *Indicative*, as a *Future Imperfect* (the *Conditional Perf.* as a *Future Pluperfect*),  
*cp.* Je sais qu'il **ira**, with— Je savais qu'il **irait**,  
or of the *Subjunctive*, as an *Imperfect* (the *Cond. Perf.* as a *Pluperfect*) in *Concessive* Clauses (whilst, *vice versâ*, the *Subj. Plupf.* occasionally does duty for a *Condit. Perf.*): as,

Quand cela **serait** (= supposé que cela fût ainsi), vous n'avez rien à y voir.

\* In other words, a statement may be said to be affected by the mind of the speaker, as a ray of light is affected by its passage through a prism.

## B.—THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

This mental attitude which a speaker or writer in French assumes towards the action or event spoken of, and subject to which he uses the Verb denoting that action in the *Subjunctive*, may manifest itself either as—

- (a) a *Wish*, *Command*, *Consent*, *Concession*, or their opposites—a *Wish* or *Command* that something may *not* occur, *i.e.* *Fear* or *Prohibition*;  
 (b) an *Emotion*, as—*Joy*, *Sorrow*, *Shame*, *Indignation*, *Surprise*, etc., or  
 (c) a *Doubt*, *Uncertainty*, *Denial*; under this head must be classed *Result* expected, *Purpose* intended, *i.e.* *Anticipation* in contradistinction to *Accomplished Fact*.

To sum up—When the Principal Clause of a Complex Sentence contains any idea of *Wish*, *Emotion*, or *Doubt* (either expressed by a Verb, an adverbial Adjunct, or simply understood) in respect of the action described in the Dependent Clause, the Verb expressing that action is put in the *Subjunctive*: as,

- |   |                                       |  |
|---|---------------------------------------|--|
| (1)   | Principal Clause :—                   | Dep. <i>Substantive</i> Clause,<br>introduced by <i>que</i> :—   |
| (a) <i>Wish</i> :—                                  | Nous désirons                         | qu'ils viennent demain.  |
| (b) <i>Emotion</i> :—                               | Je suis bien aise                     | qu'ils viennent déjà.  |
| (c) <i>Doubt</i> :—                                 | { Nous doutons<br>Nous ne croyons pas | qu'ils viennent ici.<br>qu'ils viennent si tard.                 |
| (2)   | Principal Clause :—                   | Dep. <i>Adjective</i> Clause,<br>introduced by a Relat. Pron. :— |
| (a) Purpose, <i>i.e.</i> }<br><i>Wish</i> :—        | { Je cherche un domestique            | qui me convienne.  |
| (b) <i>Denial</i> :—                                | Il n'y a personne                     | qui convienne aisément<br>de ses torts.                          |
| (c) Assertion imply- }<br>ing <i>Reservation</i> :— | { C'est le seul tort                  | dont il convienne.   |
| (3)   | Principal Clause :—                   | Dep. <i>Adverbial</i> Clause, introduced<br>by a Conjunct. :—    |
| (a) <i>Concession</i> :—                            | Il est malheureux,                    | quoiqu'il soit riche.  |
| (b) <i>Apprehension</i> }<br>( <i>lest</i> ) :—     | { Tenez-vous tranquille,              | de crainte qu'il ne revienne.                                    |
| (c) <i>Anticipation</i> }<br>( <i>till</i> ) :—     | { Il me reposerai,                    | en attendant qu'il revienne.                                     |

## 160 SPECIAL RULES :

I. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN DEPENDENT SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES, linked by **que** with the Principal Sentence containing a Verb which expresses—

(a) a *Wish, Command, Consent, Concern, Necessity, Prevention, Approbation, Disapprobation, etc.*—

Vouloir, désirer, souhaiter, prier, supplier ; etc.

Demander, recommander, exiger, and the like ;

Permettre, accorder, approuver, trouver bon, etc. ;

Souffrir, consentir, and their opposites, etc. ;

Avoir besoin, avoir soin, être d'accord, être d'avis, etc. ;

Empêcher, défendre, désapprouver, trouver mauvais, etc. (see also § 161): as,

Que **voulez-vous** que je **fasse** ?

*What will you have me do ?*

Que **vouliez-vous** que je **fisse** ?

*What did you wish me to do ?*

Je **trouve bon** que vous **reveniez**.

*I approve of your coming back.*

Il **exigea** que vous **revinssiez**.

*He insisted upon your returning.*

Il **souffrait** rarement qu'on lui **parlât**, et jamais qu'on l'**osât** contredire.

*He seldom allowed any one to speak to him and never to contradict him.*

Tibérius **répondit** que son **intention** était qu'on **tondît** ses brebis, et non pas qu'on les **écorchât**.

*Tiberius replied that his will was that his sheep should be shorn and not flayed.*

La **pluie empêche** qu'on **n'aille** se promener (cp. § 153).

*The rain prevents our taking a walk.*

Il **n'a pas besoin** qu'on lui **dise** deux fois la même chose.

*He does not require to be told the same thing twice over.*

J'**ai jugé à propos** que vous y **allassiez** ensemble.

*I thought it proper that you should go there together.*

Observation 1.—Notice especially the following Verbs and Verbal phrases governing *a* and linked by *ce que* instead of *que* only :—

consentir à  
conclure à  
donner lieu à  
mettre ordre à  
mettre soin à

} ce que . . .

opiner à  
s'opposer à  
pouvoir à  
veiller à  
tenir à, etc.

} ce que . . .

Il **consentit à ce que** l'empire **fût** partagé.  
Je **tiens à ce que** vous le **fassiez**.

*He consented to the partition of the empire.  
I am anxious you should do it.*

Observation 2.—As after Verbs of *decreeing, enacting, and the like*, the result is considered as certain, the Verb is put in the *Future* or *Conditional* (see §§ 111-12): as,

**Ordonné qu'il sera fait rapport à la cour**

**Du foin qu'une poule peut manger en un jour.**

N.B.—For the use of the *Infinitive* when the Subject of the dependent clause is the same as that of the principal sentence, see § 144.

(b) an *Affection of the mind (Emotion)*—*Joy, Sorrow, Fear, Surprise, Indignation, Shame, Impression, and the like*—

Se réjouir, s'affliger, regretter, s'étonner, trouver étrange, rougir, se plaindre, enrager, etc. ;

Etre charmé (ravi, enchanté) ; être content ; être fort (bien) aise ; être surpris (étonné), etc. ;

Avoir peur, avoir honte, avoir regret, avoir à cœur, etc. : as,

Je suis bien aise que vous ayez réussi. *I am very glad you have succeeded.*

J'étais enchanté que vous eussiez réussi. *I was delighted you had succeeded.*

Nous sommes ravis que cela soit arrivé. *We are delighted that that should have happened.*

Je trouve étrange que vous ayez fait cette démarche. *I am surprised at your having taken this step.*

Elle est fâchée que vous ne lui écriviez pas plus souvent. *She is offended that you do not write to her oftener.*

Je m'étonne qu'il ne voie pas le danger où il est. *I am astonished he does not see the danger in which he is placed.*

Je suis d'avis qu'il parte. *I am of opinion that he should set off.*

C'est un homme qui mérite qu'on le plaigne. *He is a man deserving of pity.*

J'ai regret que vous n'ayez pas entendu ce discours. *I am sorry you have not heard this speech.*

*Observation 1.*—After Verbs and Phrases of *fearing*—*craindre, avoir peur, trembler, frémir, être inquiet, etc.*, the Verb in the Dependent Clause, in strict analogy with Latin, is used—

with *ne*, to express that something *will* occur ;  
with *ne pas*, " " " " *will not* occur : as,

Il craint que je ne vienne. *He is afraid I am coming. (Timet ne veniam.)*

Il craint que je ne vienne pas. *He is afraid I am not coming. (Timet [ut] ne non veniam.)*

The use of this *ne* is easily accounted for, if we bear in mind that—

*I fear he will come = I hope he will not come, or = I fear lest he may come.*

Hence, if the Principal Sentence itself is *negative*, the *ne* is not used : as,

Il ne craint pas que je vienne. *He is not afraid that I am coming.*

But *ne . . . pas* is used, if it is not feared that something will not happen : as,

Il ne craint pas que je ne vienne pas. *He is not afraid that I am not coming.*

*Observation 2.*—The same rule applies to the Verbs *empêcher, éviter, prendre garde, se garder, se donner garde, douter* (§ 153):—

Evitez qu'il ne vienne. *See that he does not come.*

*Observation 3.*—Verbs of *emotion*—except those of *fearing*—may be construed with the Preposition they take before a Noun-Object, and *ce que* followed by the *Indicative* : as,

Je suis fâché de ce que vous ne m'avez pas prévenu. Cp. § 160, Obs. 1.  
Ils s'en sont excusés sur ce qu'ils n'avaient pas d'ordre.

(c) a *Doubt, Uncertainty, Denial*, and the like :—

(1) *Douter, nier, dissimuler, démentir, disconvenir, ignorer, etc.* : as,

Je doute qu'il vienne.

*I doubt if he will come.*

J'ignorais qu'il fût \* arrivé.

*I did not know he had arrived.*

Doutez-vous qu'il ne\* vienne ?

*Do you doubt he will come ?*

Peut-on nier que la santé ne\* soit préférable aux richesses ?

*Can it be denied that health is preferable to wealth ?*

Il ne se doutait pas qu'on eût des preuves contre lui.

*He did not suspect that they had evidence against him.*

\* Used *negatively or interrogatively*, Verbs of this class generally take *ne* ; so that *que* and *ne* are virtually the Latin *quin* :

*Nemo dubitabat quin spectaret.*

*Observation.*—Je n'ignore pas qu'il a voulu me nuire, with the *INDICATIVE* ;

Je n'ignore pas, being = je sais bien.

(2) As Verbs of *thinking, saying, knowing, perceiving*, if used *interrogatively, negatively, or conditionally*, ipso facto imply *doubt, denial, or ignorance*, the same Rule on the use of the Subjunctive holds good with them. Great care must, however, be taken to ascertain from the context whether this interrogative, negative, or conditional form of speech is used *bonâ fide* as such, or whether it is merely used figuratively in the sense of an *affirmation* ; the latter, whether expressed or implied, requiring the Indicative according to the general rule :—

THE INDICATIVE (OR CONDITIONAL) after Verbs of *Saying, Thinking, etc.*, used *affirmatively* (negatively or interrogatively, only if no doubt is implied) : as,

Il croit que le vendredi est un jour malheureux !

On dit qu'il est aveugle.

Je pense qu'il dit cela pour vous contrarier.

Je suppose qu'un moine est charitable.

Je croyais qu'il arriverait aujourd'hui.

Qu'il est insensé ! il ne croit pas qu'il y a un Dieu.

Savez-vous qu'il est revenu ?

Je n'ignore pas qu'il est arrivé.

Ce que vous dites là prouve qu'il est riche, mais ne prouve pas qu'il soit honnête.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE after Verbs of *Saying, etc.*, used *negatively, interrogatively, conditionally, or concessively*, and virtually implying *doubt* : as,

Quant à moi je ne crois pas que le vendredi soit un jour malheureux.

On dirait qu'il soit aveugle.

Ne pensez pas que je dise cela pour vous contrarier.

Supposons que ce fait soit vrai, quelle conséquence en voulez-vous tirer ?

Si je croyais qu'il arrivât aujourd'hui, je l'attendrais.

Il ne croit pas qu'il y ait des revenants ; ni moi non plus.

Savez-vous qu'il soit revenu ? \*

J'ignorais qu'il fût arrivé.

Pensez-vous qu'il faille croire tout ce qu'il dit ?

\* If *si* can be substituted for *que*, it is evident that *doubt* is implied.

N.B.—*Que* standing for *si* takes the Subj.

*Observation 1.*—The slightest shade of meaning in the same Verb may turn the scale in favour of either Mood :—

On **conçoit** (*it is evident*) que cette situation Je **conçois** (*I can easily imagine*) qu'il y ait  
demeurait intolérable. de telles gens.

On **prétend** (*it is said*) que Thésée a paru Je **prétends** (*I insist*) qu'il revienne.  
dans l'Épire.

Je **croyais** qu'il se résignerait.

Son erreur c'est d'avoir cru \* qu'un roi pût  
se résigner.

\* The belief has been shown to be *erroneous* by subsequent events known to the historian.

*Observation 2.*—In Old French down to the classic period inclusively, the Subjunctive was used after Verbs of *thinking* even when used *affirmatively* :—

Ils **pensent** que ce soit une complainte (Calvin). On **pensait** que ce fussent des  
Bohèmes (de Sévigné). Le supplice où vous **croyez** que je puisse être (Molière).

**161** With IMPERSONAL VERBS and Verbal Phrases the same Rules hold good ; that is, those indicating a *fact* take the INDICATIVE, whilst those (by far the greater number) expressing a *Will, Necessity, Emotion, Doubt, or Denial*, require the dependent Verb in the SUBJUNCTIVE :—

(a) *With the Subjunctive*—

Il faut, il est nécessaire ; il est important (urgent), il importe ; il convient, il est à propos, il est temps ; il est juste, naturel, bon ;

il est rare, curieux, remarquable, singulier, surprenant, étrange, inouï, extraordinaire ;

il vaut mieux, il est préférable ; il (c') est dommage, regrettable ;

il est possible, il se peut ; il semble \* : il est impossible, il ne se peut pas ;

il suffit, c'est assez ; il est facile, difficile, douteux ;

il s'en faut (de) beaucoup (beaucoup s'en faut) ; il s'en faut (de) peu, (peu s'en faut) ;

l'intérêt est ; l'intention est ; la demande est, etc. ;

c'est beaucoup ; c'est bien le moins ; c'est peu, etc. ;

c'est un inconvénient (un désavantage), etc. : as,

Il faut que je m'en aille.

*I must go away.*

Il fallut que je m'en allasse.

*I had (was obliged) to go away.*

Peu importe que ce soit vous ou lui.

*It matters little whether it is you or he.*

Il est juste que vous le dédommagiez.

*It is fair you should compensate him.*

Il peut se faire qu'il ne vienne pas.

*It may be he will not come.*

Il ne me plaît pas que vous y alliez.

*I do not approve of your going there.*

Quel dommage que tu ne sois pas venu.

*What a pity you should not have come.*

A quoi tient-il que nous ne partions ?

*How is it we do not set off? or, What prevents us from setting off?*

\* With *il semble* the Subjunctive, with *il me semble* the Indicative, is the more usual construction.

<p>† Son intention était qu'ils <b>restassent</b> dignitaires de son empire.</p> <p>C'est peu qu'il <b>veuille</b> être le premier, il voudrait être le seul.</p> <p>Il <b>s'en est peu fallu</b> qu'il n'ait été tué.</p> <p>Tant <b>s'en faut</b> * que j'y <b>consente</b> qu'au contraire je ferai tout pour l'empêcher.</p>	<p><i>His intention was that they should remain dignitaries of his empire.</i></p> <p><i>He not only would like to be the first, but even the only one.</i></p> <p><i>He was well-nigh killed.</i></p> <p><i>So far am I from consenting to it that I shall do everything to prevent him.</i></p>
--	---

[\* Lat.—Tantum abest ut . . . ut].

(β) *with the Indicative or Subjunctive*, see § 160 (c):—

Il est vrai, sûr, certain; il s'ensuit, il résulte; il est clair, évident, visible, manifeste; il est probable, il y a apparence, il paraît, etc. : as,

<p>Il <b>est probable</b> qu'il <b>renoncera</b> à ce dessein.</p> <p>Je me sens un peu fatigué; il <b>est vrai</b> que j'ai travaillé plus que de coutume.</p>	<p>Il <b>n'est pas probable</b> qu'il ait dit cela.</p> <p><b>Est-il vrai</b> que vous l'avez fait ?</p> <p><b>S'il est vrai</b> que vous <b>avez</b> dit cela . . .</p>
---	--

## 162 II. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN ADJECTIVE-CLAUSES linked by a Relative Pronoun to a Principal Clause containing—

(a) *a Verb which expresses—*

(1) *a Negation, Indirect Interrogation, or Condition*, denying or restricting the statement contained in the Dependent Clause (always reserving the cases in which the Negation is only a figure of speech): as,

Combien voit-on de parvenus qui <b>soient</b> affables et modestes ?	Combien on voit de parvenus qui <b>sont</b> hautains et insolents !
Je ne connais <b>personne</b> qui <b>soit</b> vraiment heureux.	<i>I do not know anybody who is truly happy.</i>
Que puis-je vous offrir qui <b>soit</b> digne de vous ?	<i>What can I offer you that may be worthy of you ?</i>
S'il <b>y eut</b> jamais un moment où il fût facile de s'entendre, c'est le moment présent.	<i>If there ever was a favourable time for coming to terms, it is the present time.</i>
Il n'y a <b>personne</b> qui le <b>sache</b> .	<i>There is nobody who knows it.</i>
Il n'y a <b>personne</b> qui ne le <b>sache</b> .	<i>There is nobody but knows it.</i>

[Cp. Lat.—Nullum est animal præter hominem quod habeat notitiam aliquam Dei.]

(2) a *Purpose intended* or *Result expected* (i.e. *Expectation*)—whilst, of course, *Purpose achieved* and *Result obtained* or *considered certain* require the *Indicative*: as,

(a) with the *INDICATIVE*:

J'irai dans un pays où je **serai**  
en paix.

*I shall go to a country where (I  
know) I shall live in peace.*

Montrez-moi la faute que j'**ai**  
faite.

*Show me the mistake which (I  
know) I have made.*

Voici enfin un dictionnaire qui  
**contient** les étymologies.

*Here at last is a dictionary  
(actually) giving the etymo-  
logies.*

Apprenons autre chose qui **soit**  
plus joli.

Ils élurent un roi qui **pût** les  
défendre.

(β) with the *SUBJUNCTIVE*:

J'irai dans un pays où je **sois** en  
paix.

*I shall go to a country where (I  
hope) I may live in peace.*

Montrez-moi une faute que j'**aie**  
faite !

*Show me any mistake I have  
made.*

Je cherche un dictionnaire qui  
**contienne** les étymologies.

*I am looking for some dictionary  
containing the etymologies.*

*Let us learn something else more  
likely to be amusing.*

*They elected a king who (in their  
expectation) could defend them.*

(b) an *Adjective in the Superlative*, or an *Adj. conveying the idea of Exclusiveness*:—**le premier, le dernier, le seul, ne . . . que, l'unique, le principal**, etc.; here again, however, the *Indicative* is used whenever the statement is made as a matter of *fact* and not of *opinion*: as,

L'homme est le **seul** des animaux  
qui **soit** obligé de se vêtir.

*Man is (as far as I know) the only  
animal compelled to clothe itself.*

On n'a que lui qui **puisse** écrire  
de ce goût.

*He alone can write in this taste.*

C'est la **plus belle** décoration  
qu'on **puisse** s'imaginer.

*It is the most beautiful decoration  
that can be conceived.*

C'est la **moindre** récompense  
qu'on lui **doive**.

*That is the least reward due to him.*

*Observation.*—In "Cet avocat est le premier entre ceux que nous avons," the Verb *avons* refers only to *ceux* and not to the Superlative; hence the *Indicative*.

C'est la **seule** loi qu'il **faut**  
suivre.

*This is the only law that must be  
observed.*

[Comp. Lat.—Sapientia est una quæ mæstitiam pellat ex animis.]

### 163 III. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN ADVERBIAL CLAUSES linked to the Principal Sentence by a Subordinate Conjunction expressing—

(a) a *Purpose intended, or Result expected*, while the *Indicative* is required in cases of *Purpose effected or certain* :—

*Afin que, pour que, in order that ;*

*De manière que, de (en) sorte que, de façon que, so that.*

And their opposites :—

*Sans que, without ; de peur (crainte) que . . . ne, lest : as,*

#### SUBJUNCTIVE.

#### INDICATIVE.

Je ferai mon devoir **de manière**  
**qu'on n'ait rien** à me reprocher.

J'ai fait mon devoir **de manière**  
**qu'on n'a rien** à me reprocher.

Ce livre est toujours sur le bureau  
**afin qu'on puisse** le consulter.

*This book is always on the desk  
in order that it may be re-  
ferred to.*

Il suffit qu'il soit votre maître  
**pour que** vous le respectiez.

*It is sufficient for you that he is your  
master for you to respect him.*

Cachez-lui votre dessein, **de peur**  
**qu'il ne** le traverse.

*Conceal your design from him, lest  
he should thwart it.*

Deviez-vous agir ainsi **sans qu'on**  
**vous l'eût ordonné** ?

*Ought you to have acted thus  
without being ordered ?*

(b) a *Time expected, or contingent* :—

*Avant que, before ; que . . . ne, not until ; en attendant que, until ;  
jusqu'à ce que, until ; (also with Indicative, if the time is accomplished) : as,*

Tenez-vous tranquille, **en at-  
tendant que** vous soyez  
mieux informé.

*Keep quiet until you are better  
informed.*

Partez **avant qu'il soit** trop tard.

*Set off before it is too late.*

Je ne partirai pas **qu'il ne m'ait payé**.

*I shall not leave until he pays me.*

J'attendrai **jusqu'à ce qu'il ait**  
**cessé de pleuvoir**.

*I shall wait until it has left off  
raining.*

*Observation.*—Thus also after the three Conjunctions of place—*aussi loin que, as far as ;  
où que, en quelque lieu que, wherever :—*

*Où que vous soyez.*

*Wherever you are.*

(c) a *Concession or Condition* :—

Quoique, bien que, encore que,  
*although ;*

quelque (si) . . . que, *however ;*

quoi que, *whatever ;*

tout . . . que (also with Indic.),  
*much as ;*

quel . . . que, *whatever ;*

malgré que, *although ;*

*soit que, be it that ;*

*pourvu que, provided ;*

*supposé que, supposing that ;*

*pour peu que . . . if . . . ever so  
little ;*

*en cas que, in case that ;*

*si tant est que, if it be true that ;*

*nonobstant que, although.*

Also after Conjunctive phrases implying the contrary of *Concession* :—

Non que, non pas que, ce n'est pas que, *not that* ;

ce n'est pas que . . . ne, *not but that* ; loin que, *so far from* : as,

Quoiqu'il soit pauvre, il est *Although he is poor, he is*  
généreux. *generous.*

Quoi que vous fassiez, faites-  
le bien. *Whatever you do, do it well.*

Quelques efforts que vous fas-  
siez . . . *Whatever efforts you make . . .*

Quelles que soient vos inten-  
tions . . . *Whatever your intentions may*  
*be . . .*

Quelque riches qu'ils soient. *However rich they may be (rich as*  
*they are).*

Pour peu que vous m'aimiez, ne  
me parlez plus de cette affaire. *If you love me, do not mention that*  
*affair to me again.*

Il le fera, pourvu que vous lui don-  
niez les garanties nécessaires. *He will do it provided you give*  
*him the necessary guarantees.*

Non qu'il ne soit fâcheux de  
le mécontenter. *Not but that it is awkward to dis-*  
*please him.*

Malgré qu'il en ait, nous savons  
son secret. *In spite of him, we know his secret.*

*Observation.*—After *si* no other tense of the Subjunctive but the *Pluperfect* is admissible.  
*Que* (which is frequently used for other Conjunctions to avoid their repetition) requires  
the Subjunctive if used instead of *si* :

*Si* vous le rencontrez et qu'il vous demande où je suis.

## 164

## SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

The tense of the Verb in the Subordinate Clause is regulated by that of the Principal Sentence ; but as the Subjunctive Mood, as compared with the Indicative (inclusive of Conditional), is wanting in tenses, each tense of the Subjunctive corresponds to several tenses of the Indicative or Conditional :—

*Principal Clause* :—

(1) INDICATIVE.

*Present.* Je doute,  
*Pres. Perf., see (2)* J'ai douté.  
*Future.* Je douterai.  
*Fut. Perf.* J'aurai douté.

(2) INDICATIVE OR CONDIT.

*Impf.* Je doutais.  
*Pret.* Je doutai.  
*Pres. Perf.* J'ai douté.  
*Plupf.* J'avais douté.  
*Ant.* J'eus douté.  
*Cond. Pres.* Je douterais.  
*Cond. Perf.* J'aurais douté.

*Dependent Clause* :—

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Present.* qu'il vienne.  
*Pres. Perf.* qu'il soit venu.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Impf.* qu'il vînt.  
*Plupf.* qu'il fût venu.

*Observation 1.*—Exceptions to the above rules of sequence are not uncommon ; they arise from the same tense of the Indic. or Condit. doing duty for two : as,

*Pres. Cond. for Pres. Indic.* :—Je voudrais bien (= je désire) qu'il vienne.

*Pres. Imperat. for Condit.* :—Admettons que cette impossibilité se réalisât.

Thus also—On craint (i.e. s'il restait avec elle) qu'il n'essuyât ses larmes.

*Observation 2.*—The Imperfect Subj., on account of its rather unharmonious ring, is very often replaced by the Pres. Subj., especially with Verbs of the first Conj. :—

Je désirerais que vous passiez (instead of passassiez) chez moi.

## SIXTH CHAPTER : PRONOUNS.

*N.B.*—The declension and principal functions of Pronouns having been treated in the *Accidence*, §§ 26-37, and in the *Synt. of Agreement*, §§ 101-106, it now remains to deal with a few peculiar cases in which French differs essentially from English :

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS (CONJUNCTIVE AND DISJUNCTIVE).

165

USE OF THE PLURAL FORM FOR PERSONS IN THE SINGULAR :—

(a) *The first pers. plur.* is used, as in English, in decrees, etc., by sovereigns, bishops, etc., and deferentially by authors : as,

*Nous* avons ordonné et ordonnons ce qui suit. *Nous* . . . certifions.

*Nous* venons raconter ici *nos* impressions de voyage.

[*Cp. Lat.*—*Nos* tamen nihil, quod ad eam rem pertineat, praetermittimus.—*Cicero*.]

Thus also in familiar style instead of *il* or *elle* :—

On l'a fait apercevoir plusieurs fois de *sa* faute, mais *nous* sommes opiniâtre (*sing.*), *nous* ne voulons pas *nous* corriger.

(b) *The second pers. plur.* is, as in English, the general way of addressing a person, with this essential exception, that in French *tu*, *toi*, *te*, etc., are used—

(a) *familiarly*, between near relatives, intimate friends, schoolmates, children, etc. ; hence the expressions—

*Etre à tu* et à *toi* avec quelqu'un ; *To be on terms of thee and thou with*  
or—*Se tutoyer.* *some one.*

and—as familiarity breeds contempt—

(β) *contemptuously* (as also *on*, answering to the Germ. *er*) in speaking to inferiors (*comp. Abbott's Shaks. Gram.*, § 232-35) : as,

“*Harpagon*. Allons, que l'on détaille de chez moi . . .

*La Flèche*. Pourquoi me chassez-vous ?

*Harpagon*. C'est bien à *toi*, pendar, à me demander des raisons ! *Sors vite*, que je ne t'assomme.”—*Mol. Avare*, i. 3.

(c) Notice also the transition (1) from the formal *vous* to the kindly familiar *tu* in Molière's *Femmes Sav.* ii. 6 :—

“*Philaminte*. Vous ne voulez pas, vous, me la (*i.e.* the maid-servant *Martine*) faire sortir ?

*Chrysale*. Si fait . . . Va, ne l'irrite point : retire-toi, *Martine*.

*Phil.* . . Vous lui parlez d'un ton tout à fait obligeant !

*Chrys.* (d'un ton ferme) Moi ? point. Allons, sortez !

(d'un ton plus doux) *Va-t'en*, ma pauvre enfant.”

and again (2), from the conventional *vous* to the insolently defiant *tu*, in proportion as the strife waxes hotter, in *Act. iii. Sc. 5* :—

“*Trissotin*. Vous donnez sottement vos qualités aux autres, etc. . . .

*Vadius*. Allez, cuistre !

*Trissotin.* **Va, va** restituer tous les honteux larcins  
Que réclament sur toi les Grecs et les Latins."

*Observation 1.*—In poetic diction, in Scripture, etc., *tu* is used as in English:—  
Grand Dieu, voici **ton** heure, on t'amène **ta** proie.—Racine, *Athalie*.

*Observation 2.*—The third pers. sing. is often used deferentially by inferiors addressing persons of rank:—**Son** Excellence daignerait-elle . . .

(d) The oblique cases of **on**, which is only used as Subject, are generally supplied by **nous** or **vous**: as,

C'est un homme dont **on** ne peut se défaire, il se cramponne à **vous**.

"Dès qu'**on** voit qu'**on nous** mêle avec tout l'univers."—Mol. *Misanthr.* i. 1.

For the ethic dat. (Dans sa colère il **vous** prit un bâton) cp. § 131, Obs. 2.

(e) The use of a Pers. Pron. referring to a *thing*, as has been seen in §§ 27, 28, must be avoided, if it is governed by a preposition; and just as—

*y* instead of à lui, à elle; à eux, à elles: as, J'y consens, . . . *to it*.

*en* " de lui, d'elle; d'eux, d'elles: as, J'en doute, . . . *of it*;

Thus also—

dessous instead of sous lui, sous elle; sous eux, sous elles: as, Il est dessous, *under it*.  
dessus " sur lui, sur elle; sur eux, sur elles: as, Ils sont dessus, *upon it*,  
[etc.]

## 166

**Soi**, the *disjunctive* form of the conjunctive reflexive Pron. **se**, is used

(a) with reference to an *indeterminate* subject, either expressed by an indefinite Pronoun or understood (especially after an Infinitive): as,

Aucun n'est prophète chez **soi**.

*No one is a prophet in his own country.*

Chacun travaille pour **soi**.

*Every one works for himself.*

Il faut toujours être **soi**.

*One must always be one's-self.*

Dans l'ivresse, **on** n'est plus à **soi**.

*In intoxication we are not ourselves.*

N'avoir rien à **soi**.

*To have nothing of one's own.*

Heureux qui vit chez **soi**.

*Happy he who lives at home.*

Cp.—"Les alliances avec plus grands que **soi** (*ourselves*) sont sujettes à de fâcheux inconvénients."—Mol. *Bourg. Gentilh.* iii. 12.

La santé demande qu'on soit propre sur **soi** (*one's own person*).

*Observation.*—Thus also in adverbial and adjectival phrases:—

De **soi** le vice est odieux.

*Vice is essentially odious.*

La nature est aimable en **soi**.

*Nature is of itself charming.*

Un **soi-disant** gentilhomme.

*A would-be nobleman.*

(b) with reference to a *determinate* subject denoting an *abstract idea*, or a *thing*: as,

Un bienfait porte sa récompense avec **soi**.

*A good deed carries its reward with itself.*

L'aimant attire le fer à **soi**.

*The lodestone attracts iron.*

*Observation 1.*—Lui, elle, are, however, frequently used in this case:—

Voilà donc les maux que la guerre entraîne après elle.

*Observation 2.*—**Soi** may refer to a Person-Subject, in contradistinction to lui, referring to a Person-Object: as,

L'avare qui a un fils prodigue n'amasse ni pour **soi** (l'avare) ni pour lui (le fils). *The miser who has a prodigal son hoards neither for himself nor for the latter.*

*Observation 3.*—Strengthened by **même**, it may be used without preposition: as,

Il faut faire ses affaires **soi-même**.

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

The English *Possessive* Pronoun or Adjective is generally rendered in French—

(a) by a *Disjunctive Personal Pronoun*, if used as a predicative complement : as,

Ce crayon n'est pas à lui, il est à moi. *This pencil is not his, it is mine.*

J'ai un cheval à moi. *I have a horse of my own.*

C'est à moi à jouer. *It is my turn to play.*

*Observation 1.*—The French *Possessive* corresponds to the English, but with a different construction, in—

C'est une de nos connaissances.  
Il n'est pas de ses amis.

*He is an acquaintance of ours.  
He is not a friend of his.*

*Observation 2.*—In familiar language :—

Un mien frère ; un sien neveu (unusual in the other persons).  
A travers un mien pré certain ânon passa.

(b) by a *Conj. Pers. or Reflexive Pron.* + *Def. Art.* (see §§ 117 and 130 b) : as,

Je vais me faire couper les cheveux. *I am going to have my hair cut.*

Cela ne leur entrait pas dans l'esprit. *That did not enter their minds.*

“ Mes yeux sont trop blessés, et la cour et la ville  
Ne m'offrent rien qu'objets à m'échauffer la bile.”

*Mol. Misanthr. i. 1.*

*Observation 1.*—The *Article alone* is used when no ambiguity can arise (§ 117, b) : as,  
J'ai mal à la tête (aux dents). *My head aches (my teeth ache).*

This use of the *Def. Art.*, of which there are instances in Shakespeare, has not obtained in English :—

“ The king is angry ; see, he bites the lip.”—*Rich. III. 2, 27.*

*Observation 2.*—The *Possess. Adj.* before names of ailments generally denotes that they are chronic :—

Voilà son mal qui la reprend.

*Observation 3.*—After *changer de*, *redoubler de*, no qualifying word is required ; as,  
Il a changé d'avis (de religion, etc.).—*Ils redoublent d'efforts.*

(c) by *en* + *le* (la, les), or— *le* (la, les) + *en*, when referring to the *Name of a Thing* in a preceding clause, provided the Noun qualified is the Subject or Direct Object of its clause : as,

En passant par cette ville, j'en ai admiré les belles églises. *In going through this town, I admired its beautiful churches.*

J'aime ce pays, le climat en est délicieux. *I like this country, its climate is delightful.*

(d) by the *Definite Article* + *Relative Clause* when the *Name of the Object* possessed is followed by a Complement : as,

Le désir que j'ai de vous plaire. *My desire to please you.*

Les lettres qu'il lui écrit. *His letters to him.*

*Observation 1.*—This is a very common construction in the classic period :—  
Cette hauteur d'estime où vous êtes de vous. *This overwhelming self-esteem of yours.*

*Observation 2.*—The English use of a Demonstrative before a Possess. Pron. may be rendered by *que voici*, after the Noun :—

Mon ami *que voici*. *This my friend.*

Notice also—

Ce monsieur ; but— *cette dame, cette demoiselle.*

Cher monsieur ; but— *chère dame, chère demoiselle.*

Monsieur votre père ; madame votre mère ; mademoiselle votre sœur.

*Observation 3.*—*Substantival use of Possessive Pronouns :—*

Il est plein d'égards pour moi et pour les miens. *My own (i.e. relations).*

Les nôtres se sont bien battus.

On n'est jamais trahi que par les siens.

*Our troops have fought well.*

*One is never betrayed, except by one's own friends.*

Il fait des siennes.

Y mettre du sien.

*He is up to his pranks.*

*To draw upon one's own imagination.*

## 168

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Ce, neutral Pronoun, has both *prospective* and *retrospective* force, and is used

(a) as the *SUBJECT* or *PREDICATE* of être (sometimes also of *devoir*, *pouvoir*, with *sembler* only parenthetically) :—

(1) as an indeclinable *Demonstrative* or *Impersonal* Pronoun, answering to the English *this, that ; these, those ; it* : as,

Est-ce votre chien ?—Oui, ce l'est.\*

Sont-ce vos enfants ?—Oui, ce les sont.\*

Est-ce toi ?—Non, ce n'est pas moi.

Qu'est-ce ?—Ce n'est rien.

C'est vous qui êtes responsable.

*Is this (that) your dog?—Yes, it is.*

*Are these (those) your children?—*

*Yes, they are.*

*Is that (it) you?—No, it is not I.*

*What is this (that)?—It is nothing.*

*It is you who are responsible ; or,*

*You are responsible.*

*That is to say. To wit.*

*Who is that?—It must be Charles.*

*Might it not perhaps be herself?*

*One ought, methinks, to deal leniently.*

*When he consented to it at last, it was not heartily.*

*What hour is the clock striking just now?*

*What o'clock is it?*

C'est à dire. C'est à savoir (A savoir).

Qui est-ce ?—Ce doit être Charles.

Ne pourrait-ce pas être elle-même ?

Il faudrait, ce me semble, user d'indulgence.

Lorsqu'il y consentit enfin, ce ne fut pas de bon cœur.

Quelle heure est-ce ?

(Quelle heure est-il ?

\* Rather pedantic, though grammatically correct ; we usually say— *c'est mon chien ; ce sont eux.*

(2) as a *Personal* Pronoun of the 3d pers., m. or f., sing. or plur., answering to *he, she, it, they* : as,

Qui est cet étranger ?—C'est un Danois.

La jolie petite fille que c'est !

Je m'étonne quelles gens ce peuvent être.

Je lis et relis Molière, c'est mon auteur favori.

*Who is this stranger?—He (it) is a Dane.*

*What a pretty girl she is!*

*I wonder what sort of people they can be.*

*I read Molière over and over again, he is my favourite author.*

(3) *Redundantly and emphatically*, either

(a) as a *grammatical* subject, when—for the sake of stress—the *Predicative Complement* is placed before the *logical* subject; in which case the latter is generally emphasised by *que*, or—if an *Infinitive*—by *que de* :—

	<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Predicate.</i>	
Thus—	César	fut un grand homme,	} are made emphatic by inverting Subj. and Predicate :—
	Brûler	n'est pas répondre,	
<i>Gram. Subj.</i>	<i>Predicate.</i>	<i>Correlative of ce.</i>	<i>Logical Subj.</i>
Ce	fut un grand homme	que	César.
Ce	n'est pas répondre	que	de brûler.

C'est un beau pays **que** le vôtre.*Yours is a fine country.*

(instead of—Votre pays est un beau pays).

*A fine country this country of yours.*Ce sont de vrais coquins **que** ces gens là.*They are regular scamps, those folks.*Ce que c'est **que** de trop réfléchir !*What it is, though, to be over-cautious !*C'est beaucoup **que** de savoir commander.*It is an important matter to know how to command.*Qu'est-ce **que** c'est **que** cela ?*What is this (that) ?*

Ce n'est pas lui, c'est elle qui l'a fait.

*It is not he, it is she that has done it.*

Qu'est-ce à dire ?

*What does that mean ?**Observation.—*C'est vous sur qui } le châtiment retom-  
C'est sur vous que } bera.*It is on you that the punishment will fall.*

or (β) to recapitulate the Subject or the Predicate : as,

L'Empire **c'est** la paix.*The Empire is Peace.*Traduire **c'est** interpréter.*To translate is to interpret.*Ce qui m'afflige, **c'est** de le voir si malheureux.*What grieves me is to see him so unhappy.**Observation 1.—*This expletive use of *ce* is optional, unless the complement is a Personal Pronoun or a Noun in the plural :—Ce que je crains **c'est** (or **est**) d'être surpris. But—Ce qui m'attache à la vie **ce sont** (not **sont**) mes enfants.Ce qui me console **c'est** (not **est**) vous.*Observation 2.—*If the complement is an adjective the expletive *ce* is not used :—Ce qu'il dit **est** incontestable.*Observation 3.—*If *être* is used negatively, *ce* may be omitted :—Végéter **n'est** pas vivre.(b) as the *ANTECEDENT OF A RELATIVE PRONOUN*, or of the Conj. *que*, standing as *Subject*, *Object*, or *Complement* : as,Ce qui est différé **n'est** pas perdu.*Forbearance is not acquittance.*Vous savez **ce** que je sais.*You know what I know.*C'est **ce** dont je ne m'inquiète pas.*That is what I do not trouble myself about.*

Ce que j'ai de bien, de richesses, est à vous.

*What earthly goods I have are yours.*Il se plaint de **ce** qu'on ne l'a pas averti.

(See § 161.)

- 169** *Ce* is more clearly defined by the adverbial particles *ci*, *here*, and *là*, *there*, standing either

(a) *enclitically*, i.e. coalescing into *ceci*, *this*, and *cela* (contracted *ça*), *that*, which forms *must* be used instead of *ce*, if construed with verbs other than *être*, *devoir*, *pouvoir* : as,

*Subj.* Que veut dire *ceci* ? *Cela* vous regarde. Comment *ça* va-t-il ?  
C'a été la cause de bien des malheurs.

*Dir. Obj.* Reprenez *ceci*, et donnez-moi *cela*.

La vertu a *cela* d'heureux qu'elle se suffit à elle-même.—La Bruyère.

*Ind. Obj.* Je ne m'attendais pas à *cela*.

*Observation.*—*Cela* applied to persons is familiar, and hence occasionally rather contemptuous : as,

Voyez ces enfants ; *cela* est heureux, *cela* ne fait que jouer.

C'était un brave homme, mais trop bon, trop doux, *cela* ne savait pas manier les hommes.

Comp. the use of *das* in German :—*Das* schlendert wie die Schnecken.

or (b) *separately* (by *tnesis*) : as,

Qu'est-*ce-ci* ? *What's up ?*

(Qu'est *ceci* ? *What is this ?*)

C'est *là* une belle action.

Sont-*ce là* nos gens ?

C'est *là* la morale de Descartes.

*Such are Descartes' ethics.*

- 170** *Celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, *celles* (compounded of *ce* + *lui*, *elle* ; *eux*, *elles*), answer in English—

(1) to the *Personal* Pronouns *he*, *she*, *it*, *they*, if antecedents to a *Relative* Pron. : as,

*Celui* (*celle*) qui l'a fait sera puni(e). *He (she) who has done it will be punished.*

(2) to the *Demonstrative* Pron. *that*, *that one* ; or *the one* : as,

Les consuls romains avaient un pouvoir presque égal à *celui* des rois.  
C'est la même route que *celle* déjà décrite.

- 171** If standing absolutely, i.e. if not limited by an *Adjective* Clause, a *Participle*, or by a *Possessive* Genitive, *celui*, *celle*, etc., must, like *ce*, be more clearly defined by the adv. particles *-ci* and *-là* (see § 34 (c) and (d)) :—

Il n'y a pas de mot plus magique que *celui-ci* : l'argent. *There is no word more magical than this—money.*

*Celui-là*, c'est un habile homme. *As for him, he is a clever man.*

*Observation.*—*Celui-ci*, *celui-là*, etc., may, however, be antecedent to a *Relative* Pron.—

(1) after *c'est* :—C'est *celui-là* qui me l'a dit.

(2) if the *Relat.* does not stand immediately after :—

*Celui-là* est heureux, qui est content.

(3) if the *Adj. Clause* is an *expletive*, i.e. not a necessary, attribute : as,  
Turenne et Condé . . . ; *celui-là* (qui fut tué d'un coup de canon) fut enseveli dans son triomphe ; *celui-ci* (qui finit sa vie dans sont lit) jouit longtemps de l'éclat de sa renommée.

## RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

Full paradigms of these having been given in the *Accidence*, §§ 35, 36, it remains to treat them from the exclusively English point of view :

172 (a) *WHOSE*: Relative Pronoun :—

Subj.	<i>The man whose house was sold.</i>	<i>L'homme dont la maison fut vendue</i> <sup>(1)</sup> .
Obj.	<i>The man whose house I bought.</i>	<i>L'homme dont j'ai acheté la maison</i> <sup>(2)</sup> .
Compl.	<i>The man for whose house I offered a high price.</i>	<i>L'homme pour la maison duquel j'offris un haut prix</i> <sup>(3)</sup> .
	<i>Those whose riches make them proud, . . .</i>	<i>Ceux que leurs richesses enorgueillissent, . . .</i> <sup>(4)</sup> .

*Observation 1.*—The Noun on which **dont** depends retains the Definite Article.

*Observation 2.*—The Noun-Object on which **dont** depends retains, contrary to English usage, its normal place after the Verb.

*Observation 3.*—**Duquel, de laquelle, etc.**, instead of **dont**, must be used if the Noun on which the Relative Pronoun depends is governed by a Preposition.

*Observation 4.*—If the Object of the Relative clause is identical with the Subj. of the Principal clause, render the English *whose* + Pers.-Pron.-Object by the French Relat.-Pron.-Object + Possess. Adj. as above ;

Or by the Relat.-Pron.-Subj. + Def. Art. :—

*The man whose finger was carried off.*                      *L'homme qui a eu le doigt emporté.*

(b) *WHOSE*, Interrogative Adj.-Pronoun, is rendered by the Gen. or Dat. of the Personal Pron. :—

<i>Whose brother is he ?</i>	<i>De qui est-il frère ?</i>
<i>Whose castle is this ?</i>	<i>A qui est ce château ?</i>

173 *WHAT* used relatively :—

(a) Not governed by a Preposition : as,

Nem. Subj.	<i>What (= that which) is just is honest.</i>	<i>Ce qui est juste est honnête.</i>
Nom. Pred.	<i>I am what you are.</i>	<i>Je suis ce que vous êtes.</i>
Acc.	<i>I know what you mean.</i>	<i>Je sais ce que vous voulez dire.</i>

(b) Governed by a Preposition (never **que**) : as,

Gen.	<i>That is what I complain of.</i>	<i>C'est ce dont je me plains.</i>
	<i>That is what I wanted to talk to you about.</i>	<i>Voilà de quoi je voulais vous parler.</i>
Dat.	<i>I know what you are alluding to.</i>	<i>Je sais (ce) à quoi vous faites allusion.</i>
Adv. Compl.	<i>That is what you are mistaken in.</i>	<i>C'est en quoi vous vous trompez.</i>

For *what* and *which* used *interrogatively* or *absolutely*, see § 36.

- 174** *WHEN* ; *relative Adverb* ; generally answers to **que** or **où** : as,  
*That winter when it was so cold.* L'hiver **qu'il** fit si froid.  
*The day on which that happened.* Le jour **que** cela est arrivé.  
*One fine morning when I was out walking.* Un beau matin **que** je me promenais.  
*At the time when I saw him again.* Au moment **que** (où) je le revis.  
 For *when*, *adverbial Conjunction*, see § 176 (b) 1.

**175**

## REPETITION OF PRONOUNS.

(a) A *PERSONAL PRONOUN*, used (1) as *Subject* of two or more consecutive Verbs, is generally (but not necessarily) repeated before each : as,

L'ordre a trois avantages : il soulage la mémoire, il ménage le temps, il conserve les choses.

Il prit, quitta, reprit la cuirasse et la haire.

Il ne boit ni ne mange. Je vivrai sans reproche ou périrai sans honte.

(2) as *Object* of two or more consecutive Finite Verbs, *must* be repeated before each (but not necessarily before Infinitives or Participles) : as,

Je **vous** estime fort, **vous** aime, et **vous** révere.

On **les** a trompés, insultés.

*Observation 1.*—The repetition is necessary if the Pron. is the object of verbs governing different cases : as,

Ces dames **se** (acc.) sont rencontrées et **se** (dat.) sont parlé.

*Observation 2.*—*Conjunctive Pers. Pronouns* or *Nouns* combined with *Pers. Pronouns*, whether used as *Subject*, *Object*, or *Complement*, are often repeated in the form of a *Disjunctive Pers. Pronoun*, and *vice versa* (cp. § 104, b) : as,

Et je te dis, **moi**, que je veux que tu vives à ma fantaisie.

Le roi, l'âne ou moi, nous mourrons. Il ira vous voir, toi et ton ami.

Il ne me plaît pas, **moi**.

(b) a *POSSESSIVE* or *DEMONSTRATIVE Adjective* is, as a rule, repeated before each word it qualifies, except in technical terms (Law, etc.) and familiar expressions, for the sake of conciseness : as,

Nos lois et usances. Vos nom et prénoms ? Ses père et mère.

*Observation.*—A *Possessive Adjective* is sometimes, for the sake of emphasis, repeated in the form of a *Disjunctive Pers. Pron.* : as,

C'est **mon** Potsdam à moi. C'est **son** avis à lui (à elle).

## SEVENTH CHAPTER : CONJUNCTIONS.

N.B.—For their classification, see §§ 91-92 ; Construction, § 107.

For those governing the Subjunctive, see § 164.

- 176** *Que*, on account of its multifarious functions, requires special notice ; it is used—

(a) to connect *Substantive Clauses* with *Principal Sentences* ; contrary to English usage, it is never omitted : as,

Je sais **qu'il** viendra.

*I know he will come.*

Elle dit **qu'elle** est souffrante.

*She says she is poorly.*

*Observation.*—Thus also after *Elliptical Clauses* :—

Peut-être **qu'il** viendra. *Maybe he will come.*

Peut-être **que** oui, peut-être **que** non. *Oh, que si !*

Sans doute **que** vous savez de quoi il s'agit.

Heureusement **qu'il** n'a rien vu.

**d** (b) to connect *Adverbial* Clauses with Principal Sentences, in which case it generally stands—

(1) instead of *quand*, *quand même*; *lorsque*; *si*; *depuis que*; *pendant que*; *parce que*; *à ce que*, etc.

A peine était-il sorti, *que* la maison s'écroula. *Hardly had he gone when the house fell in.*

Je n'eus pas plutôt commencé à parler, qu'il m'interrompit. *I had no sooner begun to speak when he interrupted me.*

Un jour que nous étions sortis de bonne heure . . . *One day when we had gone out early.*

Il y a dix ans *que* je ne l'ai vu. *It is ten years since I saw him last.*

Je lui parlai qu'il était encore au lit. *I spoke to him whilst he was still in bed.*

Qu'il fasse le moindre excès, il est malade. *If he indulges in the slightest excess, he is ill.*

Qu'il y consente ou non, je le ferai. *Whether he consents to it or not, I shall do it.*

Si je suis triste, c'est *que* j'en ai sujet. *If I am sad, it is because I have reason for it.*

Vous n'êtes pas d'ici, *que* je le crois. *You are not a native, as far as I know.*

(2) instead of *afin que*, *de peur* (*crainte*) *que* . . . *ne*, à moins *que* . . . *ne*, avant *que* : as,

Approchez, *que* (for—*afin que*) je vous parle. *Come near me, so that I may speak to you.*

Retirez-vous, qu' (for—*de peur que*) il ne vous maltraite. *Withdraw, lest he should ill-treat you.*

Ne faites rien *que* je ne vous aie donné des instructions. *Do nothing before (until) I have given you instructions.*

Il aurait tous les trésors du monde, *qu'il ne* serait pas satisfait. *Even if he had all the treasures in the world, he would nevertheless not be satisfied.*

(3) to avoid the repetition of the above and other Conjunctions occurring in two or more consecutive dependent Clauses : as,

Comme il était instruit et *que* chacun le consultait, . . . *As he was well informed and as everybody consulted him, . . .*

Quand on est jeune et qu'on se porte bien, . . . *When one is young and enjoying good health, . . .*

Si vous le recontrez et qu'il vous retienne,\* . . . *If you meet him, and if he should detain you, . . .*

\* *Observation 1.*—*Que* standing for *si* governs the Subjunctive, though *si* itself does not : as,

"Si le roi m'avait donné Paris sa grand' ville,  
Et qu'il me fallût quitter l'amour de ma mie."—Mol. *Misanth.* i. 2.

*Observation 2.*—*Que* also replaces other Conjunctions and Adverbs in Principal Clauses : as,

Que (= Pourquoi) ne se corrige-t-il ? *Why does he not mend his ways?*  
Que (= Pourquoi) ne m'est-il permis de parler ! *Why am I not (i.e. Would that I were) allowed to speak !*  
A qui puis-je confier mon secret qu'à vous seul ! *To whom can I confide my secret except to you alone !*

(c) *redundantly* (=Lat. quod) before the logical Subject; as a correlative of *ce*, grammatical subj. (see § 168, a, 3): as,

N'est-ce pas m'outrager **que** d'écouter leur voix?

Ce **que** c'est **que** de nous! Qu'est-ce **que** c'est **que** cela?

Si j'étais **que** de vous. Je n'ai **que** faire [no habeo quod faciam] de votre aide.



## EIGHTH CHAPTER.

177

### ORDER OF WORDS: OBJECT AND COMPLEMENTS.

(For *Subject* and *Predicate*, see § 106; for the *Adjective*, see §§ 123-4.)

The *NORMAL ORDER OF OBJECTS*:—

(a) ORDER OF NOUN-OBJECTS.			
(1) <i>Subject.</i>	(2) <i>Verb.</i>	(3) <i>Dir. Noun-Obj.</i>	(4) <i>Indir. Noun-Obj.</i>
Il	inspire	le courage	à ses soldats.
(b) ORDER OF PRONOUN-OBJECTS OF DIFFERENT PERSONS.*			
(1) <i>Subject.</i>	(2) <i>Indir. Obj.</i>	(3) <i>Dir. Obj.</i>	(4) <i>Verb.</i>
Il	me (or te)	le (or les)	donnera.
(c) ORDER OF PRONOUN-OBJECTS BOTH OF THE THIRD PERSON.			
(1) <i>Subject.</i>	(2) <i>Dir. Obj.</i>	(3) <i>Indir. Obj.</i>	(4) <i>Verb.</i>
Il	le (la, les)	lui (or leur)	donnera.
(d) ORDER OF NOUN-OBJ. AND PRON.-OBJ. COMBINED.			
(1) <i>Subject.</i>	(2) <i>Pron.-Obj.</i>	(3) <i>Verb.</i>	(4) <i>Noun-Obj.</i>
Il	le (or la, les)	donnera	au maître.
Il	lui (or leur)	donnera	son livre.
(e) ORDER OF CONJ. PRON.-OBJ. AND DISJ. PRON.-OBJ. COMBINED.†			
(1) <i>Subject.</i>	(2) <i>Conj. Pr.-Obj.</i>	(3) <i>Verb.</i>	(4) <i>Disj. Pr.-Obj.</i>
Il	nous	a recommandé	à vous.

\* i.e. provided one of them be of the *third* person.

† i.e. if *neither* is of the *third* person.

For full tables of the order of Personal Pronoun-Objects, see §§ 26-31.

**178** The *EXCEPTIONAL ORDER*, used for the sake of emphasis or euphony, is—

(a) to place the *Indirect Noun-Object* or *Noun-Complement* before the *Direct Noun-Object*, especially if the latter, on account of its adjuncts, is longer than the former : as,

(1) <i>Subj.</i>	(2) <i>Verb.</i>	(3) <i>Indir. Obj.</i>	(4) <i>Enlarged Dir. Obj.</i>
Un décret	enleva	aux Maures	la liberté religieuse que le traité de Grenade leur avait laissée.
Savonarole	voulait rendre	{ au clergé au peuple aux arts	la pureté des mœurs, la liberté, le sentiment religieux.

(b) to commence the sentence with the word in closest logical connection with the preceding clause ; especially with Verbs of *adding, joining, replying, etc.* :—ajouter, joindre, se rattacher, s'opposer, répondre, succéder, substituer, préférer ; as,

(1) <i>Indirect Object or Complement.</i>	<i>Verb, if Intransitive, Passive, or Reflexive.</i>	<i>Noun-Subject.</i>
A ces matins brumeux	succédaient	des soirées froides et des nuit glaciales.
A son cou	était attachée	une feuille de palmier.
A un peuple nouveau	il fallait	une langue nouvelle.
(2) <i>Indirect Object.</i>	<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Verb, if Transitive.</i>
A cela	nous	ne répondîmes rien.

*Observation.*—The transposition of the Genitive is restricted to the style of poetry : as,  
Du temple orné partout de festons magnifiques  
Le peuple saint en foule inondait les portiques.

**179** *PLACE OF ADVERBS* (see also § 126).

(a) *Interrogative and Relative Adverbs*, whether simple or compounded with Prepositions, are placed at the beginning of the sentence : as,

Quand viendra l'accomplissement de vos promesses ?

Par où le courrier a-t-il passé ? C'est un mauvais pas d'où il s'est bien tiré.

The use of an *interrog. Adv.* in the middle of a sentence, though sometimes correct, is to be avoided.

(b) *Adverbs of Time, Place, Manner, and Degree*, are placed—

(1) as a rule, after the Verb : as,

Les dépêches sont arrivées hier au soir. Les troupes ont passé par ici.

Il a plu hier continuellement.

Elle vous aime bien.

Il ne pleut plus.

(For *Adv. of Negation*, see § 156.)

If the Verb is in a *Compound tense*, most adverbs of *Manner* or *Degree* may be, and generally are better, placed between the *Auxiliary* and the *Part. Perf.*, or between the *Finite Verb* and the *Infinitive* : as,

Avez-vous bien dormi ?—Non, j'ai très mal dormi.

Quoi ! vous voilà déjà revenu.

Les maladies nous font mieux apprécier la santé.

Veuillez bien ne pas m'interrompre.

*Observation.*—The place of the Adv. between Subj. and Verb, so common in Latin and English, is quite *exceptional* in French :—

Le duc, alors, fit avancer ses archers.

La valeur, quelquefois, existe sans lumière.

(2) emphatically, at the beginning of the sentence : as,

Déjà le soleil était sur l'horizon. Jamais nation n'a été si superstitieuse.

*Observation 1.*—With attraction of the Verb, see § 107 (b) :

Ainsi va le monde. De là viennent tant de malentendus.

*Observation 2.*—With interrogative construction, see § 107 (a) :

L'été a été pluvieux, aussi le pain est-il cher.

*Observation 3.*—Tôt, tard, matin, de bonne heure, davantage, may not be placed first, except the first two in the phrase, *tôt ou tard*, sooner or later : as,

Tôt ou tard les méchants seront punis.

## APPENDIX VII.

### 180

VERBS with different Constructions, according to Meaning :—

(Abbreviations :—qqn. = quelqu'un. qqch. = quelque chose.)

abuser qqn., to deceive.

s'accommoder de, to put up with.

apercevoir, to perceive, to descry.

appeler, to call, to summon.

applaudir, to praise.

s'applaudir de, to congratulate one's self on.

approcher, to have access to.

approcher qqch. d'une autre, to bring something near to . . .

approcher (intr.), to come nearer.

assister qqn., to help one.

attendre qqn. or qqch., to wait for.

atteindre, to reach, to overtake, to hit.

changer qqch., to exchange (one thing for another), to alter.

(changer d'avis, to alter one's mind ;

changer (intrans.), to undergo change.

commander qqch., to be in command of (an army, etc.).

commander à, to have authority over.

convenir de qqch., to admit, to acquiesce in.

convenir (intrans.), to be of one mind, to agree.

croire, qqn. or qqch., to believe.

croire aux revenants (en Dieu), to believe in the existence of.

défier qqn., to defy, dare, challenge.

abuser de qqch., to misuse.

s'accommoder à, to adapt one's self to.

s'apercevoir de, to become aware of.

en appeler à, to appeal to.

applaudir à, to applaud.

approcher de, to come (bring) near.

s'approcher de, to draw nearer to.

assister à qqch., to be present at.

s'attendre à qqch., to expect.

atteindre à, to get at, to attain.

changer d'habit, to put on another coat.)

se changer en, to be changed (transformed) into.

commander qqch. à qqn., to enjoin.

convenir à qqn., to suit, to be seen.

se convenir, to suit each other.

croire à, to trust to.

se défier de, to mistrust.

demandeur qqn., *to want to see.*  
 disputer (intrans.), *to argue, to reason.*  
 disputer qqch. à qqn., } *to contend for.*  
 se disputer, qqch., }  
 échapper qqch., *to have a narrow escape of*  
     *(close shave).*  
 (s') échapper de, *to escape, run away from.*  
 goûter, *to taste, to appreciate, to relish, to*  
     *approve of.*  
 hériter de qqn., *to be the heir of.*  
 hériter de qqch., *to inherit, to come into.*  
 imposer (intrans.), *to command respect.*  
 imposer qqch. à qqn., *to impose, to lay on, to*  
     *tax.*  
 insulter, *to call names, to insult, to attack.*  
 jouer qqn., *to deceive, to take in.*  
 jouer d'un instrument, *to play on.*  
 se jouer de qqn., *to trifle with.*

manquer qqn. or qqch., *to fail to attain, to*  
     *miss, not to hit.*  
 manquer de, *to be short (devoid) of, to be*  
     *wanting (in).*  
 manquer (intrans.), *to become insolvent, to*  
     *miss (fire, etc.), to give way.*  
 s'occuper de, *to attend to.*  
 participer de, *to have something of the nature*  
     *of.*  
 se passer, *to pass away, to elapse, to happen*  
     *to take place.*  
 se passer de, *to do without.*  
 persuader qqn. de qqch., } *to convince,*  
 persuader qqch. à qqn., } *to persuade.*  
 pourvoir de, *to provide (endow) with.*  
 prendre (intrans.), *to take (strike) root, to be a*  
     *success, etc.*  
 présider (intrans.), *to be chairman.*  
 prétendre qqch., *to claim . . . as a right.*  
 répondre de, *to be responsible for, to answer*  
     *for.*  
 ressentir, *to feel, to resent.*  
 rêver de, *to dream of.*  
 rêver qqch., *to dream, to see as in a dream, to*  
     *aspire to.*  
 servir (intrans.), *to be a servant, to serve (as a*  
     *sailor, soldier, etc.).*  
 servir de, *to serve as, to serve instead of.*  
 se servir (de), *to help one's self, to make use of.*  
 songer (de), *to dream of.*  
 sonner qqch. or qqn., *to ring, to ring (for*  
     *one's servants)*  
 tâter qqch. (le poulx, etc.), *to feel, to sound,*  
     *to search, to put to the test.*  
 tenir (intrans.), *to hold fast, to stick, to sit, etc.*  
 tenir, *to hold, to keep, to possess. etc.*  
 tenir de, qqn., *to take after . . .*  
 tenir qqch. de qqn., *to be indebted to . . .*  
     *for . . .*  
 toucher qqch., *to feel, to touch, to hit, to play,*  
     *to receive (money, etc.), to be contiguous to.*  
 toucher qqn., *to move, to concern, to affect, to*  
     *touch.*

toucher qqn. de (du coude, etc.), *to touch*  
     *with.*  
 user qqch., *to wear out, to use up.*

s'user, *to wear out (intrans.)*  
 veiller qqn., *to sit up with, to nurse, to watch.*  
 veiller de près, *to keep an eye upon.*

demandeur qqch. à qqn., *to ask . . . for . . .*  
 disputer de, *to vie in, to dispute about.*

échapper à or de, *to evade, to shun, to avoid,*  
     *to elude.*

goûter de (à), *to have a taste of, to try the*  
     *taste of.*

hériter qqch. de qqn., *to inherit.*

en imposer à, *to impose upon.*

insulter à qqn. ou qqch., *to be an insult to.*

jouer qqch., *to play, stake.*

jouer à un jeu, *to play at.*

jouer (intrans.), *to work; faire jouer, to get to*  
     *work.*

manquer à, *to fail, to fail in one's duty to, to*  
     *slight (le cœur lui manque, his heart quails).*

s'occuper à, *to be engaged in.*

paticiper à, *to share (take a share) in.*

se passer à (de), *to be satisfied with.*

persuader (intrans.), *to carry conviction.*

pourvoir à, *to provide for, to attend (see) to.*

prendre qqch. à qqn., *to take . . . from . . .*

(impers.) il lui prit envie, *the fancy took him.*

présider à, *to preside at (over), to watch over.*

prétendre à, *to aspire to.*

répondre à, *to answer, to reply to, to corre-*  
     *spond to.*

se ressentir de, *to feel the effects of.*

rêver (songer) à, *to meditate on.*

servir qqn., *to serve, to wait (attend) on.*

servir à qqch., *to be good for.*

servir qqch. à qqn., *to serve up.*

songer à, *to meditate on, to purpose.*

sonner d'un instrument—du cor, etc., *to*  
     *sound.*

tâter à (de), *to taste, to partake of.*

tenir à qqch., *to care for, to be anxious about.*

tenir à qqn. (impers.), *to depend on.*

se (s'en) tenir à, *to abide by, to be satisfied*  
     *with.*

toucher (intrans.), *to strike, to hit, to run*  
     *aground, etc.*

toucher à, *to touch, to handle, to reach, to*  
     *attain, to tamper with, to be on the verge*  
     *(eve) of, etc*

user de, *to make use of; en user, to deal, to*  
     *act.*

veiller (intrans.), *to sit up, to keep awake.*

veiller à (sur), *to look after, to attend to.*

# 181 VERBS which require no Preposition before the following Infinitive :—

affirmer,	croire,	faire beau,	penser (à),	sembler,
aimer autant,	daigner,	faire bon,	préférer (de),	sentir,
aimer mieux,	désirer (de),	falloir,	pressentir,	se trouver,
aller,	devoir,	se figurer,	prétendre,	souhaiter,
assurer,	dire,*	s'imaginer,	pouvoir,	soutenir,
avoir beau.	(s') écouter,	jurer,	protester,	témoigner,
avouer,	entendre,	laisser,	raconter,	valoir autant,
compter,	envoyer,	mener,	reconnaître,	valoir mieux,
confesser,	espérer (de),	nier (de),	retourner,	venir (de or à),
considérer,	être censé,	oser,	revenir (pour †),	voir,
convenir,	faillir (à)	ouïr,	savoir,	vouloir.
courir,	faire,	paraître,	* In the sense of <i>to assert</i> .	

† Most Verbs of Motion which take *pour*, may also be used without prepositions.

# 182 VERBS which require *de* before a following Infinitive :—

s'abstenir,	crier,	éviter,	nier (see 181),	regretter,
accuser,	dédaigner,	s'excuser,	offrir,	se réjouir,
achever,	dégoûter,	faire bien,	omettre,	remercier,
affecter,	se défaire,	faire mieux,	ordonner,	rendre grâce,
s'affliger,	défendre,	faire semblant,	oublier (à),	se repentir,
s'agir,	démander (à),	feindre,	pardonner,	reprocher,
s'apercevoir,	se dépêcher,	(se) féliciter,	parier,	rire,
s'applaudir,	désespérer,	finir,	permettre,	risquer,
s'appréhender,	différer,	(se) flatter,	persuader,	rougir,
avertir,	dire ( <i>to order</i> ),	frémir,	se piquer,	sommer,
s'aviser,	discontinuer,	se garder,	plaindre,	se soucier
n'avoir garde,	disconvenir,	gémir,	se plaindre,	souffrir,
avoir peur,	dispenser,	se glorifier,	préférer (see 181),	souhaiter,
s'attrister,	dissuader,	gronder,	prescrire,	soupçonner,
blâmer,	douter,	hasarder,	presser,	se souvenir
brûler,	écrire,	se hâter,	présumer,	suggérer,
cesser,	s'efforcer,	s'indigner,	prier,	supplier,
charger,	(s') empêcher,	s'inquiéter,	promettre,	tâcher (à),
commander,	s'exprimer (à),	jurer,	proposer,	tarder (see 183),
conjuré,	enjoindre,	mander,	se proposer,	tenter,
conseiller,	s'enorgueillir,	méditer,	protester,	trembler,
se consoler,	enrager,	se mêler,	punir,	trouver bon,
se contenter,	entreprendre,	menacer,	se rappeler,	se vanter,
convenir,	essayer (or à),	mériter,	recommander,	venir (de or no
craindre,	s'étonner,	négliger,	refuser,	prep.).

+

# 183 VERBS which require *à* before a following Infinitive :—

s'abaisser,	balancer,	employer,	(s') habituer,	(se) préparer,
aboutir,	se borner,	s'empresse (de),	se hasarder,	provoquer,
s'accoutumer,	chercher,	encourager,	hésiter,	se refuser,
aider,	concourir,	engager,	incliner,	renoncer,
aimer,	condamner,	enhardir,	instruire,	répugner,
amener,	consentir,	enseigner,	s'intéresser,	se résigner,
(s') amuser,	consister,	s'entendre,	inviter,	(se) résoudre,
animer,	conspirer,	essayer (see 182),	se mettre,	réussir,
appeler,	se décider,	être,	montrer,	servir,
s'appliquer,	démander (or de),	s'étudier,	s'obstiner,	songer,
apprendre,	désapprendre,	exceller,	parvenir,	suffire,
aspirer,	déterminer	(s') exciter,	passer (le temps),	tarder (or de),
s'attacher,	dévouer,	(s') exercer,	penser (see 181),	tendre,
(s') attendre,	disposer,	exhorter,	persister,	tenir,
autoriser,	se disposer,	(s') exposer,	persévérer,	travailler,
avoir,	divertir,	(se) former,	(se) plaie,	trouver,
avoir peine,	donner,	gagner,	porter,	viser.

# INDEX I.

## FRENCH WORDS AND GRAMMATICAL SUBJECTS.

(For English Words and Phrases, see Index II.)

The numbers refer to the Sections, not to the Pages.

§§ 1 to 100 contain the ACCIDENCE; §§ 101 to 183 the SYNTAX.

### A

- à, 4, 88; sign of dat., 129-35; denoting place, 138 (a); time (b); manner (c); respect (d), 180; before Infinit., 142-3; 183.
- ablativ., 6, 129, 135-6.
- absoudre, conjug., 79.
- abstract nouns, pl. of, 15; with def. art., 116 (a).
- abuser, constr., 180.
- accents, 2.
- accommoder, constr., 180.
- accusative, 6; double, not used in Fr., 176 (c), 126-8; absolute, 128, *Obs.*
- acheter, conj., 60 (b).
- acquérir, conjug., 69.
- adjective, possess., 10, 12. — demonstr., 11, 12.
- adjectives of quality, fem. of, 19-20; comparison of, 21-2; place of, 23, 123-4; used adverbially, 83, *Obs.* 3; compound, fem. and pl. of, 95, 96; list of irreg. fem., 96; used partitively, 118, *Obs.* 3; agreement of, 122; used as pred. compl., 126 (b), *Obs.*; gov. dat., 132; taking inf. with de or à, 144 (c).
- adjective clauses, subjunct. in, 162.
- adverbs, 82-5; of quantity, 9, 12, 118; with dat., 132; of affirmation and negation, 151-5; place of, 179.
- adverbial clauses, subjunct. in, 163.
- adverbial compl., direct, 128; indirect (with à), 134; with de, 137.
- adverbial phrases, without art., 120 (a).
- adverbial relation, 125-56.
- affection, verbs of, with subj., 160 (b).
- affirmation, adv. of, 85.
- afin de, 92 (d), 144 (b).
- afin que, 92 (b), 163 (a).
- agir de, s', 64 (b).
- agreement of adj., 122; of part. pres., 146; of part. perf., 147-50.
- aïeul, plur. of, 14.
- aigre-doux, fem. and pl., 96.
- aigu, fem. of, 19.
- ail, pl. of, 14.
- aimer à, with infin., 142.
- ainsi, invers. after, 107 (c); 156 (b), 5.
- ainsi que, 91.
- air, avoir l', 122 (b), *Obs.* 2.
- aller, conj., 65.
- alphabet, 1.
- à moins de, 92 (d), 144 (b).
- à moins que . . . ne, 92 (b).
- amour, gender of, 97 (a).
- anomalous verbs, 65-81.
- anterior, past, use of, 110 (f).
- à peine, 92 (a); invers. after, 107 (a).
- apercevoir, conjug., 70, 180.
- à plus forte raison, invers. after, 107 (a); apostrophe, 4.
- apparaître, placed first, 107, *Obs.*
- apparoir, conjug., 73.
- appât, pl. and f., 14.
- appeler, conj., 60 (a), 180.
- applaudir, constr., 180.
- apposition, without art., 119 (c), 120 (a).
- apprendre à, with infin., 142.
- approcher, constr., 180.
- après, 90; denoting place, 138 (a); time (b); with infin., 144 (b).
- article, def., 5, 6; use of, 115-21; omission of, 120; = Engl. poss. adj., 117, 130 (b); repetition of, 12 (a).
- article, indef., 7, 12, 115, 119-20.
- partit., 8, 12, 115, 118.
- assaillir, conjug., 68.
- asseoir, conjug., 73.
- assez, with de, 118.
- assister, constr., 180.
- assortir, conjug., 67.
- astreindre, conj., 74.
- asyndeton, 156.
- à travers, 90.
- atteindre, conjug., 74, 180.
- attendant que, en, 92 (b); with subj., 163 (b).
- attendu, agreement of, 148, *Obs.* 2.
- attendu que, 92 (a).
- attributive relation, 114-24.
- aucun, 37 (b); 152 (b), 2.
- au-dessous, au-dessus, 82 (a), 90.
- au lieu de, 92 (d).
- au moins, invers. after, 107 (a).
- auprès de, 90, 138 (a), 1.
- aussi, invers. after, 107 (a).
- aussi bien, conj., 156 (b).
- aussi longtemps que, fut. after, 111 (a).
- aussitôt que, fut. after, 111 (a).
- autant de, 82 (c).
- au travers de, 90.
- autre, 37 (b); foll. by ne, 153 (b).
- autrui, 37 (c).
- auxiliary verbs, 51-4; of mood, 140.
- avant, 90, 138 (b).
- avant de, 92 (d), 144 (b).
- avant que, with subj., 92 (b), 163 (b).
- avec, 138 (a), 1, place; time (b); manner (c).

avoir, conj. of, 51-2; with dat., 133 (1).  
avoir, y, 64.

## B

bas, used as adv., 83, *Obs.* 3.  
battre, conj., 77.  
beau, bel, belle, 20 (*f*).  
beaucoup de, 82 (*c*), 118.  
bénir, 60.  
bétail, pl. of, 14.  
bien, compared, 84.  
bien-aimé, fem. and pl. of, 96.  
bien que, 92 (*b*), 163 (*c*).  
bientôt, invers. after, 107 (*c*).  
boire, conj., 78.  
bon, comp., 22, 84; used as adv., 83, *Obs.* 3.  
bouillir, conj., 67.  
brief, fem. of, 20.  
brièvement, adv., 83.  
bruire, conj., 80.

## C

car, conj., 157 (*b*) 4.  
cardinal numbers, 25 (*a*, *c*).  
cas que, en, with subj., 163 (*c*).  
à cause de, 138 (*d*).  
ce, cet, cette, dem. adj., 11, 12.  
ce, demonstr. pron., 34; comp. with il, 34; agreem. of verb with, 103 (*a*); use of, 168.  
ceci, cela, 34 (*b*); with part. art., 118, *Obs.* 3; use of, 169.  
ceindre, conj., 74.  
cela, 34 (*b*); 118, *Obs.* 3; 169.  
celui-ci, celui-là, 34 (*c*).  
celui, celle, ceux, 34 (*d*); use of, 170.  
celui-ci, celui-là, 34; use of, 171.  
ce n'est pas que, with subj., 163 (*c*).  
cependant, conj., 91; 156 (*b*), 3.  
ce qui, relat. pron. absol., 35 (*e*); use of, 172.  
certain, 37 (*a*).  
cesser, ne, without pas, 155.  
chacun, 37 (*c*).  
changer, conj., 60; with de, 136 (*c*); 167 (*b*), *Obs.* 180.  
chaque, 37 (*a*).  
châtain, fem. and pl. of, 96.  
cher, used as adv., 83, *Obs.* 3.  
chez, 32, 6; 138 (*a*), 1.  
choir, conj., 72.  
ciel, pl. of, 14.  
ci-inclus, agr. of, 122.  
ci-joint, agr. of, 122.  
clair, used as adv., 83, *Obs.* 3.  
clair-semé, fem. and pl. of, 96.  
clore, conj., 80.  
collective numbers, 25 (*h*).

collective noun-subj., agreement with, 104.  
collective nouns, def. art. with, 116 (*a*).  
colour, adj. of, 96.  
combien de, 82 (*c*).  
command, verbs of, with subj., 160 (*a*), 180.  
comme, comment, 82 (*d*).  
common nouns, 98, 1, 4.  
comparative, 21-22.  
comparison of adj., 21-22; of adv., 84.  
complex sentences, 156-164.  
compound nouns, formation of, 16; pl. of, 17; gender of, 99 A.  
compris, agreement of, 148, *Obs.* 2.  
concernant, prep., 138 (*d*).  
concession, foll. by subj., 163 (*c*).  
concessive clauses, foll. by subj., 160-2; condit. in, 112 (*b*); subj. in, 113 (*a*).  
concevoir, conj., 70.  
conclude, conj., 78.  
conditional, conj., 44; use of, 112; conditional, after verbs of enacting, 160 (*a*), *Obs.* 2; 160 (*c*); condit. clause, with subjunct., 113 (*c*), 160-2.  
conduire, conj., 75.  
confire, conj., 77.  
conjugation, regular, 40, 64; irregular, 65, 81.  
conjunctions, 91-92.  
conjunctive mood, use of, 113.  
conjunctive pers. pron., 31.  
connaître, conj., 78.  
consonants, 1; 93, IV.  
construire, conj., 75.  
contraindre, conj., 74.  
contre, 90; 138 (*a*), 1.  
convenir, constr., 180.  
co-ordinate sentences, 156.  
coudre, conj., 79.  
countries, names of, with art., 116 (*c*), 117 A.  
courir à, conj., 69; constr., 32 (*7*).  
court, used as adv., 83, *Obs.* 3.  
couvrir, conj., 68.  
craindre, conj., 74; followed by ne, 153; 160 (*b*), *Obs.*  
crainte de, 92 (*d*).  
crainte que de, 92 (*b*); with subj., 163 (*a*).  
croire, conj., 78; constr., 180; with infin., 144, VI.; 180.  
croître, conj., 78.  
cueillir, conj., 68.

## D

dans, comp. with en, 89; 138 (*a* and *b*).  
d'après, 138 (*d*).  
dative, 6, 88, 129, 135.  
davantage, 84.

days, names of, m., 98, II. A.  
(3); of week, with def. art., 116 (*d*).  
de, 4; to denote dimensions, 25 (*d*); various uses of, 87; with def. art. used partit., 118; comp. with à, par, 136 (*c*), *Obs.* 2; sign of gen., use of, 135-7; denoting time, 138 (*a*) 2; manner, (*c*); cause (*d*), 180; before Infinit., 141-3, 182.  
décevoir, conj., 70.  
déchoir, conj., 72.  
dedans, dehors, 82 (*a*).  
de dessus, 90.  
dénier, constr., 180.  
definite article, 6; equal to Engl. pos. adj., 117, 130 (*b*); = Engl. indef. art., 119 (*b*); with genitive, 121; omitted, 121, *Obs.* 2.  
def., art. and pers. pron. = Engl. poss. pr., 167.  
déjà, 82 (*a*); inversion after, 107 (*c*).  
delices, gender of, 97 (*a*).  
demander, with à or de, 143, 180.  
de manière (façon) à, with inf., 144 (*b*).  
demi, agr. of, 122 (*b*), *Obs.* 1.  
demi-mort, -savant, fem. and pl. of, 96.  
demonstr. adj., 11, 12.  
demonstrative pronoun, 34; use of, 160-171.  
dependent clauses, 157-64.  
depuis, 90, 138 (*b*).  
depuis que, present tense after, 110 (*b*), 3.  
derivation ruling gender, 98, I.  
dernier, place of, 124 (*d*); foll. by subj., 162 (*b*).  
derrière, 82 (*a*); 90; 138 (*a*), 1.  
dès, 90, 138 (*b*).  
dès que, fut. after, 111 (*a*).  
dessus, dessous, 82 (*a*); au dessous, 90.  
dessus, dessous, instead of sous (sur), lui, etc., 165.  
devant, 82 (*a*); 90; 138 (*a*), 1.  
devoir, conj., 70; with infin., 140 (*e*).  
dimensions, 25 (*d*).  
diphthongs, 93, II.  
direction, expr. by à, 134 (*c*).  
direct object, 126-8.  
disjunctive pers. pron., 32; after verbs of motion, 134 *Obs.* 2.  
disputer, constr., 180.  
donec, conj., 156 (*b*), 5.  
dont, relat. pron., 35 (*a*, *c*, *d*), 36; use of, 172.  
dormir, conj., 67.  
doubt, verbs of, with subj., 160 (*c*).  
douter, with ne, 160 (*b*), *Obs.* 2.

droit, used as adv., 83, *Obs.* 3.  
 dû, 70.  
 du moins, 92 (a); invers.  
 after, 107 (a).  
 duquel, use of, 35-36, 172.  
 durant, 138 (b).

## E

échapper, constr., 180.  
 échoir, conjug., 72.  
 éclore, conjug., 80.  
 écrire, conjug., 75.  
 élire, conjug., 78.  
 emotion, verbs of, with subj.,  
 160 (b).  
 empêcher, with ne, 160 (b),  
*Obs.* 2.  
 en, prep., 28, 30-1; comp.  
 with dans, 89; denoting  
 place, 138 (a), time (b),  
 manner c, (d); with part.  
 pres., 146, *Obs.*  
 en, pron., 28, 30-1; used  
 without art, 119 (c); en +  
 def. art. = poss. pron. 167  
 (c).  
 en aller, s', 66.  
 encore, invers. after, 107 (a).  
 encore que, with subj., 163  
 (c).  
 enfreindre, conj., 74.  
 entendre, with dat. of pers.,  
 131; with infin., 140.  
 entre, prep., 90; 138 (a, b), 1.  
 entrer, placed first, 107, *Obs.*  
 envers, prep., 90.  
 espérer, conj., 60 (d).  
 essayer, conj., 60 (e).  
 est-ce que? 57.  
 et . . . et, 91; et . . . et,  
 both, 156.  
 éteindre, conjug., 74.  
 être, conj. of, 53-4; with  
 refl. v., 63; compl. after  
 without art., 119 (c); constr.  
 with dat., 133; used with  
 de, 186 (j); with infin.,  
 140 (b).  
 éviter, with ne, 160 (b), *Obs.* 2.  
 excepté, agreement of, 148,  
*Obs.* 2.  
 excludre, conjug., 78.  
 exprès, used as adv., 83,  
*Obs.* 2.

## F

façon que, de, 92 (c), 163 (a).  
 façon à, de, with infin., 144  
 (b).  
 factitive verbs, without art.,  
 119 (c); constr. of, 126 (b).  
 faillir, conjug., 67.  
 faire, conjug., 77; impers.  
 v., 64 (a); with cogn. acc.,  
 116 (f), *Obs.*; with dat. of  
 pers., 131; with infin. 140.  
 falloir, impers. v., 64 (b);  
 conjug., 72; with infin.,  
 140 (c); with subj., 161  
 (a).

faut, see falloir.  
 faute de, 92 (d).  
 faux, used as adv., 83, *Obs.* 3.  
 feindre, conjug., 74.  
 feminine of nouns, 95.  
 feu, adj., agr. of, 122.  
 fleurir, 60.  
 flour, 60.  
 fol, fou, 20 (f).  
 formation of tenses, 50.  
 fort de, 25 (d).  
 fractional numbers, 25 (e).  
 frais-cueilli, fem. and pl. of,  
 96.  
 franc de port, agr. of, 122  
 (b), *Obs.* 1.  
 frire, conjug., 80.  
 fuir, conjug., 67.  
 future impf. = conditional,  
 112 (b).  
 future pres. conj. of, 43;  
 use of, 111; after verbs of  
 enacting, 160 (a), *Obs.* 2.

## G

gender of nouns, 18, 95-100;  
 of adj., 19-20.  
 genitive, 6, 87; with or with-  
 out art., 121; use of, 135-7.  
 gens, gent, gender of, 97 (a).  
 geographical names, with  
 art., 117, A.  
 gérondif, 145.  
 gerund in Engl. = infin., 139-  
 140 (d); in -ando, -endo  
 (Lat.) = Fr. part. pres., 145.  
 gésir, conjug., 69.  
 goutte, adv. of negat., 151.  
 grec, grecque, 20.  
 gris obscur, fem. of, 96.  
 guère . . . ne, 58, 151-4.

## H

hair, 60.  
 haut, 25 (d); used as adv.,  
 83, *Obs.* 3.  
 hauteur, 25 (d).  
 hébreu, hébraïque, 20.  
 hériter, constr., 180.  
 holy days, names of, with  
 art., 116 (d).  
 hors (de), 138 (a), 1.

## I

ici, 82 (a); invers. after, 107  
 (c).  
 il, impers. comp. with ce,  
 34; agreement with, 103  
 (b).  
 il y a, 64.  
 il y a que, pres. tense after,  
 110 (b), 3.  
 imperative, 31, 47, 113, A.;  
 affirmative, constr. of, 140,  
*Obs.*  
 imperfect, indic., 41; subj.,  
 46; use of, 110.  
 impersonal verbs, 64; with  
 subj. or indic., 161.

imposer, constr., 180.

indeclinable parts of speech,  
 82-92.  
 indef. art., use of, 119;  
 omitted, 119 (c); used in  
 Engl. = def. art. in French,  
 119 (b).  
 indefinite, past, use of, 110  
 (c).  
 indefinite pron., 37.  
 indicative, conjug., 40-3, 50;  
 use of, 108-113, 158, 160  
 (c).  
 indirect interrog., foll. by  
 subj., 162.  
 indirect obj., 129-35.  
 infinitive present, 48; use  
 of, 139-46; without prep.,  
 140, 181; with de, 141, 182;  
 with à, 142, 183; after  
 nouns, with de or à, 144  
 (b); instead of subjunct,  
 144, V., VI.; gender of,  
 99, A.  
 instruire, conjug., 75.  
 instrument, expr. by à, 134  
 (a); by de, 136 (c).  
 insulter, constr., 180.  
 interjections, 86.  
 interrogative conjug., 57-59.  
 interrogative pron., 36; use  
 of, 172-4.  
 interrogative sentences, order  
 in, 106.  
 intrans. verbs used transi-  
 tively, 126 (a), *Obs.* 1; with  
 dat., 132.  
 inversion of subj. and pred.,  
 106-7  
 inverted construction, 178.  
 issir, conjug., 69.  
 ivre-mort, fem. and plur.,  
 96.

## J

jamais . . . ne, 58-9, 151-5.  
 jamais, art. omitted after, 120  
 (b).  
 jeter, conj., 60 (b).  
 jouer, with à, 134 (a); with  
 de, 136 (c), 180.  
 jusqu'à, 138 (a), 1.  
 jusqu'à ce que, with indic. or  
 subj., 163 (b).  
 juste, used as adv., 83, *Obs.* 3.

## K

knowing, verbs of, with subj.,  
 160 (c).

## L

là, for (a).  
 là, invers. after, 107 (c).  
 là-dessus, invers. after, 107  
 (c).  
 laisser, with dat. of pers.,  
 131; with infin., 140.  
 laquelle, lequel, 35 (b, c), 36.  
 large de, 25 (d).

Lat. masc. = French masc., 98, I. 1.  
 Lat. neuter = French masc., 98, I. 2.  
 Lat. fem. = French fem., 98, I. 3.  
 le, la, les, def. art., 5-6, 12, 115-7, 119-21.  
 le, neutral pron., 29.  
 léger-vêtu, fem. and pl. of, 96.  
 leur, 10-12; le leur, 33.  
 liaison, 93.  
 liquid letters, 3; pronunciation of, 93.  
 lire, conjug., 78.  
 loin, 82 (a), 92 (d).  
 loin que, with subj., 163 (c).  
 long de, longueur, 25 (d).  
 lorsque, 92 (a); fut. after, 111 (a).  
 lui, conjunct. pron., 30-31; disj. pron., 32; emphatic, 175.  
 luire, conj., 75.

M

maint, 37 (a).  
 mais, conj., 156 (b), 3.  
 mal, comp., 84.  
 malgré, 138 (d).  
 malgré que, with subj., 92 (b), 163 (c).  
 manière à, de, 92 (d), 144 (b).  
 manière que, de, 92 (c); with subj., 163 (a).  
 manner, expressed by à, 134 (a); by de, 137 (b), 138 (c).  
 manquer, de or à, 143, 180.  
 mark, expressed by de, 136 (j).  
 masculine gender, 180, 98-100.  
 maudire, conjug., 77.  
 meaning ruling gender, 99.  
 measure, names of, with def. art., 119 (b).  
 meilleur, adj., 22, 84; 153 (b).  
 même, 37 (a).  
 mener, conj., 60 (c).  
 mental qualities, names of, with def. art., 119 (b).  
 mentir, conj., 67.  
 metals, names of, m., 99, A. (2).  
 mettre, conjug., 77.  
 mie, adv. of negat., 151.  
 mien, le, 33.  
 mien, use of, 167, Obs.  
 mieux, adv., 84.  
 mil, mille, 25 (a).  
 mi-parti, fem. and pl. of, 96.  
 moi, conj. pron., 30-1; disj. pr., 32; emphatic, 175.  
 moindre, 22; foll. by ne, 153 (b).  
 moins de, 82 (c), 84.  
 moitié . . . moitié, conj., 156 (b), 6, Obs.  
 mol, mou, 20 (f).  
 mon, ma, mes, 10-12.  
 months, names of, m., 99, A. 3.  
 montrer à, with infin., 142.

monsieur, 167 (d).  
 moods, use of, 108-13, 158-63.  
 more . . . more, the, 91.  
 motion, verbs of, with inf., 140 (c).  
 moudre, conjug., 79.  
 mountains, names of, m., 99, A. 4; with art, 116 (c).  
 mourir, conjug., 69.  
 mouvoir, conjug., 71.  
 moyennant, 138 (c).

## N

naître, conjug., 78.  
 nasal sounds, 3; 93, III.  
 ne . . . pas, point, etc., 58 (c).  
 ne, adv. of negat., 151-55, 153 (a); after comparat., 153 (b); 160 (b), Obs.  
 ne . . . que, only, 152 (b); foll. by subj., 162 (b).  
 n'est-ce pas, 85.  
 néanmoins, 91; 156 (b), 3.  
 necessity, verbs of, with subj., 160 (a).  
 negation, adv. of, 85, 151-55.  
 negative conjug., 58-9.  
 negative sentences, with subject, 160 (c), 162.  
 ni, ni . . . ne, 91; subject linked by, 104 (c); art. omitted after, 120 (b); in complex sentences, 154, 156 (b).  
 nominative, 6, 101-4.  
 nominative absolute, 128, Obs.  
 non, que non, 85.  
 non plus, adv. of negat., 152 (b).  
 non que, non pas que, with subj., 163 (c).  
 non seulement, conj., 156 (b), 3.  
 notre, 10-12; le nôtre, 33.  
 nouns, 4-13; not used in sing., 94 (a); of foreign origin, 94 (b); with diff. meaning in s. and pl., 94 (c); both masc. and fem., 97 (b); gender of, 97-100; used with def. art., 115-21; without art, 120.  
 nous, conj., pron., 30-1; disj. pron., 32; use of, 165.  
 nouveau-marié, nouveau-né, fem. and pl., 96.  
 nouveau, nouvel, 20 (f).  
 nuire, 75.  
 nul, 37 (b); 152 (b), 2.  
 numerals, 25.  
 nu-tête, agr. of, 122 (b), Obs. 1.

## O

object, place of, 177-8.  
 s'occuper, de or à, 143, 180.  
 œil, plur. of, 14.  
 offrir, conjug., 68.  
 on, pers. pron., 37 (c), 165.  
 optative clauses, subjunct. in, 113 (a).  
 or, conj., 156 (b), 5.

order of words, 106-7, 177-8.  
 ordinal numbers, 25, b, c.  
 orgue, gender of, 97 (a).  
 origin, expr. by de, 136 (a).  
 orthographic signs, 2.  
 ôser, with infin., 140 (c); neg. without pas, 155.  
 où, relat. pr., 35 (d).  
 où, relat. adv., 82 (a); use of, 174.  
 où que, 92 (b).  
 ou, conj., subject linked by, 104 (c).  
 ou . . . ou, conj., 156 (b), 2.  
 oui, adv., 85, 152 (a).  
 our, conjug., 67; with dat. of pers., 131; with infin., 140.  
 ouvrir, conjug., 68.

## P

paître, conj., 78.  
 pâques, gender of, 97 (a).  
 par, prep., 90; comp. with de, 136 (c), Obs. 2; denoting place, 133 (a), 1; time (b), manner (c), cause (d); with infin., 144.  
 paraître, conjug., 78.  
 par conséquent, conj., 156 (b), 5.  
 par-dessous, 90.  
 par-dessus, 82 (a), 90.  
 par ici, par là, 82 (a).  
 par où, 82 (a).  
 parce que, 92 (a).  
 parenthetical clauses, invers. in, 107 (b).  
 parmi, prep., 90; 138 (a), 1.  
 partant, conj., 156 (b), 5.  
 participer, constr., 180.  
 parts of body, names of, constr., 117, 119 (b), 130.  
 participles, 49; used participatively, 118, Obs. 3; as pred. compl., 126 (b), Obs.  
 participle perf., 147-50.  
 participle pres., 145-7.  
 partie . . . partie, conj., 156 (b), 6, Obs.  
 partitive article, 8, 9, 12, 118.  
 pas, adv., 85; with part. art., 118, Obs. 2; 151-3; omitted, 154-5.  
 pas un, ne, 37 (c); 152 (b), 2.  
 passé, agreement of, 148, Obs. 2.  
 passer, se, constr., 180.  
 passive voice with de or par, 136 (c), Obs. 1.  
 past tenses, use of, 110.  
 peindre, conjug., 74.  
 pendant, 138 (b).  
 pendant que, 92 (a).  
 penser à, 32.  
 perceiving, verbs of, with subj., 160 (c).  
 percevoir, conjug., 70.  
 personal pron., place of, 106-107; synt. of, 165; Fr. = poss. pron. in Engl., 167.

personne, indef. pron., 37 (c);  
 subj. of verb, 58 (c), *Obs.*;  
 58-9, 151-5.  
 persuader, constr., 180.  
 petit, comparison of, 22, 84.  
 peu, with *de*, 118.  
 peu de, adv., 82 (c); com-  
 parison, 84.  
 peu, le, agreement with, 150  
 (c), *Obs.*  
 peuple, agreement with, 103  
 (c).  
 peur que, *de*, 92 (b); with  
 subj., 163 (a).  
 peut-être, 92 (a).  
 phonetic laws, 81.  
 pire, adj., 22, 84.  
 pis, 84.  
 place, adv. of, 82 (a).  
 place of adjectives, 23, 123;  
 of pers. pron., 30-1.  
 place where, expr. by *à*, 134  
 (c); by other prep., 138  
 (c).  
 plaindre, conjug., 74.  
 plaître, conjug., 78.  
 pleuvoir, conjug., 71.  
 pluperfect, use of, 110 (f).  
 plural of nouns, 14-17, 94.  
 plural of pers. pr. for sing.,  
 165.  
 plus, 82 (c), 84; plus . . . plus,  
 91; plus . . . ne, 58-9, 152-  
 155.  
 plusieurs, 37 (b).  
 plutôt, with infin., 140 (f),  
*Obs.*  
 plutôt que *de*, 92 (d).  
 point . . . ne, 58-9; part.  
 art., 118, *Obs.* 2; 151-3;  
 omitted, 154-5.  
 point du tout, 85.  
 position of adjectives, 23,  
 123-4.  
 possess. adj., 10, 12, 167 (a).  
 poss. pron. used substan-  
 tively, 167 (a, d), *Obs.* 3.  
 possessor, dat. of, 130 (b).  
 pour, prep., with infin., 92  
 (a), 144 (b), 181; denoting  
 time, 138 (b), purpose (d).  
 pour peu que, 92 (b), 163 (c).  
 pour que, with subj., 163 (a).  
 pourquoi, with infin., 140 (f),  
*Obs.*  
 pourvoir, conjug., 72, 180.  
 pourvu que, 92 (b), 163 (c).  
 pouvoir, conjug., 71; with  
 infin., 140 (c); negat. with-  
 out *pas*, 155.  
 predicates, different kinds of,  
 101; agreement of, 102-5;  
 inversion of, 106-7.  
 predicative relation, 101-13.  
 premier-né, premier-venu,  
 fem. and pl., 96.  
 premier, le, foll. by subj.,  
 162 (b).  
 prendre, conjug., 77; constr.,  
 180.  
 prendre garde, with *ne*, 160  
 (b), *Obs.* 2.

prepositions, 87-90; synt. of,  
 129-38.  
 près, 90; près *de*, 138 (a) 1.  
 present indic., 40, 108-9;  
 subj., 45.  
 prétendre, constr., 180.  
 preterite, conjug. of, 42; use  
 of, 110.  
 prevention, verbs of, with  
 subj., 160 (a).  
 price, names of, with def. art.,  
 119 (b).  
 principal parts of verbs, 50.  
 proche, prep., 90.  
 pronouns, conjunct pers., 29-  
 31, 165-75; disjunct pers.,  
 32, 165-6, 175; possessive,  
 33, 167; demonstr., 34, 168;  
 relative, 35, 172-3; inter-  
 rog., 36, 172-3; indefinite,  
 37.  
 pronunciation, 93.  
 proper nouns, pl. of, 15, 117;  
 with def. art., 116 (b).  
 proportional numbers, 25 (f).  
 puisque, 92 (a).  
 purpose, foll. by indic. or  
 subj., 162 (b), 163.

## Q

quality, gen. of, 137 (c), *Obs.*  
 quand même, 92 (a).  
 quantity, adv. of, 82 (c).  
 que, conj., 92 (a); for *si*, 92  
 (c), 163; with infin., 140 (f),  
*Obs.*; before *oui*, *non*, *si*,  
 152 (a); redundant, 168 (3),  
 176 (c); standing for other  
 conj., 176.  
 que, pron., 35 (a, c), 36.  
 que, relat. adv., use of, 174.  
 que . . . ne, with subj., 163  
 (b).  
 que voici, use of, 167 (d), *Obs.*  
 quel? pron., 36 (b).  
 quelconque, 37 (a).  
 quelqu'un, 37 (c).  
 quel que, quelque, 37 (a);  
 with subj., 163 (c).  
 quelque chose, with part.  
 art., 118, *Obs.* 3.  
 querir, conjug., 69.  
 qui, declined, 35 (a, c), 36.  
 qui est-ce qui, 36 (a).  
 qui que ce soit, 37 (c), 154.  
 qui . . . ne, but 153 (a), *Obs.*  
 quiconque, 37 (c).  
 quinqué, 25 (c).  
 quoi, relat. pron., 35 (e);  
 with part. art., 118, *Obs.* 3;  
 with infin., 140 (f), *Obs.*,  
 172.  
 quoi que, 37 (c), 163 (c).  
 quoi que ce soit, 92 (b).  
 quoique, conj., 92 (b); with  
 subj., 163 (c).

## R

raillerie, entendre, 120. *Obs.*  
 2.

recevoir, conjug., 70.  
 redoubler *de*, 136 (e).  
 reflexive verbs, 63.  
 relat. clause = poss. pron.  
 167 (d).  
 relative pron., 35, 172-4.  
 repentir, *se*, conj., 67.  
 repetition of def. art. 121, A.;  
 of pronouns, 175.  
 répondre, constr., 180.  
 résoudre, conjug., 79.  
 ressentir, constr., 180.  
 ressortir, conjug., 67.  
 rester, placed first, 107, *Obs.*  
 restreindre, conjug., 74.  
 result, foll. by indic. or conj.,  
 162 (i), 163.  
 réver, constr., 180.  
 rien, 37 (c); 58 (c), *Obs.*; 59;  
 with part. art., 118, *Obs.* 3;  
 151-5.  
 rire, conjug., 77.

## S

saillir, conjug., 68.  
 sans, 91; with infinit., 92 (d),  
 138 (c), 144 (b).  
 sans que, 92 (b); with subj.,  
 163 (a).  
 savoir, conjug., 71; with in-  
 fin., 140 (c); used neg. with  
 out *pas*, 155.  
 saying, verbs of, with subj.,  
 160 (c).  
 seasons, names of, m. 99, A. 3.  
 selon, 92 (a), 138 (d).  
 sentir, conj., 67; with cogn.  
 acc., 116 (f), *Obs.*  
 seoir, conjug., 73.  
 sequence of tenses, 184.  
 servir, conjug., 67; with *de*,  
 136 (c), 1, *Obs.*; 180.  
 seul, le, foll. by subj., 162 (b).  
 seulement, non, 91.  
 si, adv. of affirm., 85, 152 (a).  
 si, conj., 92 (a); impf. after,  
 110; = whether, fut. or  
 cond. after, 111 (b), *Obs.* 1.  
 sien, le, 33.  
 si tant est que, with subj., 163  
 (c).  
 soi, use of, 166.  
 soit . . . soit, art. omitted  
 after, 120 (b).  
 soit que, with subj., 163 (c).  
 son, sa, ses, 10-12.  
 songer *à*, constr. 32 (7), 180.  
 sonner, constr., 180.  
 sorte que, *de* (en), with subj.,  
 163 (a).  
 sortir, conj., 67.  
 souffrir, conjug., 68.  
 sounds, 3.  
 sourd-muet, fem. and pl., 96.  
 sourdre, conjug., 80.  
 sous, 90; denoting time, 138  
 (b), respect (d).  
 subject, recapitulated, 104  
 (b); different kinds of, 101;  
 inversion of, 106-7; simple,  
 103; compos., 104.

- subjunctive in principal clauses, 113; in dependent clauses, 158-64.  
 subordinate conjunctions, 92.  
 substantives, see nouns.  
 substantive clauses, subj. in, 160-61.  
 suffire, conjug., 77.  
 suivant, prep., 138 (*d*).  
 suivre, conjug., 76; with *de*, 136 (*c*), *Obs.* 1.  
 superlative, formation of, 21-22; foll. by subj., 162 (*b*).  
 supine in Lat. = French infinit., 139.  
 supposé, agreement of, 148, *Obs.* 2.  
 supposé que, with subj., 163 (*c*).  
 sur, prep., 90; 138 (*a*), 1; 138 (*c*).  
 surseoir, conjug., 73.  
 survenir, placed first, 107, *Obs.*  
 synonymous subjects, agreement with, 104 (*d*).
- T**
- taire, conjug., 78.  
 tant (*de*), 82 (*c*), 118; inversion after, 107 (*c*).  
 tant . . . que, 91, 92 (*a*).  
 tant . . . que, art. omitted after, 120 (*b*).  
 tantôt . . . tantôt, 91; 156 (*b*), 6.  
 tarder, with *de* or *à*, 143.  
 tâter, constr., 180.  
 tel, 37 (*b*); invers. after, 107 (*c*).  
 tenir, conjug., 69; constr., 180-3.  
 tenses, use of, 108-18.  
 termination ruling gender, 100.  
 thinking, verbs of, with subj., 160 (*c*).
- tien, *le*, 33, 167, *Obs.*  
 time, adv. of, 82 (*b*); time when, expr. by *à*, 134 (*b*); by *de*, 137.  
 toi, use of, conj. pron., 30-31; disj. pron., 32, 165.  
 ton, *ta*, *tes*, 10-12.  
 toucher, constr., 180.  
 toujours, conj., 92 (*a*); invers. after, 107 (*a*).  
 tous, agreeing with *gens*, 97 (*a*).  
 tout, 37 (*b*).  
 tout-à-coup, invers. after, 107 (*c*).  
 tout au plus, invers. after, 107 (*a*).  
 tout ce qui, with part. art., 118, *Obs.* 3.  
 toutefois, conj., 156 (*b*) 3.  
 tout-puissant, fem. and pl. of, 96.  
 towns, names of, with art., 116 (*e*).  
 traire, conjug., 75.  
 transitive verbs, with acc., 126; with dat., 130-1.  
 travers (*au*), 90; 138 (*a*), 1.  
 trees, names of, m. 98, A, 2.  
 treuve, archaic, 81 (*e*).  
 trop *de*, 82 (*c*), 118.  
*tu*, use of, 165 (*b*).
- U**
- uncertainty, verbs of, with subj., 160 (*c*).  
 unique, *l'*, foll. by subj., 162 (*b*).  
 user, constr., 180.
- V**
- vain, *en*, vainement, invers. after, 107 (*a*).  
 vaincre, conjug., 76.  
 valoir, conjug., 72.  
 veiller, constr., 180.  
 venir, conjug., 69; placed first, 107, *Obs.*; with *de* or *à*, 143.  
 venir *à*, constr., 32 (*7*).  
 verbs, classification of, 38-39; agreement of, 102-5; invers. of, 106-7; with different constructions, 180; requiring no prep. before foll. infin., 181; requiring *de* before foll. infin., 182; requiring *à* before foll. infin., 183.  
 verbal adjective = participle, 145-50.  
 verbal stems, gender of, 99, A.  
 verbal phrases, without art., 120 (*a*).  
 vers, 90; 138 (*a*, *b*).  
 vêtir, conjug., 67.  
 vieil, vieux, 20 (*f*).  
 vite, adv., 83.  
 vivre, conjug., 79.  
 voici, prep., 90; constr. of, 126 (*a*), *Obs.* 3.  
 voilà, 90; construct. of, 126 (*a*), *Obs.* 3.  
 voir, conjug., 72; with dat. of pers., 131; with infin., 140.  
 votre, 10-12; *le vôtre*, 33.  
 vouloir, conjug., 72; with infin., 140 (*c*); with subj., 160 (*a*).  
 vowels, 3; pronunciation of, 93, I.  
*vu*, agreement of, 148, *Obs.* 2.
- W**
- weight, names, with def. art., 119 (*b*).  
 winds, gender of, names of, m., 99, A, 3.  
 wishing, verbs of, with subj., 160 (*a*).
- Y**
- y*, 27, 30-31.  
*y* avoir, 64.

# INDEX II.

## ENGLISH WORDS AND PHRASES

With reference to the Sections in which they occur.

### A

*a, an*, indef. art., 7-8; **un, une**, 12, 13, 119.  
*a*, distributive, **par**, 90; 138 (b).  
*able*, to be, 144, VI.  
*about*, to express approximation, 25 (h); *about it*, 28 (2); **de**, 87 (k); **vers**, 90; *to be*, 111 (b), Obs. 3; 136 (e), 2.  
*above*, ad., 82 (a), 90.  
*according*, as, 92 (a); *-to*, 138 (d).  
*accordingly*, adv. conj., 107 (a).  
*accustom* to, 32 (7).  
*ache, tooth-*, etc., 134 (c).  
*across*, 138 (a).  
*admittance*, no, 113 (A.)  
*affect*, to, 119 (b), 1.  
*afraid*, to be, 112 (a), 2; 160, I. (b), Obs.  
*after*, prep., 90; adv. conj., 92 (d); 110 (f) Obs.; 138 (a, b, d).  
*against*, 90, 138 (a).  
*ago*, 136 (a), 2.  
*all*, 37 (b).  
*all the same*, to be, 132, 2.  
*allow* to, to, 126 (c) Obs.; 144, VI.; 150 (a); 160, I. (a).  
*already*, 82 (b); with *invers.*, 107 (c).  
*although*, 92 (b).  
*among*, 90, 138 (a).  
*another*, 37 (b), 124 (d).  
*any*, partitive, 8, 12; pron., **en**, 28 (4), 37 (a), 118; **de**, 87 (d).  
*anybody, any one*, 37 (c).  
*anybody, not*, 58.  
*anyhow*, adv. conj., 107 (a), 150 (b).  
*anything*, 37 (c); *-like*, 118, Obs. 3.  
*apology, to make an*, 119 (a), Obs.  
*appeal*, to, 32 (7).  
*appear*, to, 107 (c), Obs.  
*appearance*, 124 (d).  
*apply* to, 113 (A.)  
*approve of*, to, 160, I. (a), 161.  
*are there*, 28 (4).  
*arrive* to, conjug., 61.  
*as a, en*, 119 (c), 2.  
*as . . . as*, adv., 21, 82 (d); conj. 92 (a), 146.  
*as far as*, 90, 113 (b), 138 (a), 176 (b).  
*as long as*, 111 (a).

*as many, as much*, 82 (c).  
*as soon as*, 110 (f), Obs.; 111 (a).  
*as you like it*, 111 (b).  
*as for me*, 136 (b).  
*as*, conj. repeated, 176 (b).  
*ask*, to, 126 (c), 130 (c), 143 (a).  
*astonished, to be*, 160, I. (b).  
*at, chez*, 32 (6); **de**, 88 (b, e); **en**, 89 (a); **à**, 138.  
*at any rate*, 92 (a).  
*at it*, relat. adv., **y**, 27; 134 (a, b); 136 (g).  
*at least*, 92 (a).  
*at one time—another*, 156 (b), 6.  
*at the house of (home)*, construed, 32 (6), 138.  
*at which*, 35 (e).  
*avoid*, to, 153 (a).

### B

*bad*, 22.  
*bareheaded, barefooted*, 122 (a).  
*be*, to, aux. v., 40-1; conjug., 53-4, 61-2, 64 (a).  
*be* to, to, 110 (3), Obs. 1; 111 (b), Obs. 4.  
*be it so*, 113 (a); *to be for*, 133.  
*because*, 92 (a), 176 (b).  
*beckon*, to, 136 (c).  
*become*, to, 119 (c), 3.  
*before*, adv., 82 (a).  
*before*, conj., 92 (b, d), 176 (b).  
*before*, prep., 90; 138 (a, b).  
*behind*, adv., 82 (a), 90, 138 (a).  
*believe to be*, to, 119 (c), 3; 126 (b); 170, I. (c), 2.  
*below*, adv., 82 (a); prep., 90, 138 (a).  
*beneath*, 90, 138 (a).  
*besides*, adv.-conj., 107 (a); conj., 156 (b), 1.  
*best, better*, adj., 22; adv., 84.  
*between*, 90, 138 (a, b).  
*beyond*, 90.  
*born a . . . to be*, 119 (c), 2.  
*both*, 37 (b); 91; — . . . and, 120 (b), 1.  
*broad*, construed, 25 (d).  
*burning, to smell of*, 116 (f), Obs.  
*but*, 156 (b), 3; *-even*, 156 (b), 3. *but = who not*, 162 (a).  
*by, de*, 87 (e); **de**, or **par**, 136 (c) Obs. 1; 138; **par**, with infin., 144 (a); with verb in -ing, = Fr. **en**, with pres. part., 146, III.  
*by the pound, à*, 134 (a), Obs.  
*by-the-bye*, 156 (b), 3, Obs.

### C

*call, to, a name*, 136 (c), 1, Obs.  
*can*, 140 (c, d); *cannot*, 155; *can it be*, 112 (a), 2.  
*capable*, 34.  
*case, in*, conj., 92 (b).  
*cause a thing to be done, to*, 140 (f), 150 (b).  
*certain*, 124 (c).  
*civil*, 124 (c).  
*clear*, 124 (c).  
*cognisable, to be*, 136 (j).  
*cold*, 117 (b).  
*come, to*, 32, 7; 107 (c) Obs.; *-from*, 117, A.; 136 (j); *to -and*, 140 (c).  
*common with, in*, 118, Obs. 3.  
*commonest*, 22, Obs. 5.  
*concerned*, to be, 64 (b).  
*concerning*, prep., 138 (d).  
*conformable to*, 132, 1.  
*consent*, to, 160, I. (a), Obs.  
*consequently*, adv.-conj., 92 (a), 107 (a); 156 (b), 5.  
*contrary to*, 90.  
*course of, in the*, 138 (b).  
*credited with, to be*, 140 (b).

### D

*deaf ear, to turn*, 119 (b), 1, Obs.  
*dear*, 124 (c).  
*deep*, construed, 25 (d).  
*deference to*, 113 (a).  
*deficient in*, to be, 143 (a).  
*deny*, to, 160, I. (c).  
*deserving, to be*, 142 (b), 1; 160, I. (b).  
*difficult, to do*, 143 (b), 2.  
*dine out*, to, 89 (a).  
*do*, aux. v., 57-59.  
*done, a thing to be*, 142 (b), 1.  
*doubt*, to, 160, I. (c).  
*downright*, 124 (c).  
*during*, 138 (b).  
*duty, to be one's*, 136 (j); *to think it one's*, 144, VI.

### E

*each*, 37 (a and c); *each other*, 37 (b); distributive, 117 (b), 2; 138 (b).  
*early*, 137 (a).  
*eating and drinking*, 116 (c).  
*either*, 37 (b), 91; . . . or, 151 (b), 2.  
*enclosed*, 122 (b).  
*enough, to have*, 140 (f), Obs. 6.

*enter*, to, 107 (c), Obs.  
*essentially*, 166, Obs.  
*even if*, 92 (a); 112 (b), Obs.  
*even then*, 107 (a).  
*events*, at all, 107 (a).  
*ever*, 152 (b); *ever so little*, 92 (b).  
*every*, 37 (a and b); rendered by def. art., 116 (d); *everybody*, *every one*, 37 (b and c).  
*everything*, 120 (b).  
*expect*, to, 130 (c); 176, Obs. 2.

## F

*fail*, in, to, 143 (a).  
*fair*, to be, 161.  
*fancy*, *the*, takes, 132, 1.  
*far*, to be, 64.  
*fashion*, in the, 134 (a).  
*fast*, to stick, 83, Obs. 3.  
*fear*, to, 153 (a); 160, I. (b), Obs. 1.  
*fellows*, *you*, 117 (b), Obs.  
*few*, a, 37 (c).  
*fewer*, adv., 82 (c); 104 (a), Obs.  
*find fault with*, to, 142 (a).  
*fit to*, a, 142 (b), 3, Obs.  
*-fold*, 25 (f).  
*follow*, to, 107 (c), Obs.  
*fond of*, to be, 142 (a).  
*foot*, on, 134 (a).  
*for*, prep., **de**, 87 (c); **à**, 88 (d); adv.-conj., 163 (a); referring to time, 92 (a); **de**, 136 (f, h); **depuis**, **pour**, 138 (b, d); **not**, 153 (a); **-it**, 28 (5).  
*for all that*, 156 (b), 3.  
*for*, conj., 156 (b), 4.  
*for want of*, 92 (d).  
*forbearance is not acquittance*, 168 (b).  
*forbid*, God, 113 (a).  
*formerly*, 82 (b).  
*fortnight*, 153 (a).  
*from*, **de**, 87 (a), 138 (a); **à**, 88 (c); 130 (b); **sur**, **depuis**, 90; after verbs of taking, **à**, 130 (c), 136 (a-j).  
*from beyond*, 138 (a), 2.  
*from it*, from there, relat. adv., **en**, 28 (1).  
*from the top of*, 90.  
*front of*, in, 90.

## G

*gait*, by his, 134 (a).  
*genius*, of, 124 (d).  
*gentleman*, 167 (d), Obs.  
*get a thing done*, to, 140 (e).  
*get rich*, to, 120 (a), 5.  
*give credit for*, to, 130 (b).  
*glad*, to be, 141 (c); 160, I. (b).  
*go to*, to, 117 (A.); *-away*, 66.  
*good*, 22; *-for*, to be, 132, 1.  
*grant*, 113 (a).  
*gratifying*, to be, 143 (b), 1.

## H

*half*, 25 (e), 122 (b); *half* . . . *half* . . . , 156 (b), 6, Obs.  
*happen*, to, 64 (b), 143 (a).

*hard*, to hit, 83, Obs. 3.  
*hard to*, to be, 142 (b), 2.  
*hardly*, conj., 92 (a); 107 (a); 110 (f), Obs.; 152 (b).  
*hardly ever*, 58.  
*hasten*, to, 32 (7).  
*have*, to, conjug., 51-2, 56; **-to**, 110, 3; **-done**, 113 (A.); **-a thing done**, to, 142 (f); **to**-, 142 (a).  
*he*, subj., 26; 34 (a), 2; **-who**, 34 (d); **-alone**, **lui**, 32; **predic.**, 29, 168 (a), 171.  
*hear*, to, 131, 140 (f); with past part., 150 (a).  
*hence*, relat. adv., **en**, 28 (1); with inversion, 107 (c).  
*her*, pers. pron. 26, 30; with prep., 32.  
*her*, possess. pr., 10, 117 (a, b), 130 (b).  
*here*, with inversion, 107 (c); **-is** (are), 90; **-I am**, etc., 126 (a), Obs. 4; 140 (e).  
*hers*, 33.  
*herself*, 63.  
*high*, construed, 25 (d).  
*him*, 26, 30; with prep., 32.  
*himself*, 63, 166.  
*his*, poss. pron., 10, 33, 117 (a, b), 130 (b), 167 (a, d).  
*home* (at), construed, 32 (6), 166.  
*honoured*, to be, conjug., 62.  
*hope*, to, 144, VI.  
*house of*, at the, 32 (6).  
*how?* 82 (d); *how is it that?* 161.  
*how long?* 64; *how many*, *how much?* 82 (c).

## I

*I*, with a verb, **je**, 36; standing alone, or after prep., **moi**, 52.  
*if*, 92 (a); rendered by **que**, 92 (c); repeated, 176 (b); with fut. and condit., 111 (b), Obs. 1; **-I live**, 146 (d).  
*in*, after superl., 22, Obs. 7;  
**de**, 87 (i), 136 (c, f), 137 (b); **à**, 88 (b), 138; **dans**, **en**, 89.  
*in*, with names of countries, 117 (A.); with verb in **-ing** = **Fr.** **à** with infin., 142 (b), 2; 142 (b), 3; 143 (b).  
*indebted for*, to be, 136 (h).  
*indifferent*, 124 (c).  
*in order that*, 92 (b), 163 (a).  
*in order to*, 92 (c).  
**-ing**, verbal form in, 40, 41, 49, 55.  
*inside*, 82 (a), 89 (b).  
*insist*, to, 45; 160, I. (a).  
*instead of*, to stand, 136 (e) 1, Obs.  
*intend*, to, 141 (b).  
*into*, 138.  
*it*, subj., 26; obj., 26, 30; with prep., 27-8, 30-1;

rendered by **ce**, 34 (a and b), 103, 168 (a); **-is said**, 37 (c).  
*its*, 167 (c).  
*itself*, 63, 166.

## J

*joke to*, *know how to*, 121 Obs. 2.  
*just* (as), 91; *to have*-, 141 (c), 143 (a).

## K

*keep*, doing something, to, 110 (c, d), Obs. 2.  
*know how to*, to, 121, Obs. 2; **-to be**, 127.  
*known to have*, to be, 130 (b).

## L

*lady*, young lady, 167 (c), Obs.  
*last*, 124 (d).  
*late*, adj., **feu**, 122 (b).  
*least*, less, adv., 84.  
*least*, at, adv. conj., 107 (a).  
*leave for*, to, 117 (A.).  
*left*, 22, Obs. 1.  
*less*, adv., 21, 22, 82 (c).  
*lest*, conj., 92 (b, d), 163, (a), 176 (b).  
*let*, aux. verb, 47, 111 (b), 113 (a), 131; 142 (b), 1.  
*life and death*, in, 134 (c), Obs. 3.  
*lifetime*, in one's, 137 (a).  
*like*, prep., 138 (d).  
*like*, as **I**, 134 (a), Obs.  
*little*, adv., 82 (c); adj. and adv., comparis. of, 84; with proper nouns, 116 (c).  
*long*, construed, 25 (d), 136 (j); **to be**-, 110 (b); *longer*, 22, Obs. 1.  
*long time*, not for a, 110 (e).  
*long to*, to, 143 (a).  
*look*, to have a-, 122 (b), Obs.; 124 (d).  
*look to*, 146 (b); *-for*, 126 (a), Obs. 3.  
*lose no time*, to, 136 (i).  
*loud*, to speak, 83, Obs. 3.  
*low*, to speak, 83, Obs. 3.

## M

*make*, to, = to appoint, 126 (b); = to cause, 131.  
*make the most of*, to, 140 (c).  
*make one's self understood*, to, 140 (f).  
*make up for*, to, 136 (h).  
*manner*, in this, 117 (b), Obs.  
*many*, 9, 37 (a), 82 (c); **-a one**, 37 (b).  
*matter*, to, 161.  
*may*, aux. v., 55-56, 113 (a), 162 (a); **it -be**, 161.  
*may be*, adv. conj., 107 (a).  
*me*, obj. pron., **me**, 26, 30; with prep., **moi**, 32.  
*mean*, 124 (d).  
*meanwhile*, 156 (b), 3, Obs.

meet with, to, 126 (a), Obs. 3.  
 methinks, 168 (a).  
 might, aux. v., 55-6.  
 mind for, to have a, 113 (a).  
 mind, to tell one's, 146, 111.  
 mine, rendered by pers. pr.,  
 32 (6), 33, 167 (a).  
 miss, = young lady, 107 (c), Obs.  
 mistaken in, to be, 136 (e), 1.  
 more (so), 22, Obs. 3; *the more*,  
 22, Obs. 4.  
 more, most, adv., 84.  
 most, at, 107 (a).  
 Mr., Mrs., 167 (c), Obs.  
 much, 9, 82 (c); compar. of, 84.  
 much more, adv. conj., 107 (a).  
 must, 64, 72, 127, 161.  
 must (have), 64 (b); 111 (b),  
 Obs. 5.  
 must know, 111 (b), Obs. 2.  
 my, 10, 12, 117 (a, b), 130 (b),  
 167.  
 myself, 32 (4), 63.

## N

naï, 156 (b), 3.  
 near, 90; 136 (b), Obs. 2; 138  
 (a).  
 necessary, to be, 45, 46, 51, 53,  
 64 (b).  
 neither, 37 (b), 91; agreement  
 with nouns linked by, 104  
 (c); nor, 154, 156 (b).  
 never, 58, 152 (6); without  
 art., 120 (b), 1.  
 nevertheless, 91; 156 (b), 3; 163  
 (b), 2; 176 (b).  
 new, 124 (d).  
 news, 118, Obs. 3.  
 next day, 128.  
 nice, to smell-, 83, Obs. 3.  
 no, adv., 9; indef. pr., 37 (b).  
 no . . . at all, 82 (c), 118 (b).  
 nobody, no one, 37 (c), 58, 152  
 (b).  
 no go, 152 (b).  
 no longer, 22, Obs. 1; 58.  
 no more, 58.  
 no sooner, 110 (f), Obs.  
 none, 22, Obs. 1; 37 (b), 152 (b).  
 nonsense, to be, 141 (a).  
 nor . . . either, 152 (b); *nor*  
*even*, 156 (b).  
 not, 57-9, 85; -either, 58; -less,  
 21; -now, 22, Obs. 1; -only,  
 91; 156 (b), 3; -that, 113 (b).  
 nothing, 37 (c), 58, 90, 154;  
 -good, 118, Obs. 3.  
 now, 82 (b); -then, 156 (b), 5;  
 -there is (are), 90, 140 (e).  
 nowhere, 37 (b).

## O

obliged, to be, 161.  
 occur to, 107 (c), Obs.  
 of, 6-7, 9-10; = *en*, 28; of +  
 pers. pron., 30-31, 82, 87 (a);  
 with names of countries,  
 117, A.; gen. of possess.  
 and qualit., 121; denoting

material, etc., 136; with  
 verb in -ing = Fr. infin.  
 141 (c).  
 off, 136 (d).  
 on, *de*, 87 (h); *à*, 88 (e); *en*,  
 39; *sur*, 90; rendered by  
 def. art., 116 (d); *to feed*-,  
 136 (d); -and from, 138  
 (a, b); -the way, 146 (e);  
 -that account, 28 (5).  
 once, 25 (g).  
 one, numeral, 25; pron. 28  
 (4); *the*-, 34 (d), 170.  
 one thing, and another, to be,  
 140 (a).  
 one's self, 63, 166.  
 only, 58; adv.-conj., 92 (a);  
 with subj., 162 (a).  
 opinion, in the, 90.  
 or, agreement with nouns  
 linked by-, 104 (c); co-ord.  
 conj., 91, 156.  
 order a thing to be done, to,  
 150 (b).  
 other, 37 (b); others, 37 (c).  
 our, 10, 117 (a, b), 130 (b).  
 ours, 33.  
 ourselves, 63.  
 out of season, 137 (b), Obs.  
 outside, 82 (a); 138 (a).  
 out, to be, 82 (a); out of, 138 (d).  
 over, 82 (a), 90.  
 own, of one's-, 124 (c), 133, 1,  
 166, 167 (a, c).  
 own, to, 136 (e), 2.

## P

partly . . . partly, 156 (b), 6,  
 Obs.  
 people, agreement with, 103  
 (c).  
 perhaps, 92 (a); adv.-conj.,  
 107 (a).  
 pity, to be a-, 161.  
 plainly, to speak-, 83, Obs. 3.  
 play at, to, 134 (a); -on, 136 (c).  
 please, 111 (b), Obs. 2.  
 possession is nine points of the  
 law, 120 (b), 2.  
 pray! 141 (b).  
 present at, 89 (b).  
 presume, to, 112 (a), 2.  
 pretend, to, 116 (f), Obs.  
 prevail, to, 150 (d).  
 prevent, to, 160, I. (a).  
 probably, rendered by fut.  
 past., 111 b, Obs. 5.  
 provided, conj., 92 (b).  
 purpose, to do on-, 83, Obs. 3.  
 put to death, to, 120 (a), 5.

## Q

question, to be the, 64 (b).

## R

rank, of, 124 (d).  
 rate, at any, 107 (a).  
 rather, 82 (d); -than, 92 (d).  
 remain, to, 107 (c), Obs.  
 remember, to, 141 (c).

request, to, 45.  
 require, to, 150 (d); 160, I. (a).  
 resemble, to, 132.  
 rid of, to get, 136 (b).  
 ride to, 134 (a).  
 right, to guess (*hit*-), 83, Obs. 3.  
 rude, 124 (c).

## S

said to, is, 127, 140 (e), Obs.  
 sake of, for the, 138 (d).  
 same, 37 (a).  
 satisfaction, to demand, 121,  
 Obs. 2.  
 scarcely, adv. conj., 107 (a).  
 scarcity, the, 104 (a), Obs.  
 score, 25 (h).  
 see, to, 72, 140 (e); to-a thing  
 done, 140 (f), 150 (a); to-  
 that, 160, I. (b), Obs. 2.  
 seem, to, 122 (b), Obs.  
 send for, to, 126 (a), Obs. 3;  
 140 (c).  
 several, 37 (b), 124 (c).  
 shake hands with, to, 130 (b).  
 shall, aux. v., future, 43, 51,  
 53, 55, 56; imperat., 111 (b),  
 Obs. 2.  
 she, subj., 26; predic., 29 (1),  
 168 (a); with prep., 32;  
 -who, 34 (d).  
 shine, to, 64 (a).  
 short, shorter, 22, 124 (d).  
 should, aux. v., = condit., 44,  
 45, 46, 112; = subjunct.,  
 45-6, 160 (b), 161.  
 show in, to, 140 (e).  
 sides, from (on) all, etc., 137  
 (c).  
 signify, to, 37 (c).  
 since, prep., 90, 138 (b); conj.,  
 92 (a), 176 (b).  
 sit down to table, to, 140 (c).  
 slightest, 22.  
 slip, there is many a, etc., 126  
 (a), Obs. 1.  
 smack of, to, 126 (a), Obs. 2.  
 smell of, to, 126 (a), Obs. 2.  
 so, pron.-adv., 29 (2); more-  
 22, Obs. 3; and-, 37 (b); I  
 think-, 85.  
 so far from, 92 (d), 161.  
 so much, with inversion, 107  
 (c).  
 so that, conj., 92 (c), 163 (a),  
 176 (b); -as to, conj., 92 (d).  
 some, partitive, 8, 12, 87 (d),  
 119 (a); pron., *en*, 28 (4),  
 30-1, 37 (a), 118.  
 some one, 37 (c).  
 sometimes . . . another, 91; 156  
 (b), 6.  
 somewhat, 118, Obs. 3.  
 soon, with inversion, 107 (c).  
 sorry, to be, 141 (b).  
 spite of, in, 92 (b), 138 (d).  
 stake, to be at, 64 (b), 136 (e).  
 straight, to stand-, 83, Obs. 3.  
 strike to = to occur, 130 (b).  
 strong, construed, 25 (d), 136  
 (c).

subject, to *that*, 82 (a).  
*such*, 37 (b), 169 (b); -*men as*,  
 117 (b), *Obs.*  
*suddenly*, with *invers.*, 107 (c).  
*suffer to be*, to, 140 (f).  
*sundry*, 124 (c).  
*surprised*, to *be*, 45, 46.  
*suspect*, to, 160, I. (c).  
*swim to*, to, 134 (a).

## T

*take from*, to, 130 (c).  
*talk sense*, to, 120 (a).  
*taller*, construed, 25 (d).  
*teach*, to, 126 (c), 142 (a).  
*than*, adv., 21; *de*, 136 (b),  
*Obs.* 2.  
*that*, demonstr. adj., 11, 22.  
*that*, demonstr. pr., *ce*, 34 (a);  
*cela*, 34 (b); -*one*, 34 (c); 168  
 (a), 170; -*which*, 34 (d); -*is*,  
*voilà*, 90; -*way*, 82 (a), 90.  
*that*, relat. pr., 35, 168, 169;  
 -*one*, 170.  
*the*, def. art., 5-6, 12; omitted,  
 120; used, 121.  
*the fewer*, 22, *Obs.* 4.  
*the . . . the*, foll. by a compar.,  
 22, *Obs.* 4.  
*the more . . . the more*, 91.  
*the one*, 34 (d), 170.  
*thee*, obj., 26, 30; compl., 32;  
*thee and thou*, 165.  
*their*, 10, 117 (a, b), 130 (b).  
*theirs*, 33.  
*them*, obj., 26, 30; compl., 3.  
*themselves*, 63.  
*there*, relat. adv., *y*, 27, 28;  
 interj., 90; demonstr., 126  
 (a), *Obs.* 4.  
*there is (are)*, 37 (c), 64, 90.  
*there must have been*, 64.  
*therefore*, 156 (b), 5.  
*thereupon*, with inversion, 107  
 (e).  
*these*, demonstr. adj. 11; de-  
 monstr. pr., 34 (a, b); -*ones*,  
 34 (c), 168 (a).  
*they*, subj. of a verb, *ils*, 26;  
 without verbs, 26; -*who*,  
 34 (d), 168 (a).  
*thine*, 33.  
*think of*, to, 32 (7); with infin.  
 in Fr., 140 (d); with subj.,  
 160, I. (c) 2.  
*think it one's duty to*, 144, VI.  
*this*, adj., 11, 22; pron., *ce*,  
 34 (a); *ceci*, 34 (b); *this one*,  
 34 (c); 167 (c), *Obs.* 2; 168  
 (a), 171.  
*this is what*, 90.  
*thither*, relat. adv., *y*, 27.  
*those*, demonstr. adj., 11; pr.,  
 34 (a and b).  
*those who*, 34 (d), 168 (a).

*thou*, subj. of a verb, 26; alone  
 or after prep., 32.  
*though*, 92 (a, b); 113, A.; 146,  
 III. (c).  
*thrice*, 25 (g).  
*through*, 90, 138 (a).  
*thus*, with inversion, 107 (c).  
*thy*, 10, 117 (a, b), 130 (b).  
*thysself*, 63.  
*till I see you again*, 134 (c),  
*Obs.* 3.  
*time to time*, from, 137 (a).  
*times*, term of multiplic., 25 (g).  
*tire of*, to, 141 (c).  
*to*, 6-7, 10, 87 (j), 88 (a); de-  
 noting feeling, 90; place,  
 138; after verbs of motion,  
 not sign of dat., 32 (7); 134  
 (c), *Obs.* 2; with names of  
 countries, 134 (c), *Obs.* 1;  
 with Infin., 139-144; to a T,  
 142 (b), 3.  
*to + pers. pron.*, place of, 27,  
 30-1, 32.  
*to-day is . . .*, 82 (b); -*week*,  
 89 (a).  
*to-morrow*, 82 (b).  
*told*, to *be*, 37 (c).  
*too much*, -*many*, 9, 82 (c).  
*towards*, 90, 138.  
*trouble*, to *take the*, 143 (b), 1.  
*true*, 174 (c).  
*turn out*, to, 82 (a).  
*twice*, 25 (g).

## U

*under, underneath*, adv., 82  
 (a), 90; 138 (a, b).  
*unless*, 92 (b, d).  
*until*, conj., 92 (b).  
*up to*, 138 (a).  
*upon*, 90, 138.  
*upwards of*, 90.  
*us*, obj. pers. pron., *nous*, 26,  
 30; with prep., *nous*, 32.  
*used, to have (be)*, 51, 53; 110  
 (c, d), *Obs.* 2 (f).

## V

*vain in, vanity*, 107 (a).  
*vie with*, to, 136 (e), 1.

## W

*wait for*, to, 126 (a), *Obs.* 3.  
*walk*, to, 134 (a).  
*want*, to, 48, 64 (b); -*a great*  
*deal*, 136 (i); to *be -ed*, 37 (c).  
*want of*, the, 150 (c).  
*wantonly*, 137 (b).  
*warm*, 117 (b).  
*wash one's self*, to, 63.  
*way (which)*, that, 82 (a); 90;  
*this, that-*, 137 (c).  
*we*, 26; emphatic, 37 (b).

*week*, 136 (a), 2.  
*well*, compar. of, 84; to *reason*  
 (aim), 83, *Obs.* 3; to *let-*  
*alone*, 116 (c); -*done*, 133, 1.  
*well-nigh*, to *be*, 161.  
*what*, relat. pr., 35 (e); inter-  
 rog. pr., 36 (a and b); 118,  
*Obs.* 3; 168, 173; -*sort of*  
*weather*, 64 (a); -*a!* interj.,  
 119 (c) 1; -*little*, 150 (c).  
*whatever*, 37 (c), 92 (b).  
*when*, 92 (a); adv.-conj., 110  
 (f), *Obs.*; 111 (a); relat.  
 adv., 174, 176 (b).  
*whence*, adv., 82 (a).  
*where . . . from*, adv., 82 (a).  
*wherever*, 92 (b).  
*whether*, 92 (a); 111 (b), *Obs.*  
 1; 120 (b); 156 (b), 2.  
*which*, relat. pr., 35; inter-  
 rog. pr., 36 (a and b); -*way*,  
 82 (a), 90.  
*while, whilst*, conj., 92 (a);  
 146, III. (c); 176 (b).  
*who, whom, whose*, relat. pr.,  
 35; interrog., 36 (a); 116  
 (f); 133, 1; 172.  
*whoever, whosoever*, 37 (c).  
*whole*, 37 (b).  
*why*, 110 (f), *Obs.*; with in-  
 finit., 140 (f), *Obs.*; interj.,  
 156 (b), 3, *Obs.*; 176 (b), *Obs.*  
*wide*, construed, 25 (d).  
*will*, aux. v., 43, 112 (b), 152  
 (a); -*have*, 160.  
*wish for*, to, 126 (a), *Obs.* 3;  
 -*to*, 127.  
*wit*, to, 168 (a), 1.  
*with, chez*, 10, *Obs.*; *de*, 87  
 (e); 136 (c, d, e, f, g, h);  
 137 (a), 138 (d); à, 129, 130  
 (b), 134, 138 (c); *avec*,  
 138 (a, c).  
*with it*, 28 (2); -*the help of*,  
 146 (e).  
*within*, 89 (b), 133 (a).  
*without*, adv.-conj., 92 (b), *v*  
 163 (a).  
*worse, worst*, adj., 22; adv., 84  
*worthy*, 124 (d).  
*would*, aux. v., 44; 110 (c, d),  
*Obs.*; 112 (b); *would-be*, 166,  
*Obs.*  
*wretched*, 124 (d).  
*wrong*, 124 (c).

## Y

*yes*, adv., 85a.  
*yet*, 91; -*for all that*, 156 (b), 3.  
*you*, subj., 26; obj., 26, 30;  
 with prep., *vous*, 32; =  
 sing. in Fr., 165.  
*you fellows*, 37 (b).  
*your*, 10, 117 (a, b), 130 (b)  
*yours*, 33, 168.  
*yourselves*, 63.







